TSG RAN Meeting #26 **RP-040449**
Athens, Greece, 8 - 10 December 2004

Title **Linked CRs (Rel-6 Category B) to TS25.201 & TS25.211 & TS25.212 & TS.25.213 & TS 25.214 & TS25.215 for Introduction of E-DCH**
Source **TSG RAN WG1**
Agenda Item **8.7**

RAN1 Tdoc	Spec	CR	Rev	Phase	Cat	Current Version	Subject	Work item	Remarks
R1-041517	25.201	19	-	Rel-6	B	6.0.0	Introduction of E-DCH	EDCH-Phys	
R1-041512	25.211	195	1	Rel-6	B	6.2.0	Introduction of E-DCH	EDCH-Phys	
R1-041520	25.212	196	2	Rel-6	B	6.2.0	Introduction of E-DCH	EDCH-Phys	
R1-041516	25.213	71	2	Rel-6	B	6.0.0	Introduction of E-DCH	EDCH-Phys	
R1-041521	25.214	361	1	Rel-6	B	6.3.0	Introduction of E-DCH	EDCH-Phys	
R1-041514	25.215	149	1	Rel-6	B	6.0.0	Introduction of E-DCH	EDCH-Phys	

3GPP TSG-RAN WG1 Meeting #39
Shin Yokohama, Japan, November 15th- 19th

Tdoc ⌘ R1-041517

CR-Form-v7

CHANGE REQUEST

⌘	**25.201**	**CR**	**19**	⌘ **rev**	**-**	⌘	Current version:	**6.0.0**	⌘

*For **HELP** on using this form, see bottom of this page or look at the pop-up text over the ⌘ symbols.*

Proposed change affects: UICC apps⌘ [ ] ME [X] Radio Access Network [X] Core Network [ ]

Title:	⌘	Introduction of E-DCH
Source:	⌘	RAN WG1
Work item code:	⌘	EDCH-Phys
Date:	⌘	26/11/2004
Category:	⌘	**B**
Release:	⌘	Rel-6

Use one of the following categories:
F *(correction)*
A *(corresponds to a correction in an earlier release)*
B *(addition of feature),*
C *(functional modification of feature)*
D *(editorial modification)*
Detailed explanations of the above categories can be found in 3GPP TR 21.900.

Use one of the following releases:
2 (GSM Phase 2)
R96 (Release 1996)
R97 (Release 1997)
R98 (Release 1998)
R99 (Release 1999)
Rel-4 (Release 4)
Rel-5 (Release 5)
Rel-6 (Release 6)

Reason for change:	⌘	This CR introduces E-DCH in the specifications
Summary of change:	⌘	
Consequences if not approved:	⌘	

Clauses affected:	⌘	3, 4.1.1, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.5				
		Y	**N**			
Other specs affected:	⌘	**Y**		Other core specifications	⌘	25.211, 25.212, 25.213, 25.214, 25.215
				Test specifications		
				O&M Specifications		
Other comments:	⌘					

How to create CRs using this form:

Comprehensive information and tips about how to create CRs can be found at http://www.3gpp.org/specs/CR.htm. Below is a brief summary:

1) Fill out the above form. The symbols above marked ⌘ contain pop-up help information about the field that they are closest to.

2) Obtain the latest version for the release of the specification to which the change is proposed. Use the MS Word "revision marks" feature (also known as "track changes") when making the changes. All 3GPP specifications can be downloaded from the 3GPP server under ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/specs/ For the latest version, look for the directory name with the latest date e.g. 2001-03 contains the specifications resulting from the March 2001 TSG meetings.

3) With "track changes" disabled, paste the entire CR form (use CTRL-A to select it) into the specification just in front of the clause containing the first piece of changed text. Delete those parts of the specification which are not relevant to the change request.

3GPP TS 25.201 V6.0.0 (2003-12)

Technical Specification

3rd Generation Partnership Project;
Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network;
Physical layer - General description
(Release 6)

Keywords

UMTS, radio, layer 1

3GPP

Postal address

3GPP support office address

650 Route des Lucioles - Sophia Antipolis
Valbonne - FRANCE
Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Internet

http://www.3gpp.org

Contents

Foreword

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of the present document, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version x.y.z

where:

- x the first digit:
  - 1 presented to TSG for information;
  - 2 presented to TSG for approval;
  - 3 or greater indicates TSG approved document under change control.
- y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.
- z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the document.

1 Scope

The present document describes a general description of the physical layer of the UTRA radio interface. The present document also describes the document structure of the 3GPP physical layer specifications, i.e. TS 25.200 series. The TS 25.200 series specifies the Uu point for the 3G mobile system, and defines the minimum level of specifications required for basic connections in terms of mutual connectivity and compatibility.

2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies. In the case of a reference to a 3GPP document (including a GSM document), a non-specific reference implicitly refers to the latest version of that document *in the same Release as the present document*.

[1] 3GPP TS 25.211: "Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (FDD)".

[2] 3GPP TS 25.212: "Multiplexing and channel coding (FDD)".

[3] 3GPP TS 25.213: "Spreading and modulation (FDD)".

[4] 3GPP TS 25.214: "Physical layer procedures (FDD)".

[5] 3GPP TS 25.215: "Physical layer – Measurements (FDD)".

[6] 3GPP TS 25.221: "Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (TDD)".

[7] 3GPP TS 25.222: "Multiplexing and channel coding (TDD)".

[8] 3GPP TS 25.223: "Spreading and modulation (TDD)".

[9] 3GPP TS 25.224: "Physical layer procedures (TDD)".

[10] 3GPP TS 25.225: "Physical layer – Measurements (TDD)".

[11] 3GPP TR 25.833: "Physical layer items not for inclusion in Release ‘99".

[12] 3GPP TR 25.944: "Channel coding and multiplexing examples".

[13] 3GPP TS 25.301: "Radio Interface Protocol Architecture".

[14] 3GPP TS 25.302: "Services provided by the physical layer".

[15] 3GPP TS 25.101: "UE Radio transmission and reception (FDD)".

[16] 3GPP TS 25.102: "UE Radio transmission and reception (TDD)".

[17] 3GPP TS 25.104: "BTS Radio transmission and reception (FDD)".

[18] 3GPP TS 25.105: "BTS Radio transmission and reception (TDD)".

3 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the following abbreviations apply:

16QAM	16 Quadrature Amplitude Modulation
ARQ	Automatic Repeat Request
BER	Bit Error Rate
CCTrCH	Coded Composite Transport Channel
CPCH	Common Packet Channel
DCA	Dynamic channel allocation
DCH	Dedicated Channel
DS-CDMA	Direct-Sequence Code Division Multiple Access
DSCH	Downlink Shared Channel
DwPCH	Downlink Pilot Channel
DwPTS	Downlink Pilot Time Slot
FAUSCH	Fast Uplink Signalling Channel
E-DCH	Enhanced Dedicated Channel
E-HICH	E-DCH Hybrid ARQ Indicator Channel
E-RGCH	E-DCH Relative Grant Channel
FDD	Frequency Division Duplex
FEC	Forward Error Correction
FER	Frame Error Rate
GSM	Global System for Mobile Communication
HS-DSCH	High Speed Downlink Shared channel
L1	Layer 1 (physical layer)
L2	Layer 2 (data link layer)
L3	Layer 3 (network layer)
LAC	Link Access Control
MAC	Medium Access Control
Mcps	Mega Chip Per Second
ODMA	Opportunity Driven Multiple Access
QPSK	Quaternary Phase Shift Keying
RACH	Random Access Channel
RF	Radio Frequency
RLC	Radio Link Control
RRC	Radio Resource Control
SAP	Service Access Point
SCCC	Serial Concatenated Convolutional Code
SCH	Synchronisation Channel
SIR	Signal-to-Interference Ratio
TDD	Time Division Duplex
TDMA	Time Division Multiple Access
TFCI	Transport-Format Combination Indicator
UE	User Equipment
UMTS	Universal Mobile Telecommunications System
UpPTS	Uplink Pilot Time Slot
UpPCH	Uplink Pilot Channel
UTRA	UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access
UTRAN	UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network
WCDMA	Wide-band Code Division Multiple Access

4 General description of Layer 1

4.1 Relation to other layers

4.1.1 General Protocol Architecture

Radio interface which is prescribed by this specification means the Uu point between User Equipment (UE) and network. The radio interface is composed of Layers 1, 2 and 3. Layer 1 is based on WCDMA/TD-SCDMA technology and the TS 25.200 series describes the Layer-1 specification. Layers 2 and 3 of the radio interface are described in the TS 25.300 series.

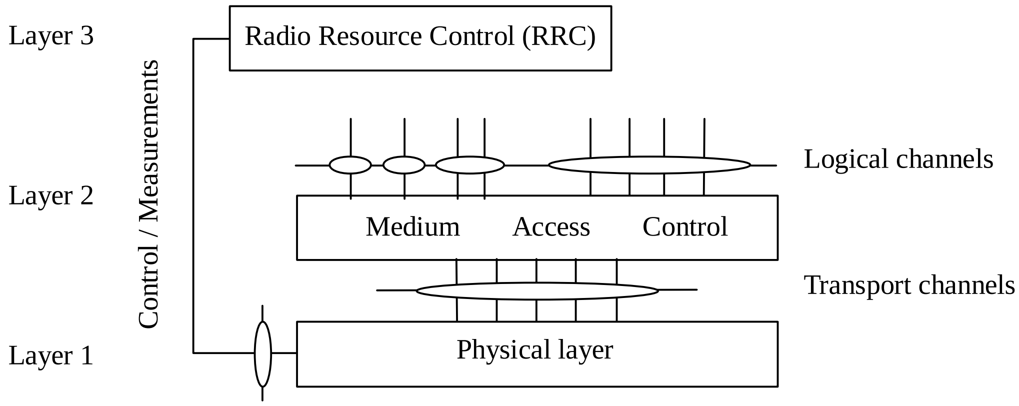


Figure 1: Radio interface protocol architecture around the physical layer

Figure 1 shows the UTRA radio interface protocol architecture around the physical layer (Layer 1). The physical layer interfaces the Medium Access Control (MAC) sub-layer of Layer 2 and the Radio Resource Control (RRC) Layer of Layer 3. The circles between different layer/sub-layers indicate Service Access Points (SAPs). The physical layer offers different Transport channels to MAC. A transport channel is characterized by how the information is transferred over the radio interface. MAC offers different Logical channels to the Radio Link Control (RLC) sub-layer of Layer 2. A logical channel is characterized by the type of information transferred. Physical channels are defined in the physical layer. There are two duplex modes: Frequency Division Duplex (FDD) and Time Division Duplex (TDD). In the FDD mode a physical channel is characterized by the code, frequency and in the uplink the relative phase (I/Q); in addition E-HICH and E-RGCH are also defined bv a specific orthogonal signature sequence. In the TDD mode the physical channels is also characterized by the timeslot. The physical layer is controlled by RRC.

4.1.2 Service provided to higher layers

The physical layer offers data transport services to higher layers. The access to these services is through the use of transport channels via the MAC sub-layer. The physical layer is expected to perform the following functions in order to provide the data transport service. See also TS 25.302:

- Macrodiversity distribution/combining and soft handover execution.
- Error detection on transport channels and indication to higher layers.
- FEC encoding/decoding of transport channels.
- Multiplexing of transport channels and demultiplexing of coded composite transport channels (CCTrCHs).
- Rate matching of coded transport channels to physical channels.
- Mapping of coded composite transport channels on physical channels.
- Power weighting and combining of physical channels.
- Modulation and spreading/demodulation and despreading of physical channels.

- Frequency and time (chip, bit, slot, frame) synchronisation.
- Radio characteristics measurements including FER, SIR, Interference Power, etc., and indication to higher layers.
- Inner - loop power control.
- RF processing. (Note: RF processing is defined in TS 25.100 series).
- synchronization shift control
- beamformingBeamforming
- Hybrid ARQ soft-combining for HS-DSCH and E-DCH

When network elements (UEs and network) provide compatible service bearers (for example support a speech bearer) they should be assured of successful interworking. Moreover, different implementation options of the same (optional) feature would lead to incompatibility between UE and network. Therefore, this shall be avoided.

4.2 General description of Layer 1

4.2.1 Multiple Access

The access scheme is Direct-Sequence Code Division Multiple Access (DS-CDMA) with information either spread over approximately 5 MHz (FDD and 3.84 Mcps TDD) bandwidth, thus also often denoted as Wideband CDMA (WCDMA) due that nature. or 1.6MHz (1.28Mcps TDD), thus also often denoted as Narrowband CDMA. UTRA has two modes, FDD (Frequency Division Duplex) & TDD (Time Division Duplex), for operating with paired and unpaired bands respectively. The possibility to operate in either FDD or TDD mode allows for efficient utilisation of the available spectrum according to the frequency allocation in different regions. FDD and TDD modes are defined as follows:

FDD: A duplex method whereby uplink and downlink transmissions use two separated radio frequencies. In the FDD, each uplink and downlink uses the different frequency band. A pair of frequency bands which have specified separation shall be assigned for the system.

TDD: A duplex method whereby uplink and downlink transmissions are carried over same radio frequency by using synchronised time intervals. In the TDD, time slots in a physical channel are divided into transmission and reception part. Information on uplink and downlink are transmitted reciprocally.

UTRA TDD has two options, the 3.84Mcps option and the 1.28Mcps option. In UTRA TDD there is TDMA component in the multiple access in addition to DS-CDMA. Thus the multiple access has been also often denoted as TDMA/CDMA due added TDMA nature.

A 10 ms radio frame is divided into 15 slots (2560 chip/slot at the chip rate 3.84 Mcps). A physical channel is therefore defined as a code (or number of codes) and additionally in TDD mode the sequence of time slots completes the definition of a physical channel. In FDD, for HS-DSCH, E-DCH and associated signalling channels, 2ms sub-frames consisting of 3 slots are defined.

The information rate of the channel varies with the symbol rate being derived from the 3.84 Mcps chip rate and the spreading factor. Spreading factors are from 256 to 24 with FDD uplink, from 512 to 4 with FDD downlink, and from 16 to 1 for TDD uplink and downlink. Thus the respective modulation symbol rates vary from 960 1920 k symbols/s to 15 k symbols/s (7.5 k symbols/s) for FDD uplink (downlink), and for TDD the momentary modulation symbol rates shall vary from 3.84 M symbols/s to 240 k symbols/s.

For 1.28Mcps TDD option, a 10 ms radio frame is divided into two 5ms sub-frames. In each sub-frame, there are 7 normal time slots and 3 special time slots. A basic physical channel is therefore characterised by the frequency, code and time slot.

The information rate of the channel varies with the symbol rate being derived from the 1.28 Mcps chiprate and the spreading factor. Spreading factors is from 16 to 1 for both uplink and downlink. Thus the respective modulation symbol rates shall vary from 80.0K symbols/s to 1.28M symbols/s.

4.2.2 Channel coding and interleaving

For the channel coding in UTRA two options are supported for FDD and three options are supported for TDD:

- Convolutional coding.
- Turbo coding.
- No coding (only TDD).

Channel coding selection is indicated by higher layers. In order to randomise transmission errors, bit interleaving is performed further.

4.2.3 Modulation and spreading

The UTRA modulation scheme is QPSK (8PSK is also used for 1.28Mcps TDD option). For HS-DSCH transmission, 16QAM can also be used. Pulse shaping is specified in the TS 25.100 series.

With CDMA nature the spreading (& scrambling) process is closely associated with modulation. In UTRA different families of spreading codes are used to spread the signal:

- For separating channels from same source, channelisation codes derived with the code tree structure as given in TS 25.213 and 25.223 are used.
- For separating different cells the following solutions are supported.
- FDD mode: Gold codes with 10 ms period (38400 chips at 3.84 Mcps) used, with the actual code itself length 2^{18}-1 chips, as defined in TS 25.213.
- TDD mode: Scrambling codes with the length 16 used as defined in TS 25.223.
- For separating different UEs the following code families are defined.
- FDD mode: Gold codes with 10 ms period, or alternatively S(2) codes 256 chip period.
- TDD mode: codes with period of 16 chips and midamble sequences of different length depending on the environment.

4.2.4 Physical layer procedures

There are several physical layer procedures involved with UTRA operation. Such procedures covered by physical layer description are:

1) The power control, inner loop for FDD mode, and for 3.84Mcps TDD option open loop in uplink and inner loop in downlink, for 1.28Mcps TDD option, open loop in uplink and inner loop in both uplink and downlink.
2) Cell search operation.
3) Uplink synchronization control with open and closed loop.
4) Random access
5) ~~5)~~ Procedures related to HS-DSCH transmission.
6) Procedures related to E-DCH transmission

4.2.5 Physical layer measurements

Radio characteristics including FER, SIR, Interference power, etc., are measured and reported to higher layers and network. Such measurements are:

1) Handover measurements for handover within UTRA. Specific features being determined in addition to the relative strength of the cell, for the FDD mode the timing relation between for cells for support of asynchronous soft handover.

2) The measurement procedures for preparation for handover to GSM900/GSM1800.

3) The measurement procedures for UE before random access process.

4) 4) The measurement procedures for Dynamic Channel Allocation (DCA) of TDD mode

5) UTRAN measurements.

4.2.6 Relationship of the physical layer functions

The functionality of the layer 1 is split over several specifications each for FDD and TDD. The following figures, although not categorical, show as an introduction the relationship of layer 1 functions by specification in terms of users plane information flow.

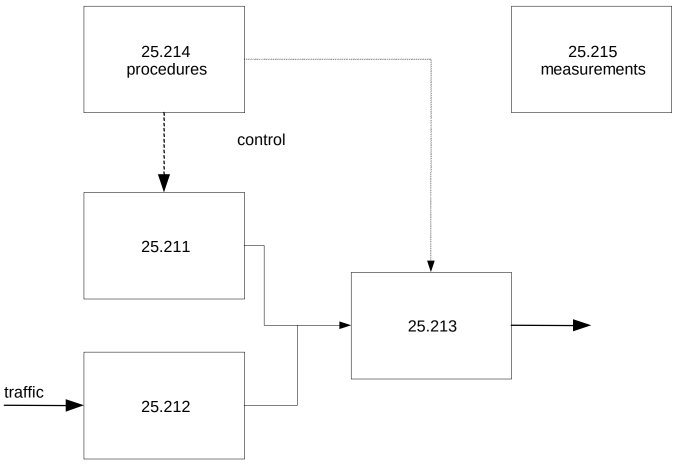


Figure 2 - FDD layer 1 functions relationships by specification

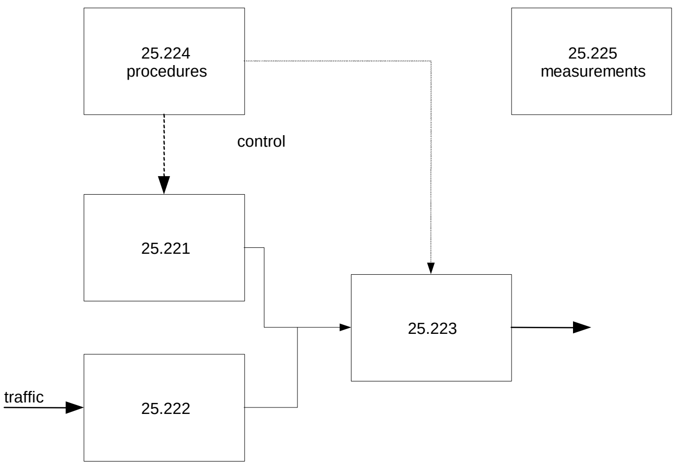


Figure 3 - TDD layer 1 functions relationships by specification

5 Document structure of physical layer specification

5.1 Overview

The physical layer specification consists of a general document (TS 25.201), five FDD mode documents (TS 25.211 through 25.215), five TDD mode documents (TS 25.221 through 25.225). In addition, there are two technical reports (TR 25.833 and 25.944).

5.2 TS 25.201: Physical layer – General description

The scope is to describe:

- the contents of the Layer 1documents (TS 25.200 series);
- where to find information;
- a general description of Layer 1.

5.3 TS 25.211: Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (FDD)

The scope is to establish the characteristics of the Layer-1 transport channels and physical channels in the FDD mode, and to specify:

- the different transport channels that exist;
- which physical channels exist;
- what is the structure of each physical channel, slot format etc.;
- relative timing between different physical channels in the same link, and relative timing between uplink and downlink;
- mapping of transport channels onto the physical channels.

5.4 TS 25.212: Multiplexing and channel coding (FDD)

The scope is to describe multiplexing, channel coding and interleaving in the FDD mode, and to specify:

- coding and multiplexing of transport channels into CCTrCHs;
- channel coding alternatives;
- coding for Layer 1 control information, such as TFCI;
- the different interleavers;
- how is rate matching done;
- physical channel segmentation and mapping.

5.5 TS 25.213: Spreading and modulation (FDD)

The scope is to establish the characteristics of the spreading and modulation in the FDD mode, and to specify:

- the spreading (channelisation plus scrambling);
- generation of channelisation and scrambling codes;
- generation of RACH and CPCH preamble codes;
- generation of SCH synchronisation codes;
- modulation.

RF channel arrangements and Pulse shaping are specified in TS 25.101 for UE and in TS 25.104 for Node-B.

5.6 TS 25.214: Physical layer procedures (FDD)

The scope is to establish the characteristics of the physical layer procedures in the FDD mode, and to specify:

- cell search procedures;
- power control procedures;
- random access procedure.

5.7 TS 25.215: Physical layer – Measurements (FDD)

The scope is to establish the characteristics of the physical layer measurements in the FDD mode, and to specify:

- the measurements that Layer 1 is to perform;
- reporting of measurements to higher layers and network;
- handover measurements, idle-mode measurements etc.

5.8 TS 25.221: Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (TDD)

The scope is to establish the characteristics of the Layer-1 transport channels and physical channels in the TDD mode, and to specify:

- transport channels;
- physical channels, structure and contents;
- mapping of transport channels onto the physical channels.

5.9 TS 25.222: Multiplexing and channel coding (TDD)

The scope is to describe multiplexing, channel coding and interleaving in the TDD mode, and to specify:

- channel coding and multiplexing of transport channels into CCTrCHs;
- channel coding alternatives;
- coding for Layer 1 control information, such as TFCI;
- interleaving;
- rate matching;
- physical channel segmentation and mapping.

5.10 TS 25.223: Spreading and modulation (TDD)

The scope is to establish the characteristics of the spreading and modulation in the TDD mode, and to specify:

- data modulation;
- spreading;
- generation of synchronisation codes.

RF channel arrangements and Pulse shaping are specified in TS 25.102 for UE and in TS 25.105 for Node-B.

5.11 TS 25.224: Physical layer procedures (TDD)

The scope is to establish the characteristics of the physical layer procedures in the TDD mode, and to specify:

- cell synchronisation;
- timing advance;
- power control procedures;
- idle mode tasks.

5.12 TS 25.225: Physical layer – Measurements (TDD)

The scope is to establish the characteristics of the physical layer measurements in the TDD mode, and to specify:

- the measurements that Layer 1 is to perform;
- reporting of measurements to higher layers and network;
- handover measurements, idle-mode measurements etc.

5.13 TR 25.833: Physical layer items not for inclusion in Release ‘99

The scope is to collect materials on UTRA physical layer items not included in the Release ’99 specification documents, such as DSCH control channel, FAUSCH, Hybrid ARQ, 4-state SCCC turbo coding and ODMA.

5.14 TR 25.944: Channel coding and multiplexing examples

The scope is to describe examples of channel coding and multiplexing for transport channels of various types and cases.

Annex A (informative): Preferred mathematical notations

The following table contains the preferred mathematical notations used in L1 documentation.

item	notation
multiply product	cross sign, e.g. $a \times b$
matrix product	dot sign, e.g. $a \cdot b$
scalar product (product of a matrix by a scalar)	dot sign, scalar should precede matrix e.g. $(1+j)\cdot\begin{bmatrix} u \\ v \end{bmatrix}$
matrix dimensioning	number of rows × number of column, e.g.: $R \times C$
Kronecker product	$a \otimes b$
bracketing of sets (all elements of same type, not ordered elements)	curly brackets {}, e.g. $\{a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_p\}$, or $\{a_i\}_{i\in\{1,2,\ldots,p\}}$
bracketing of lists (all elements not necessary of same type, ordered elements)	round brackets (), e.g. (A, u, x)
bracketing of sequences (all elements of same type, ordered elements)	angle brackets, e.g. $\langle a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_p \rangle$ or $\langle a_i \rangle_{i\in\{1,2,\ldots,p\}}$
bracketing of function argument	round brackets, e.g. f(*x*)
bracketing of array index	square brackets, e.g. a[*x*]
bracketing of matrix or vector	square brackets [], e.g. $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} x & y \end{bmatrix}$, or $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$
Separation of indexes	use a comma : e.g. $N_{i,j}$
use of italic for symbols	a symbol should be either in italic or in normal font, but mixing up should be avoided.
bracketing of arithmetic expression to force precedence of operations	round brackets : e.g. $(a+b)\times c$
necessity of bracketing arithmetic expressions	When only + and × bracketing is not necessary. When the **mod** operator is used explicit bracketing of mod operands and possibly result should be done.
number type	in a context of non negative integer numbers, some notes should stress when a number is signed, or possibly fractional.
binary **xor** and **and**	respectively use + or ·. If no "mod 2" is explicitly in the expression some text should stress that the operation is modulo 2.
matrix or vector transpose	v^T
1×1 matrices	implicitly cast to its unique element.
vector dot product	$u^T \cdot v$ for column vectors, and $u \cdot v^T$ for line vectors
complex conjugate	v^*
matrix or vector Hermitian transpose	v^H
real part and imaginary part of complex numbers.	Re(x) and Im(x)

Annex B (informative): Change history

Change history							
Date	TSG #	TSG Doc.	CR	Rev	Subject/Comment	Old	New
	RAN_05	RP-99586	-		Approved at TSG RAN #5 and placed under Change Control	-	3.0.0
14/01/00	-	-	-		Modified in terms of formality. The contents were not changed.	3.0.0	3.0.1
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000059	001	-	Editorial revision	3.0.1	3.0.2
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000264	002	-	Corrections to align with TS 25.212 and TR 25.944	3.0.2	3.1.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000264	003	1	Editorial corrections	3.0.2	3.1.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000264	004	-	Physical layer information flow	3.0.2	3.1.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000264	005	1	Preferred mathematical notation for editorial unity of L1 documentation	3.0.2	3.1.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	-	-	-	Approved as Release 4 specification (v4.0.0) at TSG RAN #11	3.1.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010071	006	1	Inclusion of 1.28Mcps TDD in TS 25.201	3.1.0	4.0.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010735	008	-	Removal of slow power control and ODMA from TS 25.201	4.0.0	4.1.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020231	010	1	Removal of channel coding option “no coding” for FDD	4.1.0	4.2.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020058	013	-	Specification of HS-DSCH for Release 5 in 25.201	4.1.0	5.0.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020306	017	-	Downlink bit mapping	5.0.0	5.1.0
10/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020580	018		Correction on the description of TS and layer	5.1.0	5.2.0
13/01/04	RAN_22	-	-	-	Created for M.1457 update	5.2.0	6.0.0

3GPP TSG-RAN WG1 Meeting #39 **Tdoc⌘ R1-041512**
Yokohama, Japan, November 15-19, 2004

CR-Form-v7.1

CHANGE REQUEST

⌘	**25.211**	**CR 195**	⌘ **rev**	**1**	⌘ Current version:	**6.2.0** ⌘

*For **HELP** on using this form, see bottom of this page or look at the pop-up text over the ⌘ symbols.*

Proposed change affects: UICC apps⌘ [ ] ME [X] Radio Access Network [X] Core Network [ ]

Title:	⌘	Introduction of E-DCH		
Source:	⌘	RAN WG1		
Work item code:	⌘	EDCH-Phys	***Date:*** ⌘	19/11/2004
Category:	⌘	**B**	***Release:*** ⌘	Rel-6
		Use one of the following categories: ***F*** *(correction)* ***A*** *(corresponds to a correction in an earlier release)* ***B*** *(addition of feature),* ***C*** *(functional modification of feature)* ***D*** *(editorial modification)* Detailed explanations of the above categories can be found in 3GPP TR 21.900.		*Use one of the following releases:* *Ph2 (GSM Phase 2)* *R96 (Release 1996)* *R97 (Release 1997)* *R98 (Release 1998)* *R99 (Release 1999)* *Rel-4 (Release 4)* *Rel-5 (Release 5)* *Rel-6 (Release 6)* *Rel-7 (Release 7)*

Reason for change:	⌘	Introduction of E-DCH in Rel-6.
Summary of change:	⌘	Addition of E-DCH related physical channels.
Consequences if not approved:	⌘	

Clauses affected:	⌘	3.2, 4.1.1, 5, 5.2.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2, 5.3.3, 6.1, 7.1				
		Y	**N**			
Other specs Affected:	⌘	X		Other core specifications	⌘	25.201, 25.212, 25.213, 25.214, 25.215
				Test specifications		
				O&M Specifications		
Other comments:	⌘					

How to create CRs using this form:

Comprehensive information and tips about how to create CRs can be found at http://www.3gpp.org/specs/CR.htm. Below is a brief summary:

1) Fill out the above form. The symbols above marked ⌘ contain pop-up help information about the field that they are closest to.

2) Obtain the latest version for the release of the specification to which the change is proposed. Use the MS Word "revision marks" feature (also known as "track changes") when making the changes. All 3GPP specifications can be downloaded from the 3GPP server under ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/specs/ For the latest version, look for the directory name with the latest date e.g. 2001-03 contains the specifications resulting from the March 2001 TSG meetings.

3) With "track changes" disabled, paste the entire CR form (use CTRL-A to select it) into the specification just in front of the clause containing the first piece of changed text. Delete those parts of the specification which are not relevant to the change request.

3GPP TS 25.211 V6.2.0 (2004-09)

Technical Specification

3rd Generation Partnership Project;
Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network;
Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (FDD)
(Release 6)

Keywords

UMTS, radio, layer 1

3GPP

Postal address

3GPP support office address

650 Route des Lucioles - Sophia Antipolis
Valbonne - FRANCE
Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Internet

http://www.3gpp.org

Contents

Foreword

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of the present document, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version x.y.z

where:

- x the first digit:
  - 1 presented to TSG for information;
  - 2 presented to TSG for approval;
  - 3 or greater indicates TSG approved document under change control.
- y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.
- z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the document.

1 Scope

The present document describes the characteristics of the Layer 1 transport channels and physicals channels in the FDD mode of UTRA. The main objectives of the document are to be a part of the full description of the UTRA Layer 1, and to serve as a basis for the drafting of the actual technical specification (TS).

2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies. In the case of a reference to a 3GPP document (including a GSM document), a non-specific reference implicitly refers to the latest version of that document *in the same Release as the present document*.

[1] 3GPP TS 25.201: "Physical layer - general description".

[2] 3GPP TS 25.211: "Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (FDD)".

[3] 3GPP TS 25.212: "Multiplexing and channel coding (FDD)".

[4] 3GPP TS 25.213: "Spreading and modulation (FDD)".

[5] 3GPP TS 25.214: "Physical layer procedures (FDD)".

[6] 3GPP TS 25.221: "Transport channels and physical channels (TDD)".

[7] 3GPP TS 25.222: "Multiplexing and channel coding (TDD)".

[8] 3GPP TS 25.223: "Spreading and modulation (TDD)".

[9] 3GPP TS 25.224: "Physical layer procedures (TDD)".

[10] 3GPP TS 25.215: "Physical layer - Measurements (FDD)".

[11] 3GPP TS 25.301: "Radio Interface Protocol Architecture".

[12] 3GPP TS 25.302: "Services Provided by the Physical Layer".

[13] 3GPP TS 25.401: "UTRAN Overall Description".

[14] 3GPP TS 25.133: "Requirements for Support of Radio Resource Management (FDD)".

[15] 3G TS 25.427: "UTRAN Overall Description :UTRA Iub/Iur Interface User Plane Protocol for DCH data streams".

[16] 3GPP TS 25.435: "UTRAN Iub Interface User Plane Protocols for Common Transport Channel Data Streams".

3 Symbols and abbreviations

3.1 Symbols

N_{data1} The number of data bits per downlink slot in Data1 field.

N_{data2}	The number of data bits per downlink slot in Data2 field. If the slot format does not contain a Data2 field, $N_{data2} = 0$.

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the following abbreviations apply:

16QAM	16 Quadrature Amplitude Modulation
AI	Acquisition Indicator
AICH	Acquisition Indicator Channel
AP	Access Preamble
AP-AICH	Access Preamble Acquisition Indicator Channel
API	Access Preamble Indicator
BCH	Broadcast Channel
CA	Channel Assignment
CAI	Channel Assignment Indicator
CCC	CPCH Control Command
CCPCH	Common Control Physical Channel
CCTrCH	Coded Composite Transport Channel
CD	Collision Detection
CD/CA-ICH	Collision Detection/Channel Assignment Indicator Channel
CDI	Collision Detection Indicator
CPCH	Common Packet Channel
CPICH	Common Pilot Channel
CQI	Channel Quality Indicator
CSICH	CPCH Status Indicator Channel
DCH	Dedicated Channel
DPCCH	Dedicated Physical Control Channel
DPCH	Dedicated Physical Channel
DPDCH	Dedicated Physical Data Channel
DSCH	Downlink Shared Channel
DSMA-CD	Digital Sense Multiple Access - Collison Detection
E-AGCH	E-DCH Absolute Grant Channel
E-DCH	Enhanced Dedicated Channel
E-DPCCH	E-DCH Dedicated Physical Control Channel
E-DPDCH	E-DCH Dedicated Physical Data Channel
E-HICH	E-DCH Hybrid ARQ Indicator Channel
E-RGCH	E-DCH Relative Grant Channel
DTX	Discontinuous Transmission
FACH	Forward Access Channel
FBI	Feedback Information
FSW	Frame Synchronization Word
HS-DPCCH	Dedicated Physical Control Channel (uplink) for HS-DSCH
HS-DSCH	High Speed Downlink Shared Channel
HS-PDSCH	High Speed Physical Downlink Shared Channel
HS-SCCH	Shared Control Channel for HS-DSCH
ICH	Indicator Channel
MUI	Mobile User Identifier
PCH	Paging Channel
P-CCPCH	Primary Common Control Physical Channel
PCPCH	Physical Common Packet Channel
PDSCH	Physical Downlink Shared Channel
PICH	Page Indicator Channel
PRACH	Physical Random Access Channel
PSC	Primary Synchronisation Code
RACH	Random Access Channel
RNC	Radio Network Controller
S-CCPCH	Secondary Common Control Physical Channel
SCH	Synchronisation Channel
SF	Spreading Factor
SFN	System Frame Number
SI	Status Indicator

SSC	Secondary Synchronisation Code
STTD	Space Time Transmit Diversity
TFCI	Transport Format Combination Indicator
TSTD	Time Switched Transmit Diversity
TPC	Transmit Power Control
UE	User Equipment
UTRAN	UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network

4 Services offered to higher layers

4.1 Transport channels

Transport channels are services offered by Layer 1 to the higher layers. General concepts about transport channels are described in [12].

A transport channel is defined by how and with what characteristics data is transferred over the air interface. A general classification of transport channels is into two groups:

- Dedicated channels, using inherent addressing of UE;
- Common channels, using explicit addressing of UE if addressing is needed.

4.1.1 Dedicated transport channels

There exists ~~only one~~two types of dedicated transport channel, the Dedicated Channel (DCH) and the Enhanced Dedicated Channel (E-DCH).

4.1.1.1 DCH - Dedicated Channel

The Dedicated Channel (DCH) is a downlink or uplink transport channel. The DCH is transmitted over the entire cell or over only a part of the cell using e.g. beam-forming antennas.

4.1.1.2 E-DCH – Enhanced Dedicated Channel

The Enhanced Dedicated Channel (E-DCH) is an uplink transport channel.

4.1.2 Common transport channels

There are seven types of common transport channels: BCH, FACH, PCH, RACH, CPCH, DSCH and HS-DSCH.

4.1.2.1 BCH - Broadcast Channel

The Broadcast Channel (BCH) is a downlink transport channel that is used to broadcast system- and cell-specific information. The BCH is always transmitted over the entire cell and has a single transport format.

4.1.2.2 FACH - Forward Access Channel

The Forward Access Channel (FACH) is a downlink transport channel. The FACH is transmitted over the entire cell. The FACH can be transmitted using power setting described in [16].

4.1.2.3 PCH - Paging Channel

The Paging Channel (PCH) is a downlink transport channel. The PCH is always transmitted over the entire cell. The transmission of the PCH is associated with the transmission of physical-layer generated Paging Indicators, to support efficient sleep-mode procedures.

4.1.2.4 RACH - Random Access Channel

The Random Access Channel (RACH) is an uplink transport channel. The RACH is always received from the entire cell. The RACH is characterized by a collision risk and by being transmitted using open loop power control.

4.1.2.5 CPCH - Common Packet Channel

The Common Packet Channel (CPCH) is an uplink transport channel. CPCH is associated with a dedicated channel on the downlink which provides power control and CPCH Control Commands (e.g. Emergency Stop) for the uplink CPCH. The CPCH is characterised by initial collision risk and by being transmitted using inner loop power control.

4.1.2.6 DSCH - Downlink Shared Channel

The Downlink Shared Channel (DSCH) is a downlink transport channel shared by several Ues. The DSCH is associated with one or several downlink DCH. The DSCH is transmitted over the entire cell or over only a part of the cell using e.g. beam-forming antennas.

4.1.2.7 HS-DSCH – High Speed Downlink Shared Channel

The High Speed Downlink Shared Channel is a downlink transport channel shared by several UEs. The HS-DSCH is associated with one downlink DPCH, and one or several Shared Control Channels (HS-SCCH). The HS-DSCH is transmitted over the entire cell or over only part of the cell using e.g. beam-forming antennas.

4.2 Indicators

Indicators are means of fast low-level signalling entities which are transmitted without using information blocks sent over transport channels. The meaning of indicators is specific to the type of indicator.

The indicators defined in the current version of the specifications are: Acquisition Indicator (AI), Access Preamble Indicator (API), Channel Assignment Indicator (CAI), Collision Detection Indicator (CDI), Page Indicator (PI) and Status Indicator (SI).

Indicators may be either boolean (two-valued) or three-valued. Their mapping to indicator channels is channel specific.

Indicators are transmitted on those physical channels that are indicator channels (ICH).

5 Physical channels and physical signals

Physical channels are defined by a specific carrier frequency, scrambling code, channelization code (optional), time start & stop (giving a duration) and, on the uplink, relative phase (0 or $\pi/2$). The downlink E-HICH and E-RGCH are each further defined by a specific orthogonal signature sequence. Scrambling and channelization codes are specified in [4]. Time durations are defined by start and stop instants, measured in integer multiples of chips. Suitable multiples of chips also used in specification are:

Radio frame: A radio frame is a processing duration which consists of 15 slots. The length of a radio frame corresponds to 38400 chips.

Slot: A slot is a duration which consists of fields containing bits. The length of a slot corresponds to 2560 chips.

Sub-frame: A sub-frame is the basic time interval for E-DCH and HS-DSCH transmission and E-DCH and HS-DSCH-related signalling at the physical layer. The length of a sub-frame corresponds to 3 slots (7680 chips).

The default time duration for a physical channel is continuous from the instant when it is started to the instant when it is stopped. Physical channels that are not continuous will be explicitly described.

Transport channels are described (in more abstract higher layer models of the physical layer) as being capable of being mapped to physical channels. Within the physical layer itself the exact mapping is from a composite coded transport channel (CCTrCH) to the data part of a physical channel. In addition to data parts there also exist channel control parts and physical signals.

5.1 Physical signals

Physical signals are entities with the same basic on-air attributes as physical channels but do not have transport channels or indicators mapped to them. Physical signals may be associated with physical channels in order to support the function of physical channels.

5.2 Uplink physical channels

5.2.1 Dedicated uplink physical channels

There are ~~three~~ five types of uplink dedicated physical channels, the uplink Dedicated Physical Data Channel (uplink DPDCH), the uplink Dedicated Physical Control Channel (uplink DPCCH), the uplink E-DCH Dedicated Physical Data Channel (uplink E-DPDCH), the uplink E-DCH Dedicated Physical Control Channel (uplink E-DPCCH) and the uplink Dedicated Control Channel associated with HS-DSCH transmission (uplink HS-DPCCH).

The DPDCH, the DPCCH, the E-DPDCH, the E-DPCCH and the HS-DPCCH are I/Q code multiplexed (see [4]).

5.2.1.1 DPCCH and DPDCH

The uplink DPDCH is used to carry the DCH transport channel. There may be zero, one, or several uplink DPDCHs on each radio link.

The uplink DPCCH is used to carry control information generated at Layer 1. The Layer 1 control information consists of known pilot bits to support channel estimation for coherent detection, transmit power-control (TPC) commands, feedback information (FBI), and an optional transport-format combination indicator (TFCI). The transport-format combination indicator informs the receiver about the instantaneous transport format combination of the transport channels mapped to the simultaneously transmitted uplink DPDCH radio frame. There is one and only one uplink DPCCH on each radio link.

Figure 1 shows the frame structure of the uplink DPDCH and the uplink DPCCH. Each radio frame of length 10 ms is split into 15 slots, each of length T_{slot} = 2560 chips, corresponding to one power-control period. The DPDCH and DPCCH are always frame aligned with each other.

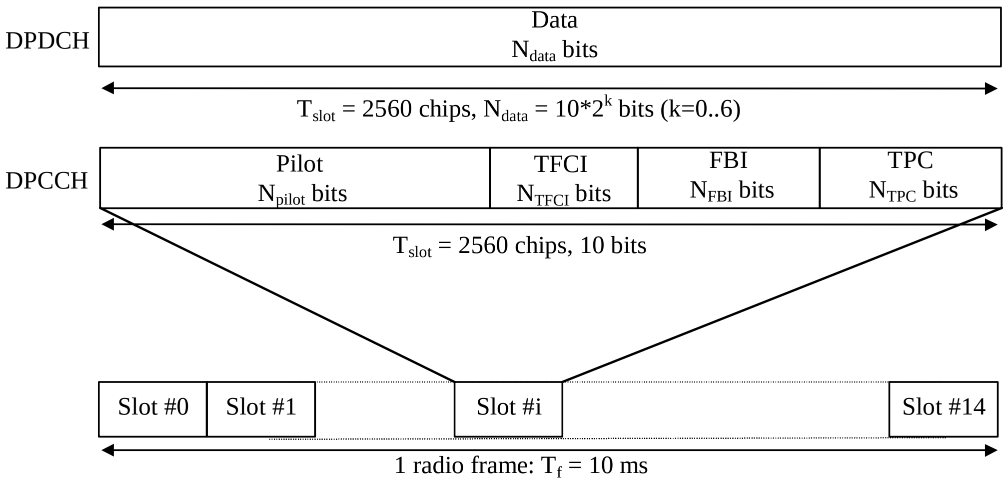


Figure 1: Frame structure for uplink DPDCH/DPCCH

The parameter k in figure 1 determines the number of bits per uplink DPDCH slot. It is related to the spreading factor SF of the DPDCH as $SF = 256/2^k$. The DPDCH spreading factor may range from 256 down to 4. The spreading factor of the uplink DPCCH is always equal to 256, i.e. there are 10 bits per uplink DPCCH slot.

The exact number of bits of the uplink DPDCH and the different uplink DPCCH fields (N_{pilot}, N_{TFCI}, N_{FBI}, and N_{TPC}) is given by table 1 and table 2. What slot format to use is configured by higher layers and can also be reconfigured by higher layers.

The channel bit and symbol rates given in table 1 and table 2 are the rates immediately before spreading. The pilot patterns are given in table 3 and table 4, the TPC bit pattern is given in table 5.

The FBI bits are used to support techniques requiring feedback from the UE to the UTRAN Access Point, including closed loop mode transmit diversity and site selection diversity transmission (SSDT). The structure of the FBI field is shown in figure 2 and described below.

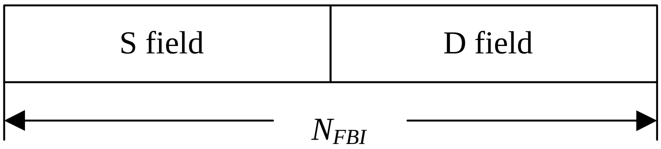


Figure 2: Details of FBI field

The S field is used for SSDT signalling, while the D field is used for closed loop mode transmit diversity signalling. The S field consists of 0, 1 or 2 bits. The D field consists of 0 or 1 bit. The total FBI field size N_{FBI} is given by table 2. If total FBI field is not filled with S field or D field, FBI field shall be filled with "1". When N_{FBI} is 2bits, S field is 0bit and D field is 1bit, left side field shall be filled with "1" and right side field shall be D field. The use of the FBI fields is described in detail in [5].

Table 1: DPDCH fields

Slot Format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	Channel Symbol Rate (ksps)	SF	Bits/ Frame	Bits/ Slot	N_{data}
0	15	15	256	150	10	10
1	30	30	128	300	20	20
2	60	60	64	600	40	40
3	120	120	32	1200	80	80
4	240	240	16	2400	160	160
5	480	480	8	4800	320	320
6	960	960	4	9600	640	640

There are two types of uplink dedicated physical channels; those that include TFCI (e.g. for several simultaneous services) and those that do not include TFCI (e.g. for fixed-rate services). These types are reflected by the duplicated rows of table 2. It is the UTRAN that determines if a TFCI should be transmitted and it is mandatory for all UEs to support the use of TFCI in the uplink. The mapping of TFCI bits onto slots is described in [3].

In compressed mode, DPCCH slot formats with TFCI fields are changed. There are two possible compressed slot formats for each normal slot format. They are labelled A and B and the selection between them is dependent on the number of slots that are transmitted in each frame in compressed mode.

Table 2: DPCCH fields

Slot Form at #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	Channel Symbol Rate (ksps)	SF	Bits/ Frame	Bits/ Slot	N_{pilot}	N_{TPC}	N_{TFCI}	N_{FBI}	Transmitted slots per radio frame
0	15	15	256	150	10	6	2	2	0	15
0A	15	15	256	150	10	5	2	3	0	10-14
0B	15	15	256	150	10	4	2	4	0	8-9
1	15	15	256	150	10	8	2	0	0	8-15
2	15	15	256	150	10	5	2	2	1	15
2A	15	15	256	150	10	4	2	3	1	10-14
2B	15	15	256	150	10	3	2	4	1	8-9
3	15	15	256	150	10	7	2	0	1	8-15
4	15	15	256	150	10	6	2	0	2	8-15
5	15	15	256	150	10	5	1	2	2	15
5A	15	15	256	150	10	4	1	3	2	10-14
5B	15	15	256	150	10	3	1	4	2	8-9

The pilot bit patterns are described in table 3 and table 4. The shadowed column part of pilot bit pattern is defined as FSW and FSWs can be used to confirm frame synchronization. (The value of the pilot bit pattern other than FSWs shall be "1".)

Table 3: Pilot bit patterns for uplink DPCCH with N_{pilot} = 3, 4, 5 and 6

	N_{pilot} = 3			N_{pilot} = 4				N_{pilot} = 5					N_{pilot} = 6					
Bit #	0	1	2	0	1	2	3	0	1	2	3	4	0	1	2	3	4	5
Slot #0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0
1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0
2	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1
3	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0
4	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1
5	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0
6	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0
7	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0
8	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
9	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
10	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1
11	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1
12	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0
13	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1
14	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1

Table 4: Pilot bit patterns for uplink DPCCH with N_{pilot} = 7 and 8

	N_{pilot} = 7							N_{pilot} = 8							
Bit #	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Slot #0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0
1	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
2	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1
3	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
4	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1
5	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0
6	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0
7	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
8	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0
9	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
10	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1
11	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1
12	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
13	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1
14	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1

The relationship between the TPC bit pattern and transmitter power control command is presented in table 5.

Table 5: TPC Bit Pattern

TPC Bit Pattern		Transmitter power control command
N_{TPC} = 1	N_{TPC} = 2	
1 0	11 00	1 0

Multi-code operation is possible for the uplink dedicated physical channels. When multi-code transmission is used, several parallel DPDCH are transmitted using different channelization codes, see [4]. However, there is only one DPCCH per radio link.

A period of uplink DPCCH transmission prior to the start of the uplink DPDCH transmission (uplink DPCCH power control preamble) shall be used for initialisation of a DCH. The length of the power control preamble is a higher layer parameter, N_{pcp} , signalled by the network [5]. The UL DPCCH shall take the same slot format in the power control preamble as afterwards, as given in table 2. When $N_{pcp} > 0$ the pilot patterns of table 3 and table 4 shall be used. The timing of the power control preamble is described in [5], subclause 4.3.2.3. The TFCI field is filled with "0" bits.

5.2.1.2 HS-DPCCH

Figure 2A illustrates the frame structure of the HS-DPCCH. The HS-DPCCH carries uplink feedback signalling related to downlink HS-DSCH transmission. The HS-DSCH-related feedback signalling consists of Hybrid-ARQ Acknowledgement (HARQ-ACK) and Channel-Quality Indication (CQI) [3]. Each sub frame of length 2 ms (3*2560 chips) consists of 3 slots, each of length 2560 chips. The HARQ-ACK is carried in the first slot of the HS-DPCCH sub-frame. The CQI is carried in the second and third slot of a HS-DPCCH sub-frame. There is at most one HS-DPCCH on each radio link. The HS-DPCCH can only exist together with an uplink DPCCH. The timing of the HS-DPCCH relative to the uplink DPCCH is shown in section 7.7.

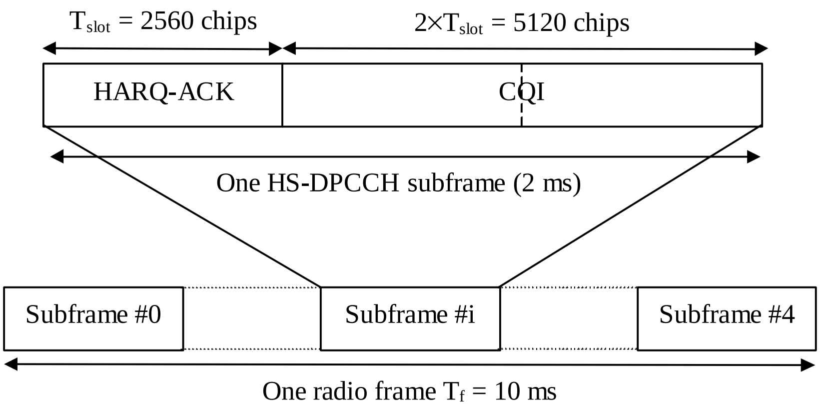


Figure 2A: Frame structure for uplink HS-DPCCH

The spreading factor of the HS-DPCCH is 256 i.e. there are 10 bits per uplink HS-DPCCH slot. The slot format for uplink HS-DPCCH is defined in Table 5A.

Table 5A: HS-DPCCH fields

Slot Format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	Channel Symbol Rate (ksps)	SF	Bits/ Subframe	Bits/ Slot	Transmitted slots per Subframe
0	15	15	256	30	10	3

5.2.1.3 E-DPCCH and E-DPDCH

The E-DPDCH is used to carry the E-DCH transport channel. There may be zero, one, or several E-DPDCH on each radio link.

The E-DPCCH is a physical channel used to transmit control information associated with the E-DCH. There is at most one E-DPCCH on each radio link.

Figure 2B shows the E-DPDCH and E-DPCCH (sub)frame structure. Each radio frame is divided in 5 subframes, each of length 2 ms; the first subframe starts at the start of each radio frame and the 5th subframe ends at the end of each radio frame. The E-DPDCH slot formats, corresponding rates and number of bits are specified in Table 5B. The E-DPCCH slot format is listed in Table 5C.

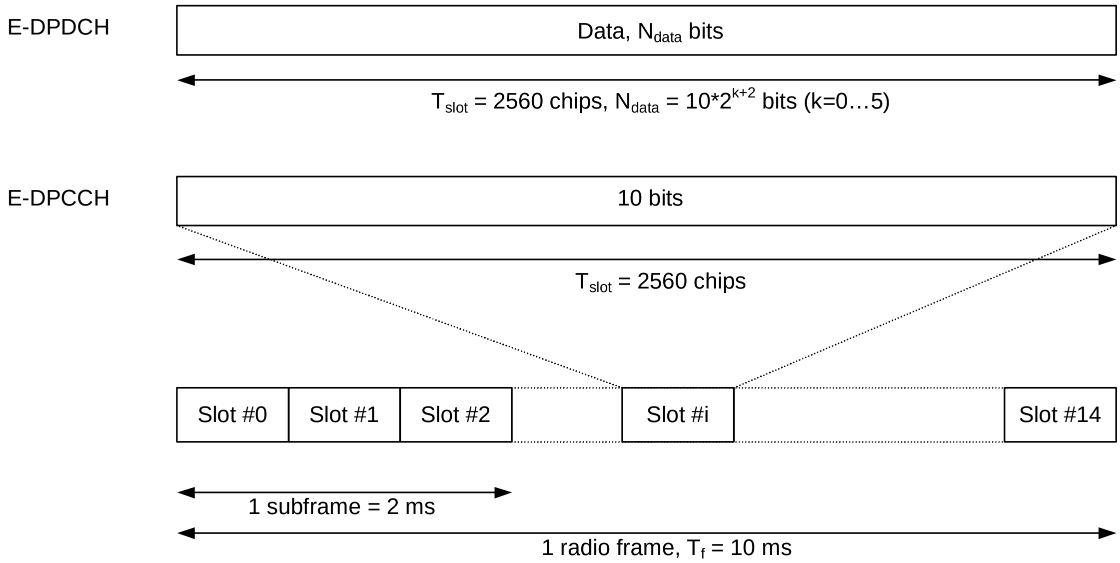


Figure 2B: E-DPDCH frame structure

Table 5B: E-DPDCH slot formats

Slot Format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	SF	Bits/ Frame	Bits/ Subframe	Bits/Slot N_{data}
0	60	64	600	120	40
1	120	32	1200	240	80
2	240	16	2400	480	160
3	480	8	4800	960	320
4	960	4	9600	1920	640
5	1920	2	19200	3840	1280

Table 5C: E-DPCCH slot formats

Slot Format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	SF	Bits/ Frame	Bits/ Subframe	Bits/Slot N_{data}
0	15	256	150	30	10

5.2.2 Common uplink physical channels

5.2.2.1 Physical Random Access Channel (PRACH)

The Physical Random Access Channel (PRACH) is used to carry the RACH.

5.2.2.1.1 Overall structure of random-access transmission

The random-access transmission is based on a Slotted ALOHA approach with fast acquisition indication. The UE can start the random-access transmission at the beginning of a number of well-defined time intervals, denoted *access slots*. There are 15 access slots per two frames and they are spaced 5120 chips apart, see figure 3. The timing of the access slots and the acquisition indication is described in subclause 7.3. Information on what access slots are available for random-access transmission is given by higher layers.

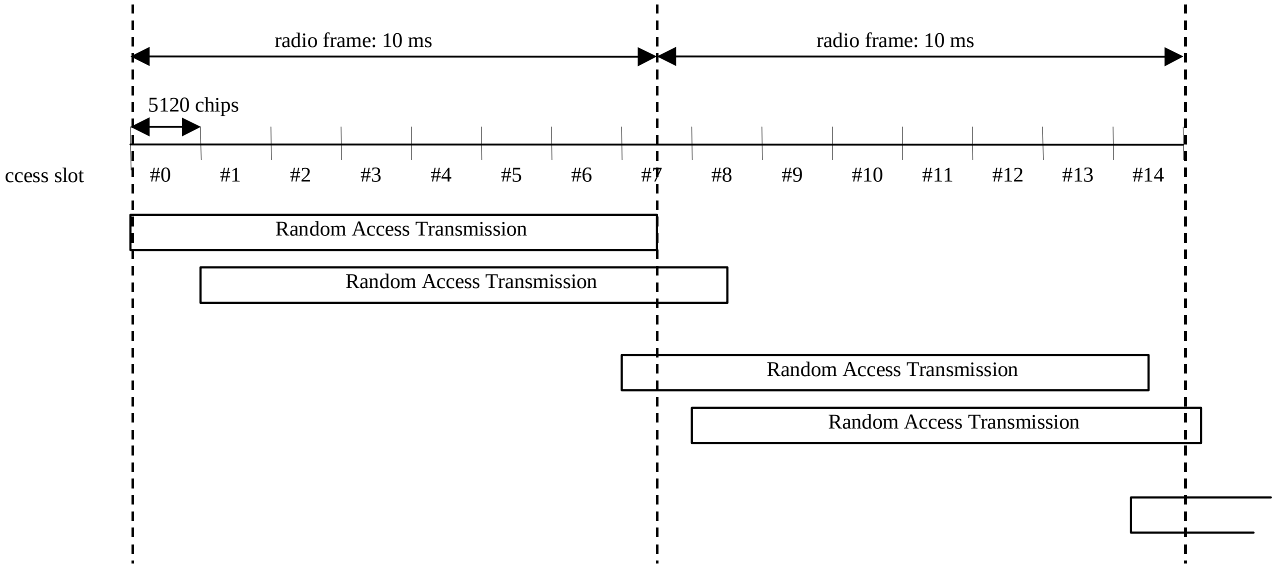


Figure 3: RACH access slot numbers and their spacing

The structure of the random-access transmission is shown in figure 4. The random-access transmission consists of one or several *preambles* of length 4096 chips and a *message* of length 10 ms or 20 ms.

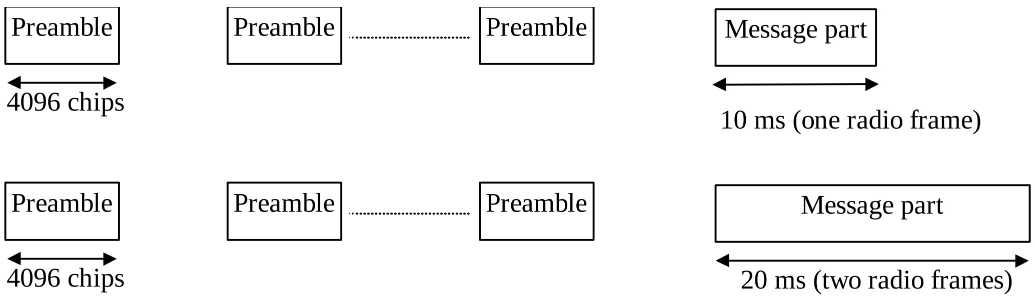


Figure 4: Structure of the random-access transmission

5.2.2.1.2 RACH preamble part

Each preamble is of length 4096 chips and consists of 256 repetitions of a signature of length 16 chips. There are a maximum of 16 available signatures, see [4] for more details.

5.2.2.1.3 RACH message part

Figure 5 shows the structure of the random-access message part radio frame. The 10 ms message part radio frame is split into 15 slots, each of length T_{slot} = 2560 chips. Each slot consists of two parts, a data part to which the RACH transport channel is mapped and a control part that carries Layer 1 control information. The data and control parts are transmitted in parallel. A 10 ms message part consists of one message part radio frame, while a 20 ms message part consists of two consecutive 10 ms message part radio frames. The message part length is equal to the Transmission Time Interval of the RACH Transport channel in use. This TTI length is configured by higher layers.

The data part consists of $10*2^k$ bits, where k=0,1,2,3. This corresponds to a spreading factor of 256, 128, 64, and 32 respectively for the message data part.

The control part consists of 8 known pilot bits to support channel estimation for coherent detection and 2 TFCI bits. This corresponds to a spreading factor of 256 for the message control part. The pilot bit pattern is described in table 8. The total number of TFCI bits in the random-access message is 15*2 = 30. The TFCI of a radio frame indicates the transport format of the RACH transport channel mapped to the simultaneously transmitted message part radio frame. In case of a 20 ms PRACH message part, the TFCI is repeated in the second radio frame.

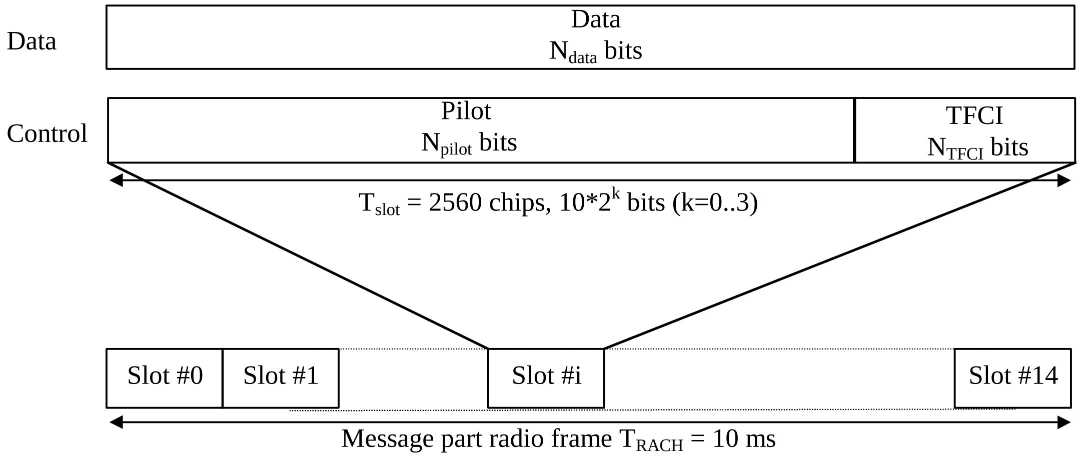


Figure 5: Structure of the random-access message part radio frame

Table 6: Random-access message data fields

Slot Format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	Channel Symbol Rate (ksps)	SF	Bits/ Frame	Bits/ Slot	N_{data}
0	15	15	256	150	10	10
1	30	30	128	300	20	20
2	60	60	64	600	40	40
3	120	120	32	1200	80	80

Table 7: Random-access message control fields

Slot Format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	Channel Symbol Rate (ksps)	SF	Bits/ Frame	Bits/ Slot	N_{pilot}	N_{TFCI}
0	15	15	256	150	10	8	2

Table 8: Pilot bit patterns for RACH message part with N_{pilot} = 8

	N_{pilot} = 8							
Bit #	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Slot #0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0
1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
2	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1
3	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
4	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1
5	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0
6	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0
7	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
8	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0
9	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
10	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1
11	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1
12	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
13	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1
14	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1

5.2.2.2 Physical Common Packet Channel (PCPCH)

The Physical Common Packet Channel (PCPCH) is used to carry the CPCH.

5.2.2.2.1 CPCH transmission

The CPCH transmission is based on DSMA-CD approach with fast acquisition indication. The UE can start transmission at the beginning of a number of well-defined time-intervals, relative to the frame boundary of the received BCH of the current cell. The access slot timing and structure is identical to RACH in subclause 5.2.2.1.1. The structure of the CPCH access transmission is shown in figure 6. The PCPCH access transmission consists of one or several Access Preambles [A-P] of length 4096 chips, one Collision Detection Preamble (CD-P) of length 4096 chips, a DPCCH Power Control Preamble (PC-P) which is either 0 slots or 8 slots in length, and a message of variable length Nx10 ms.

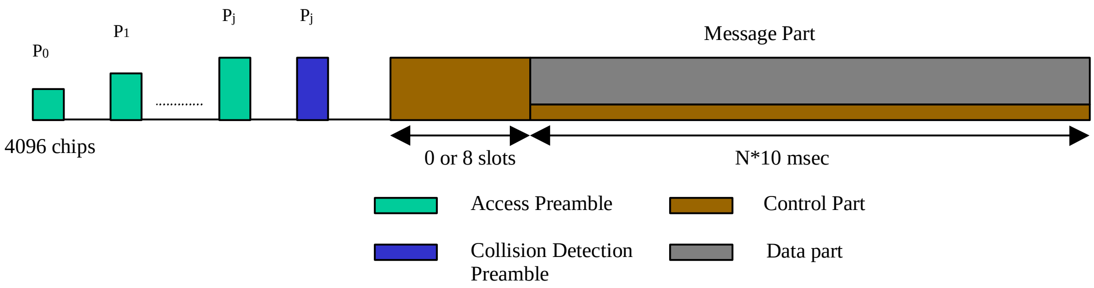


Figure 6: Structure of the CPCH access transmission

5.2.2.2.2 CPCH access preamble part

Similar to 5.2.2.1.2 (RACH preamble part). The RACH preamble signature sequences are used. The number of sequences used could be less than the ones used in the RACH preamble. The scrambling code could either be chosen to be a different code segment of the Gold code used to form the scrambling code of the RACH preambles (see [4] for more details) or could be the same scrambling code in case the signature set is shared.

5.2.2.2.3 CPCH collision detection preamble part

Similar to 5.2.2.1.2 (RACH preamble part). The RACH preamble signature sequences are used. The scrambling code is chosen to be a different code segment of the Gold code used to form the scrambling code for the RACH and CPCH preambles (see [4] for more details).

5.2.2.2.4 CPCH power control preamble part

The power control preamble segment is called the CPCH Power Control Preamble (PC-P) part. The slot format for CPCH PC-P part shall be the same as for the following message part in Table 9 in subclause 5.2.2.2.5. The Power Control Preamble length is a higher layer parameter, $L_{pc\text{-}preamble}$ (see [5], section 6.2), which shall take the value 0 or 8 slots. When $L_{pc\text{-}preamble} > 0$, the pilot bit patterns from slot #(15- $L_{pc\text{-}preamble}$) to slot #14 of table 3 and 4 in subclause 5.2.1 shall be used for CPCH PC-P pilot bit patterns. The TFCI field is filled with "1" bits.

5.2.2.2.5 CPCH message part

Figure 1 in subclause 5.2.1 shows the structure of the CPCH message part. Each message consists of up to N_Max_frames 10 ms frames. N_Max_frames is a higher layer parameter. Each 10 ms frame is split into 15 slots, each of length T_{slot} = 2560 chips. Each slot consists of two parts, a data part that carries higher layer information and a control part that carries Layer 1 control information. The data and control parts are transmitted in parallel.

The entries of table 1 in subclause 5.2.1 apply to the data part of the CPCH message part. The spreading factor for the control part of the CPCH message part shall be 256. Table 9 defines the slot format of the control part of CPCH message part. The pilot bit patterns of table 3 in subclause 5.2.1 shall be used for pilot bit patterns of the CPCH message part.

Table 9: Slot format of the control part of CPCH message part

Slot Format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	Channel Symbol Rate (ksps)	SF	Bits/ Frame	Bits/ Slot	N_{pilot}	N_{TPC}	N_{TFCI}	N_{FBI}
0	15	15	256	150	10	6	2	2	0
1	15	15	256	150	10	5	2	2	1

Figure 7 shows the frame structure of the uplink common packet physical channel. Each frame of length 10 ms is split into 15 slots, each of length T_{slot} = 2560 chips, corresponding to one power-control period.

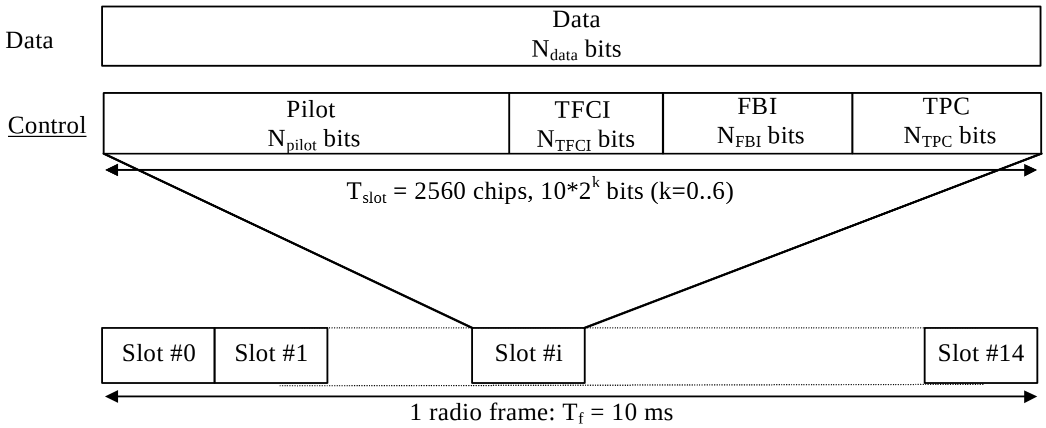


Figure 7: Frame structure for uplink Data and Control Parts Associated with PCPCH

The data part consists of $10*2^k$ bits, where k = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, corresponding to spreading factors of 256, 128, 64, 32, 16, 8, 4 respectively.

5.3 Downlink physical channels

5.3.1 Downlink transmit diversity

Table 10 summarises the possible application of open and closed loop transmit diversity modes on different downlink physical channel types. Simultaneous use of STTD and closed loop modes on the same physical channel is not allowed. In addition, if Tx diversity is applied on any of the downlink physical channels it shall also be applied on P-CCPCH and SCH. Regarding CPICH transmission in case of transmit diversity, see subclause 5.3.3.1.

With respect to the usage of Tx diversity for DPCH on different radio links within an active set, the following rules apply:

- Different Tx diversity modes (STTD and closed loop) shall not be used on the radio links within one active set.
- No Tx diversity on one or more radio links shall not prevent UTRAN to use Tx diversity on other radio links within the same active set.
- If STTD is activated on one or several radio links in the active set, the UE shall operate STTD on only those radio links where STTD has been activated. Higher layers inform the UE about the usage of STTD on the individual radio links in the active set.
- If closed loop TX diversity is activated on one or several radio links in the active set, the UE shall operate closed loop TX diversity on only those radio links where closed loop TX diversity has been activated. Higher layers inform the UE about the usage of closed loop TX diversity on the individual radio links in the active set.

Furthermore, the transmit diversity mode used for a PDSCH frame shall be the same as the transmit diversity mode used for the DPCH associated with this PDSCH frame. The transmit diversity mode on the associated DPCH may not change during a PDSCH frame and within the slot prior to the PDSCH frame. This includes any change between no Tx diversity, open loop, closed loop mode 1 or closed loop mode 2.

Also, the transmit diversity mode used for a HS-PDSCH subframe shall be the same as the transmit diversity mode used for the DPCH associated with this HS-PDSCH subframe. If the DPCH associated with an HS-SCCH subframe is using either open or closed loop transmit diversity on the radio link transmitted from the HS-DSCH serving cell, the HS-SCCH subframe from this cell shall be transmitted using STTD, otherwise no transmit diversity shall be used for this HS-SCCH subframe. The transmit diversity mode on the associated DPCH may not change during a HS-SCCH and or HS-PDSCH subframe and within the slot prior to the HS-SCCH subframe. This includes any change between no Tx diversity and either open loop or closed loop mode.

If the UE is receiving a DPCH on which transmit diversity is used from a cell, the UE shall assume thatIf the DPCH in a radio link set is using transmit diversity, the UE shall assume the E-AGCH, E-RGCH, and E-HICH from the same cell are transmitted using STTD. from the cells in that radio link set.

Table 10: Application of Tx diversity modes on downlink physical channel types "X" – can be applied, "–" – not applied

Physical channel type	Open loop mode		Closed loop mode	
	TSTD	STTD	Mode 1	Mode 2
P-CCPCH	–	X	–	–
SCH	X	–	–	–
S-CCPCH	–	X	–	–
DPCH	–	X	X	X
PICH	–	X	–	–
PDSCH	–	X	X	X
HS-PDSCH	–	X	X	–
HS-SCCH	–	X	–	–
E-AGCH	–	X	–	–
E-RGCH	–	X	–	–
E-HICH	–	X	–	–
AICH	–	X	–	–
CSICH	–	X	–	–
AP-AICH	–	X	–	–
CD/CA-ICH	–	X	–	–
DL-DPCCH for CPCH	–	X	X	X

5.3.1.1 Open loop transmit diversity

5.3.1.1.1 Space time block coding based transmit antenna diversity (STTD)

The open loop downlink transmit diversity employs a space time block coding based transmit diversity (STTD).

The STTD encoding is optional in UTRAN. STTD support is mandatory at the UE.

If higher layers signal that neither P-CPICH nor S-CPICH can be used as phase reference for the downlink DPCH for a radio link in a cell, the UE shall assume that STTD is not used for the downlink DPCH (and the associated PDSCH if applicable) in that cell.

A block diagram of a generic STTD encoder is shown in the figure 8 and figure 8A below. Channel coding, rate matching and interleaving are done as in the non-diversity mode. For QPSK, the STTD encoder operates on 4 symbols b_0, b_1, b_2, b_3 as shown in figure 8. For AICH, E-RGCH, E-HICH, AP-AICH and CD/CA-ICH, the b_i are real valued signals, and $\bar{b}_i$ is defined as $-b_i$. For channels other than AICH, E-RGCH, E-HICH, AP-AICH and CD/CA-ICH, the b_i are 3-valued digits, taking the values 0, 1, "DTX", and $\bar{b}_i$ is defined as follows: if b_i = 0 then $\bar{b}_i$ = 1, if b_i = 1 then $\bar{b}_i$ = 0, otherwise $\bar{b}_i$ = b_i.

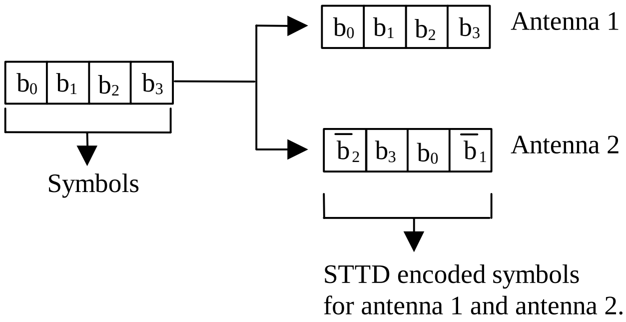


Figure 8: Generic block diagram of the STTD encoder for QPSK

For 16QAM, STTD operates on blocks of 8 consecutive symbols b_0, b_1, b_2, b_3, b_4, b_5, b_6, b_7 as shown in figure 8A below.

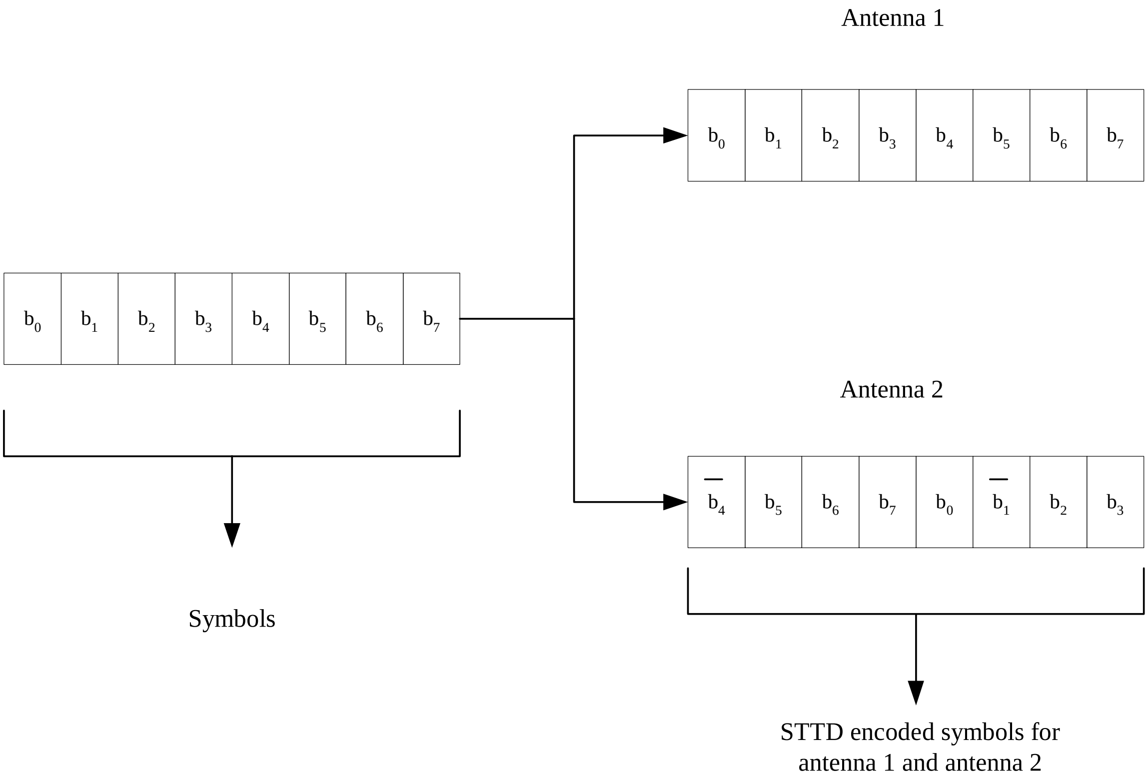


Figure 8A: Generic block diagram of the STTD encoder for 16QAM

5.3.1.1.2 Time Switched Transmit Diversity for SCH (TSTD)

Transmit diversity, in the form of Time Switched Transmit Diversity (TSTD), can be applied to the SCH. TSTD for the SCH is optional in UTRAN, while TSTD support is mandatory in the UE. TSTD for the SCH is described in subclause 5.3.3.5.1.

5.3.1.2 Closed loop transmit diversity

Closed loop transmit diversity is described in [5]. Both closed loop transmit diversity modes shall be supported at the UE and may be supported in the UTRAN.

5.3.2 Dedicated downlink physical channels

There are three types ~~is only one type~~ of downlink dedicated physical channels, the Downlink Dedicated Physical Channel (downlink DPCH), the E-DCH Relative Grant Channel (E-RGCH), and the E-DCH Hybrid ARQ Indicator Channel (E-HICH).

Within one downlink DPCH, dedicated data generated at Layer 2 and above, i.e. the dedicated transport channel (DCH), is transmitted in time-multiplex with control information generated at Layer 1 (known pilot bits, TPC commands, and an optional TFCI). The downlink DPCH can thus be seen as a time multiplex of a downlink DPDCH and a downlink DPCCH, compare subclause 5.2.1.

Figure 9 shows the frame structure of the downlink DPCH. Each frame of length 10 ms is split into 15 slots, each of length T_{slot} = 2560 chips, corresponding to one power-control period.

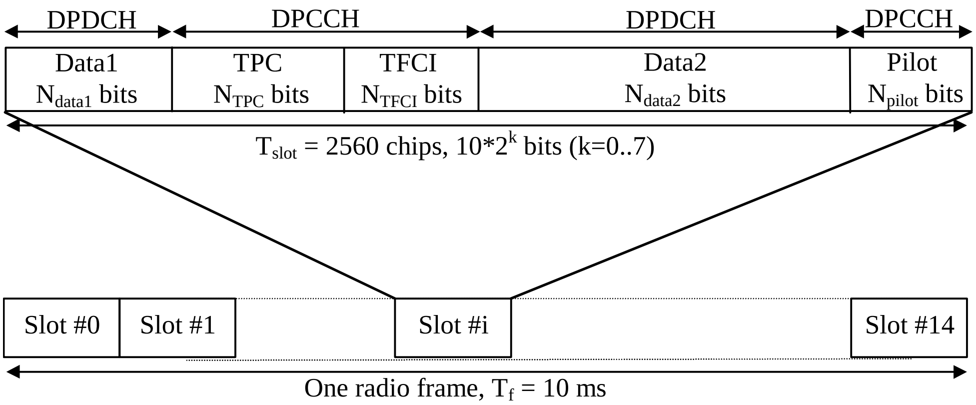


Figure 9: Frame structure for downlink DPCH

The parameter k in figure 9 determines the total number of bits per downlink DPCH slot. It is related to the spreading factor SF of the physical channel as SF = $512/2^k$. The spreading factor may thus range from 512 down to 4.

The exact number of bits of the different downlink DPCH fields (N_{pilot}, N_{TPC}, N_{TFCI}, N_{data1} and N_{data2}) is given in table 11. What slot format to use is configured by higher layers and can also be reconfigured by higher layers.

There are basically two types of downlink Dedicated Physical Channels; those that include TFCI (e.g. for several simultaneous services) and those that do not include TFCI (e.g. for fixed-rate services). These types are reflected by the duplicated rows of table 11. It is the UTRAN that determines if a TFCI should be transmitted and it is mandatory for all UEs to support the use of TFCI in the downlink. The mapping of TFCI bits onto slots is described in [3].

In compressed frames, a different slot format is used compared to normal mode. There are two possible compressed slot formats that are labelled A and B. Slot format B shall be used in frames compressed by spreading factor reduction and slot format A shall be used in frames compressed by puncturing or higher layer scheduling. The channel bit and symbol rates given in table 11 are the rates immediately before spreading.

Table 11: DPDCH and DPCCH fields

Slot Format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	Channel Symbol Rate (ksps)	SF	Bits/ Slot	DPDCH Bits/Slot		DPCCH Bits/Slot			Transmitted slots per radio frame N_{Tr}
					N_{Data1}	N_{Data2}	N_{TPC}	N_{TFCI}	N_{Pilot}	
0	15	7.5	512	10	0	4	2	0	4	15
0A	15	7.5	512	10	0	4	2	0	4	8-14
0B	30	15	256	20	0	8	4	0	8	8-14
1	15	7.5	512	10	0	2	2	2	4	15
1B	30	15	256	20	0	4	4	4	8	8-14
2	30	15	256	20	2	14	2	0	2	15
2A	30	15	256	20	2	14	2	0	2	8-14
2B	60	30	128	40	4	28	4	0	4	8-14
3	30	15	256	20	2	12	2	2	2	15
3A	30	15	256	20	2	10	2	4	2	8-14
3B	60	30	128	40	4	24	4	4	4	8-14
4	30	15	256	20	2	12	2	0	4	15
4A	30	15	256	20	2	12	2	0	4	8-14
4B	60	30	128	40	4	24	4	0	8	8-14
5	30	15	256	20	2	10	2	2	4	15
5A	30	15	256	20	2	8	2	4	4	8-14
5B	60	30	128	40	4	20	4	4	8	8-14
6	30	15	256	20	2	8	2	0	8	15
6A	30	15	256	20	2	8	2	0	8	8-14
6B	60	30	128	40	4	16	4	0	16	8-14
7	30	15	256	20	2	6	2	2	8	15
7A	30	15	256	20	2	4	2	4	8	8-14
7B	60	30	128	40	4	12	4	4	16	8-14
8	60	30	128	40	6	28	2	0	4	15
8A	60	30	128	40	6	28	2	0	4	8-14
8B	120	60	64	80	12	56	4	0	8	8-14
9	60	30	128	40	6	26	2	2	4	15
9A	60	30	128	40	6	24	2	4	4	8-14
9B	120	60	64	80	12	52	4	4	8	8-14
10	60	30	128	40	6	24	2	0	8	15
10A	60	30	128	40	6	24	2	0	8	8-14
10B	120	60	64	80	12	48	4	0	16	8-14
11	60	30	128	40	6	22	2	2	8	15
11A	60	30	128	40	6	20	2	4	8	8-14
11B	120	60	64	80	12	44	4	4	16	8-14
12	120	60	64	80	12	48	4	8*	8	15
12A	120	60	64	80	12	40	4	16*	8	8-14
12B	240	120	32	160	24	96	8	16*	16	8-14
13	240	120	32	160	28	112	4	8*	8	15
13A	240	120	32	160	28	104	4	16*	8	8-14
13B	480	240	16	320	56	224	8	16*	16	8-14
14	480	240	16	320	56	232	8	8*	16	15
14A	480	240	16	320	56	224	8	16*	16	8-14
14B	960	480	8	640	112	464	16	16*	32	8-14
15	960	480	8	640	120	488	8	8*	16	15
15A	960	480	8	640	120	480	8	16*	16	8-14
15B	1920	960	4	1280	240	976	16	16*	32	8-14
16	1920	960	4	1280	248	1000	8	8*	16	15
16A	1920	960	4	1280	248	992	8	16*	16	8-14

* If TFCI bits are not used, then DTX shall be used in TFCI field.

NOTE 1: Compressed mode is only supported through spreading factor reduction for SF=512 with TFCI.

NOTE 2: Compressed mode by spreading factor reduction is not supported for SF=4.

NOTE 3: If the Node B receives an invalid combination of data frames for downlink transmission, the procedure specified in [15], sub-clause 5.1.2,may require the use of DTX in both the DPDCH and theTFCI field of the DPCCH.

The pilot bit patterns are described in table 12. The shadowed column part of pilot bit pattern is defined as FSW and FSWs can be used to confirm frame synchronization. (The value of the pilot bit pattern other than FSWs shall be "11".) In table 12, the transmission order is from left to right.

In downlink compressed mode through spreading factor reduction, the number of bits in the TPC and Pilot fields are doubled. Symbol repetition is used to fill up the fields. Denote the bits in one of these fields in normal mode by x_1, x_2, x_3, …, x_X. In compressed mode the following bit sequence is sent in corresponding field: x_1, x_2, x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_3, x_4,…, x_X,.

Table 12: Pilot bit patterns for downlink DPCCH with N_{pilot} = 2, 4, 8 and 16

	N_{pilot} = 2	N_{pilot} = 4 (*1)		N_{pilot} = 8 (*2)				N_{pilot} = 16 (*3)							
Symbol #	0	0	1	0	1	2	3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Slot #0	11	11	11	11	11	11	10	11	11	11	10	11	11	11	10
1	00	11	00	11	00	11	10	11	00	11	10	11	11	11	00
2	01	11	01	11	01	11	01	11	01	11	01	11	10	11	00
3	00	11	00	11	00	11	00	11	00	11	00	11	01	11	10
4	10	11	10	11	10	11	01	11	10	11	01	11	11	11	11
5	11	11	11	11	11	11	10	11	11	11	10	11	01	11	01
6	11	11	11	11	11	11	00	11	11	11	00	11	10	11	11
7	10	11	10	11	10	11	00	11	10	11	00	11	10	11	00
8	01	11	01	11	01	11	10	11	01	11	10	11	00	11	11
9	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	00	11	11
10	01	11	01	11	01	11	01	11	01	11	01	11	11	11	10
11	10	11	10	11	10	11	11	11	10	11	11	11	00	11	10
12	10	11	10	11	10	11	00	11	10	11	00	11	01	11	01
13	00	11	00	11	00	11	11	11	00	11	11	11	00	11	00
14	00	11	00	11	00	11	11	11	00	11	11	11	10	11	01

NOTE *1: This pattern is used except slot formats 2B and 3B.
NOTE *2: This pattern is used except slot formats 0B, 1B, 4B, 5B, 8B, and 9B.
NOTE *3: This pattern is used except slot formats 6B, 7B, 10B, 11B, 12B, and 13B.
NOTE: For slot format *n*B where *n* = 0, …, 15, the pilot bit pattern corresponding to N_{pilot}/2 is to be used and symbol repetition shall be applied.

The relationship between the TPC symbol and the transmitter power control command is presented in table 13.

Table 13: TPC Bit Pattern

TPC Bit Pattern			Transmitter power control command
N_{TPC} = 2	N_{TPC} = 4	N_{TPC} = 8	
11	1111	11111111	1
00	0000	00000000	0

Multicode transmission may be employed in the downlink, i.e. the CCTrCH (see [3]) is mapped onto several parallel downlink DPCHs using the same spreading factor. In this case, the Layer 1 control information is transmitted only on the first downlink DPCH. DTX bits are transmitted during the corresponding time period for the additional downlink DPCHs, see figure 10.

In case there are several CCTrCHs mapped to different DPCHs transmitted to the same UE different spreading factors can be used on DPCHs to which different CCTrCHs are mapped. Also in this case, Layer 1 control information is only transmitted on the first DPCH while DTX bits are transmitted during the corresponding time period for the additional DPCHs.

Note : support of multiple CCTrChs of dedicated type is not part of the current release.

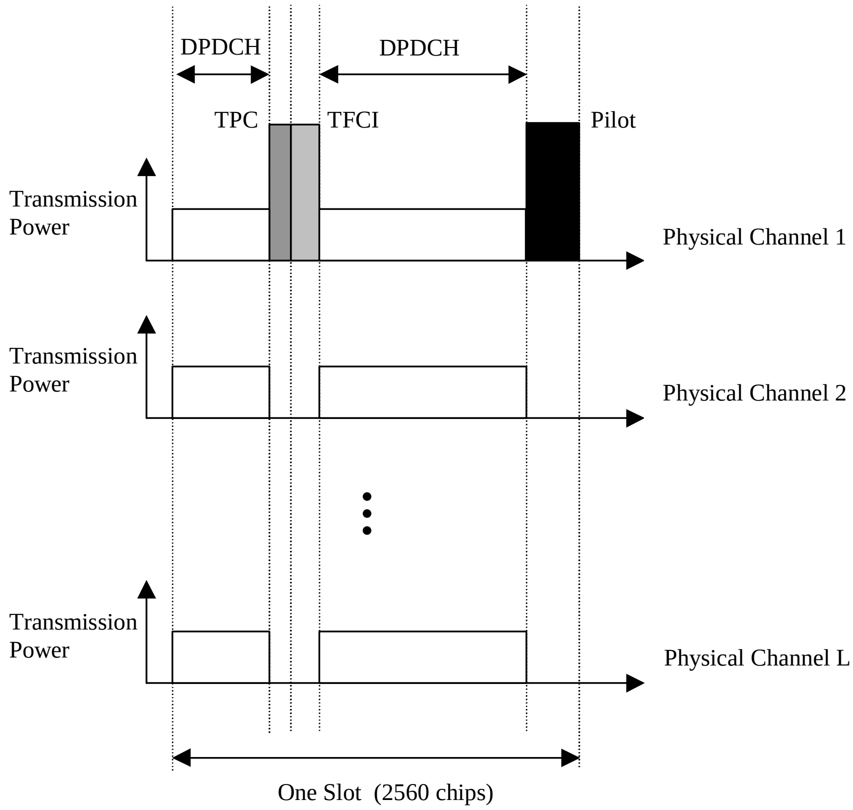


Figure 10: Downlink slot format in case of multi-code transmission

5.3.2.1 STTD for DPCH

The pilot bit pattern for the DPCH channel transmitted on antenna 2 is given in table 14.

- For N_{pilot} = 8, 16 the shadowed part indicates pilot bits that are obtained by STTD encoding the corresponding (shadowed) bits in Table 12. The non-shadowed pilot bit pattern is orthogonal to the corresponding (non-shadowed) pilot bit pattern in table 12.

- For N_{pilot} = 4, the diversity antenna pilot bit pattern is obtained by STTD encoding both the shadowed and non-shadowed pilot bits in table 12.

- For N_{pilot} = 2, the diversity antenna pilot pattern is obtained by STTD encoding the two pilot bits in table 12 with the last two bits (data or DTX) of the second data field (data2) of the slot. Thus for N_{pilot} = 2 case, the last two bits of the second data field (data 2) after STTD encoding, follow the diversity antenna pilot bits in Table 14.

STTD encoding for the DPDCH, TPC, and TFCI fields is done as described in subclause 5.3.1.1.1. For the SF=512 DPCH, the first two bits in each slot, i.e. TPC bits, are not STTD encoded and the same bits are transmitted with equal power from the two antennas. The remaining four bits are STTD encoded.

For compressed mode through spreading factor reduction and for N_{pilot} > 4, symbol repetition shall be applied to the pilot bit patterns of table 14, in the same manner as described in 5.3.2. For slot formats 2B and 3B, i.e. compressed mode through spreading factor reduction and N_{pilot} = 4, the pilot bits transmitted on antenna 2 are STTD encoded, and thus the pilot bit pattern is as shown in the most right set of table 14.

Table 14: Pilot bit patterns of downlink DPCCH for antenna 2 using STTD

	N_{pilot} = 2 (*1)	N_{pilot} = 4 (*2)		N_{pilot} = 8 (*3)				N_{pilot} = 16 (*4)								N_{pilot} = 4 (*5)	
Symbol #	0	0	1	0	1	2	3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	0	1
Slot #0	01	01	10	11	00	00	10	11	00	00	10	11	00	00	10	01	10
1	10	10	10	11	00	00	01	11	00	00	01	11	10	00	10	10	01
2	11	11	10	11	11	00	00	11	11	00	00	11	10	00	11	11	00
3	10	10	10	11	10	00	01	11	10	00	01	11	00	00	00	10	01
4	00	00	10	11	11	00	11	11	11	00	11	11	01	00	10	00	11
5	01	01	10	11	00	00	10	11	00	00	10	11	11	00	00	01	10
6	01	01	10	11	10	00	10	11	10	00	10	11	01	00	11	01	10
7	00	00	10	11	10	00	11	11	10	00	11	11	10	00	11	00	11
8	11	11	10	11	00	00	00	11	00	00	00	11	01	00	01	11	00
9	01	01	10	11	01	00	10	11	01	00	10	11	01	00	01	01	10
10	11	11	10	11	11	00	00	11	11	00	00	11	00	00	10	11	00
11	00	00	10	11	01	00	11	11	01	00	11	11	00	00	01	00	11
12	00	00	10	11	10	00	11	11	10	00	11	11	11	00	00	00	11
13	10	10	10	11	01	00	01	11	01	00	01	11	10	00	01	10	01
14	10	10	10	11	01	00	01	11	01	00	01	11	11	00	11	10	01

NOTE *1: The pilot bits precede the last two bits of the data2 field.
NOTE *2: This pattern is used except slot formats 2B and 3B.
NOTE *3: This pattern is used except slot formats 0B, 1B, 4B, 5B, 8B, and 9B.
NOTE *4: This pattern is used except slot formats 6B, 7B, 10B, 11B, 12B, and 13B.
NOTE *5: This pattern is used for slot formats 2B and 3B.
NOTE: For slot format *n*B where *n* = 0, 1, 4, 5, 6, …, 15, the pilot bit pattern corresponding to $N_{pilot}/2$ is to be used and symbol repetition shall be applied.

5.3.2.2 Dedicated channel pilots with closed loop mode transmit diversity

In closed loop mode 1 orthogonal pilot patterns are used between the transmit antennas. Closed loop mode 1 shall not be used with DPCH slot formats for which Npilot=2. Pilot patterns defined in the table 12 will be used on antenna 1 and pilot patterns defined in the table 15 on antenna 2. This is illustrated in the figure 11 a which indicates the difference in the pilot patterns with different shading.

Table 15: Pilot bit patterns of downlink DPCCH for antenna 2 using closed loop mode 1

		N_{pilot} = 4		N_{pilot} = 8 (*1)				N_{pilot} = 16 (*2)									
Symbol #		0	1	0	1	2	3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		
Slot #0		01	10	11	00	00	10	11	00	00	10	11	00	00	10		
1		10	10	11	00	00	01	11	00	00	01	11	10	00	10		
2		11	10	11	11	00	00	11	11	00	00	11	10	00	11		
3		10	10	11	10	00	01	11	10	00	01	11	00	00	00		
4		00	10	11	11	00	11	11	11	00	11	11	01	00	10		
5		01	10	11	00	00	10	11	00	00	10	11	11	00	00		
6		01	10	11	10	00	10	11	10	00	10	11	01	00	11		
7		00	10	11	10	00	11	11	10	00	11	11	10	00	11		
8		11	10	11	00	00	00	11	00	00	00	11	01	00	01		
9		01	10	11	01	00	10	11	01	00	10	11	01	00	01		
10		11	10	11	11	00	00	11	11	00	00	11	00	00	10		
11		00	10	11	01	00	11	11	01	00	11	11	00	00	01		
12		00	10	11	10	00	11	11	10	00	11	11	11	00	00		
13		10	10	11	01	00	01	11	01	00	01	11	10	00	01		
14		10	10	11	01	00	01	11	01	00	01	11	11	00	11		

NOTE *1: This pattern is used except slot formats 0B, 1B, 4B, 5B, 8B, and 9B.
NOTE *2: This pattern is used except slot formats 6B, 7B, 10B, 11B, 12B, and 13B.
NOTE: For slot format *n*B where *n* = 0, 1, 4, 5, 6, …, 15, the pilot bit pattern corresponding to $N_{pilot}/2$ is to be used and symbol repetition shall be applied.

In closed loop mode 2 same pilot pattern is used on both of the antennas (see figure 11 b). The pattern to be used is according to the table 12.

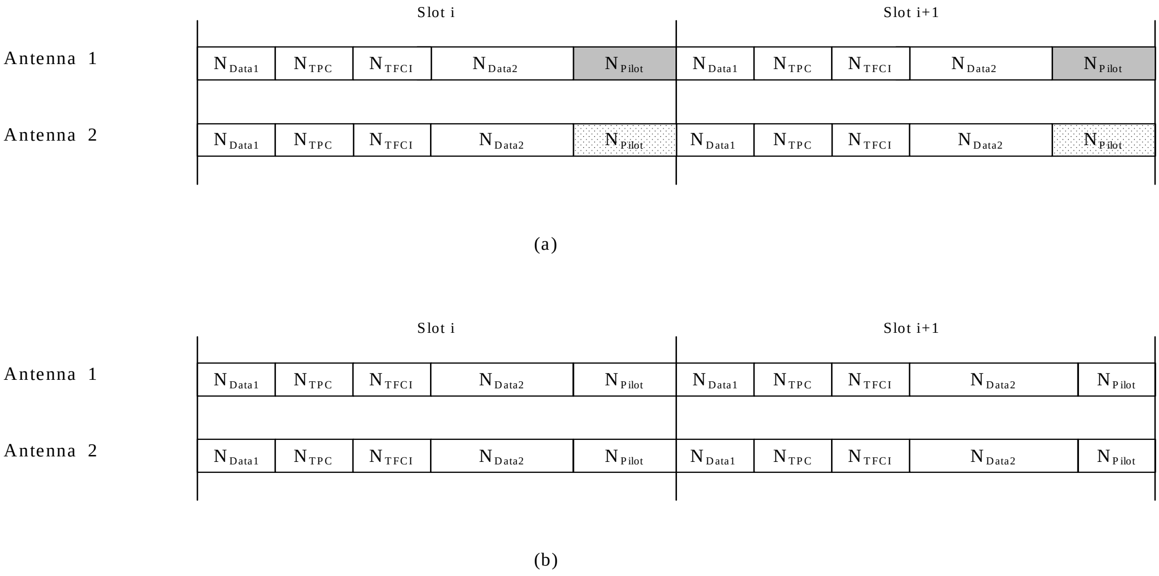


Figure 11: Slot structures for downlink dedicated physical channel diversity transmission. Structure (a) is used in closed loop mode 1. Structure (b) is used in closed loop mode 2. Different shading of the pilots indicate orthogonality of the patterns

5.3.2.3 DL-DPCCH for CPCH

The downlink DPCCH for CPCH is a special case of downlink dedicated physical channel of the slot format #0 in table 11. The spreading factor for the DL-DPCCH is 512. Figure 12 shows the frame structure of DL-DPCCH for CPCH.

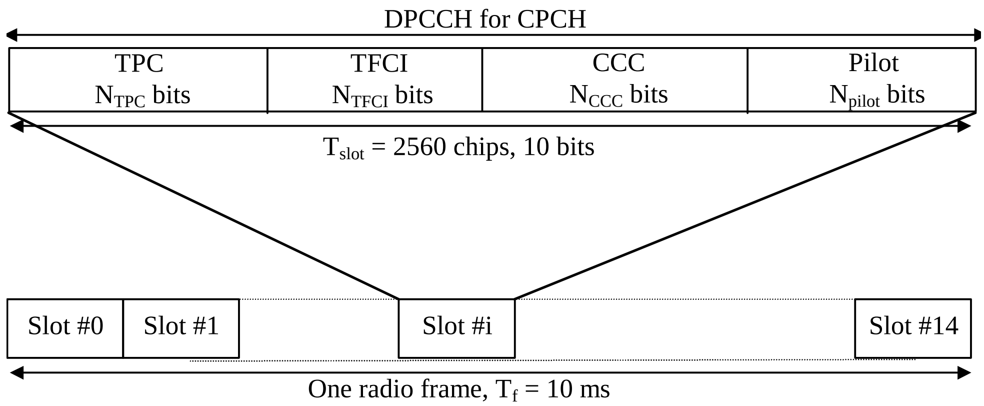


Figure 12: Frame structure for downlink DPCCH for CPCH

DL-DPCCH for CPCH consists of known pilot bits, TFCI, TPC commands and CPCH Control Commands (CCC). CPCH control commands are used to support CPCH signalling. There are two types of CPCH control commands: Layer 1 control command such as Start of Message Indicator, and higher layer control command such as Emergency Stop command. The exact number of bits of DL DPCCH fields (N_{pilot}, N_{TFCI}, N_{CCC} and N_{TPC}) is determined in Table 16. The pilot bit pattern for N_{pilot}=4 of table 12 is used for DPCCH for CPCH.

Table 16: DPCCH fields for CPCH message transmission

Slot Format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	Channel Symbol Rate (ksps)	SF	Bits/ Slot	DPCCH Bits/Slot				Transmitted slots per radio frame N_{Tr}
					N_{TPC}	N_{TFCI}	N_{CCC}	N_{Pilot}	
0	15	7.5	512	10	2	0	4	4	15

The DL DPCCH power control preamble for CPCH shall take the same slot format as afterwards, as given in Table 16. The length of the power control preamble is a higher-layer parameter, $L_{pc\text{-}preamble}$ (see [5], section 6.2), signalled by the network. When $L_{pc\text{-}preamble} > 0$, the pilot patterns from slot #(15 – $L_{pc\text{-}preamble}$) to slot #14 of table 12 shall be used for the power control preamble pilot patterns.

CCC field in figure 12 is used for the transmission of CPCH control command. On CPCH control command transmission request from higher layer, a certain pattern is mapped onto CCC field, otherwise nothing is transmitted in CCC field. There is one to one mapping between the CPCH control command and the pattern. In case of Emergency Stop of CPCH transmission, [1111] pattern is mapped onto CCC field. The Emergency Stop command shall not be transmitted during the first $N_{Start\_Message}$ frames of DL DPCCH after Power Control preamble.

Start of Message Indicator shall be transmitted during the first $N_{Start\_Message}$ frames of DL DPCCH after Power Control preamble. [1010] pattern is mapped onto CCC field for Start of Message Indicator. The value of $N_{Start\_Message}$ shall be provided by higher layers.

5.3.2.4 E-DCH Relative Grant Channel

The E-DCH Relative Grant Channel (E-RGCH) is a fixed rate (SF=128) dedicated downlink physical channel carrying the uplink E-DCH relative grants. Figure 12A illustrates the structure of the E-RGCH. A relative grant is transmitted using 3 or 15 consecutive slots and in each slot a sequence of 40 ternary values is transmitted.

The sequence $b_{i,0}$, $b_{i,1}$, …, $b_{i,39}$ transmitted in slot i in Figure 12A is given by $b_{i,j} = a\, C_{ss,40,l,j}$. In a serving E-DCH radio link set, the relative grant a is set to +1, 0, or -1 and in a non-serving E-DCH radio link set, the relative grant a is set to 0 or -1. The orthogonal signature sequences $C_{ss,40,l}$ is given by Table 16A and the E-RGCH signature sequence index l is given by higher layers.

In case STTD-based open loop transmit diversity is applied for E-RGCH, STTD encoding according to subclause 5.3.1.1.1 is applied to the sequence $b_{i,j}$.

~~The UE shall be able to receive both an E-HICH and an E-RGCH if and only if the same channelization code and scrambling code has been assigned to them.~~

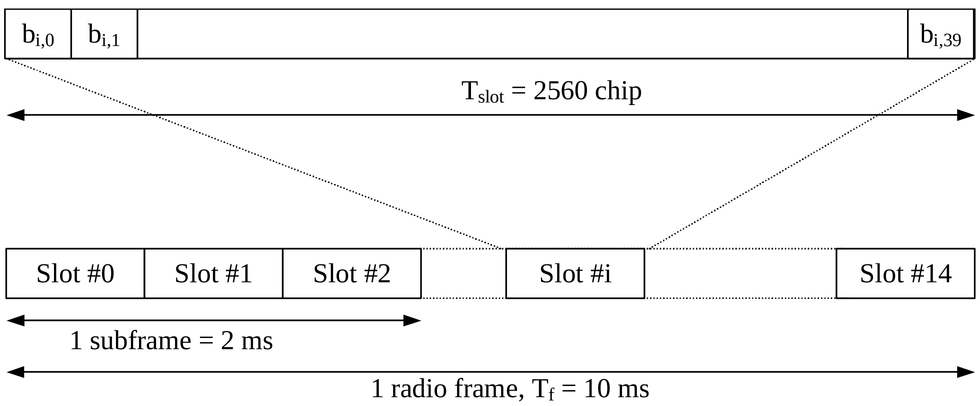


Figure 12A: E-RGCH and E-HICH structure

Table 16A: E-RGCH and E-HICH signature sequences

$C_{ss,40,0}$	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
$C_{ss,40,1}$	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1
$C_{ss,40,2}$	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1
$C_{ss,40,3}$	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1
$C_{ss,40,4}$	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1
$C_{ss,40,5}$	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1
$C_{ss,40,6}$	1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1
$C_{ss,40,7}$	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1
$C_{ss,40,8}$	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1
$C_{ss,40,9}$	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1
$C_{ss,40,10}$	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1
$C_{ss,40,11}$	1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1
$C_{ss,40,12}$	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1
$C_{ss,40,13}$	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1
$C_{ss,40,14}$	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1
$C_{ss,40,15}$	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1
$C_{ss,40,16}$	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1
$C_{ss,40,17}$	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1
$C_{ss,40,18}$	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1
$C_{ss,40,19}$	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1
$C_{ss,40,20}$	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
$C_{ss,40,21}$	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1
$C_{ss,40,22}$	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1
$C_{ss,40,23}$	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1
$C_{ss,40,24}$	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1
$C_{ss,40,25}$	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1
$C_{ss,40,26}$	1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1
$C_{ss,40,27}$	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1
$C_{ss,40,28}$	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1
$C_{ss,40,29}$	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1
$C_{ss,40,30}$	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1
$C_{ss,40,31}$	1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1
$C_{ss,40,32}$	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1
$C_{ss,40,33}$	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1
$C_{ss,40,34}$	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1
$C_{ss,40,35}$	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1
$C_{ss,40,36}$	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1
$C_{ss,40,37}$	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1
$C_{ss,40,38}$	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1
$C_{ss,40,39}$	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1

The bits are transmitted in order from left to right, i.e., column 2 corresponds to index j=0 and the rightmost column corresponds to index j=39.

5.3.2.5 E-DCH Hybrid ARQ Indicator Channel

The E-DCH Hybrid ARQ Indicator Channel (E-HICH) is a fixed rate (SF=128) dedicated downlink physical channel carrying the uplink E-DCH hybrid ARQ acknowledgement indicator. Figure 12A illustrates the structure of the E-HICH. A hybrid ARQ acknowledgement indicator is transmitted using 3 or 15 consecutive slots and in each slot a sequence of 40 binary values is transmitted.

The sequence $b_{i,0}$, $b_{i,1}$, …, $b_{i,39}$ transmitted in slot i in Figure 12A is given by $b_{i,j} = a\, C_{ss,40,l,j}$. In a radio link set containing the serving E-DCH radio link set, the hybrid ARQ acknowledgement indicator a is set to +1 or –1, and in a radio link set not containing the~~non-~~serving E-DCH radio link set the hybrid ARQ indicator a is set to +1 or 0. The orthogonal signature sequences $C_{ss,40,l}$ is given by Table 16A and the E-HICH signature sequence index l is given by higher layers.

In case STTD-based open loop transmit diversity is applied for E-HICH, STTD encoding according to subclause 5.3.1.1.1 is applied to the sequence $b_{i,j}$

~~The UE shall be able to receive both an E-HICH and an E-RGCH if and only if the same channelization code and scrambling code has been assigned to them.~~

5.3.3 Common downlink physical channels

5.3.3.1 Common Pilot Channel (CPICH)

The CPICH is a fixed rate (30 kbps, SF=256) downlink physical channel that carries a pre-defined bit sequence. Figure 13 shows the frame structure of the CPICH.

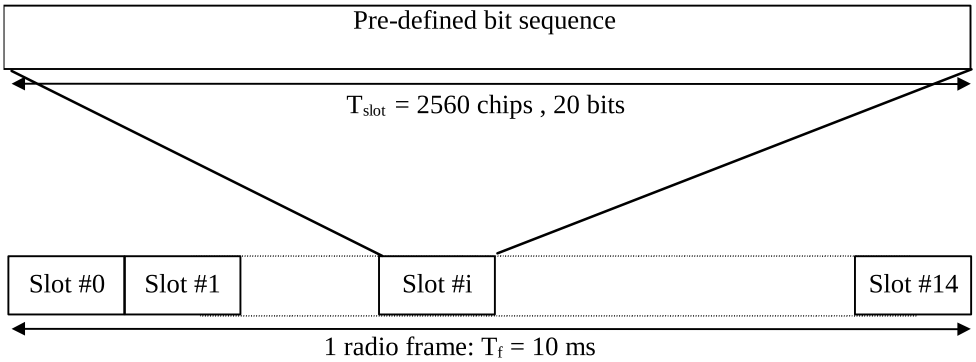


Figure 13: Frame structure for Common Pilot Channel

In case transmit diversity (open or closed loop) is used on any downlink channel in the cell, the CPICH shall be transmitted from both antennas using the same channelization and scrambling code. In this case, the pre-defined bit sequence of the CPICH is different for Antenna 1 and Antenna 2, see figure 14. In case of no transmit diversity, the bit sequence of Antenna 1 in figure 14 is used.

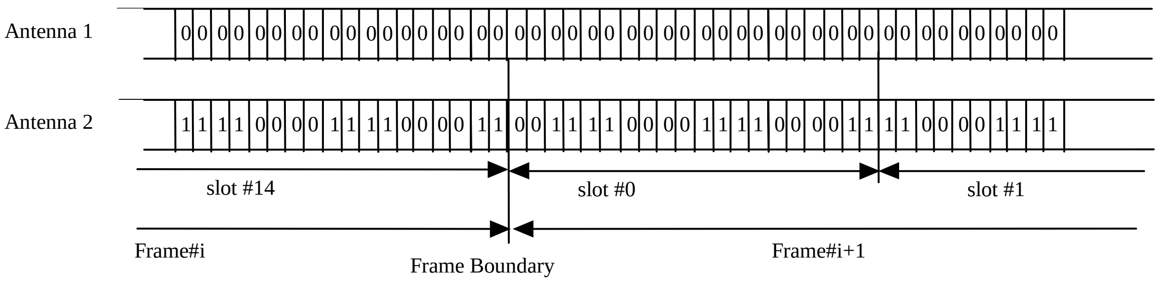


Figure 14: Modulation pattern for Common Pilot Channel

There are two types of Common pilot channels, the Primary and Secondary CPICH. They differ in their use and the limitations placed on their physical features.

5.3.3.1.1 Primary Common Pilot Channel (P-CPICH)

The Primary Common Pilot Channel (P-CPICH) has the following characteristics:

- The same channelization code is always used for the P-CPICH, see [4];
- The P-CPICH is scrambled by the primary scrambling code, see [4];
- There is one and only one P-CPICH per cell;
- The P-CPICH is broadcast over the entire cell.

The Primary CPICH is a phase reference for the following downlink channels: SCH, Primary CCPCH, AICH, PICH AP-AICH, CD/CA-ICH, CSICH, DL-DPCCH for CPCH and the S-CCPCH. By default, the Primary CPICH is also a phase reference for downlink DPCH and any associated PDSCH, HS-PDSCH and HS-SCCH. The UE is informed by higher layer signalling if the P-CPICH is not a phase reference for a downlink DPCH and any associated PDSCH, HS-PDSCH and HS-SCCH.

5.3.3.1.2 Secondary Common Pilot Channel (S-CPICH)

A Secondary Common Pilot Channel (S-CPICH) has the following characteristics:

- An arbitrary channelization code of SF=256 is used for the S-CPICH, see [4];
- A S-CPICH is scrambled by either the primary or a secondary scrambling code, see [4];
- There may be zero, one, or several S-CPICH per cell;
- A S-CPICH may be transmitted over the entire cell or only over a part of the cell;

A Secondary CPICH may be a phase reference for a downlink DPCH. If this is the case, the UE is informed about this by higher-layer signalling.

The Secondary CPICH can be a phase reference for a downlink physical channel using open loop or closed loop TX diversity, instead of the Primary CPICH being a phase reference.

Note that it is possible that neither the P-CPICH nor any S-CPICH is a phase reference for a downlink DPCH.

5.3.3.2 Downlink phase reference

Table 17 summarizes the possible phase references usable on different downlink physical channel types.

Table 17: Application of phase references on downlink physical channel types "X" – can be applied, "–" – not applied

Physical channel type	Primary-CPICH	Secondary-CPICH	Dedicated pilot
P-CCPCH	X	–	–
SCH	X	–	–
S-CCPCH	X	–	–
DPCH	X	X	X
PICH	X	–	–
PDSCH*	X	X	X
HS-PDSCH*	X	X	X
HS-SCCH*	X	X	X
E-AGCH*	X	X	X
E-RGCH*	X	X	X
E-HICH*	X	X	X
AICH	X	–	–
CSICH	X	–	–
DL-DPCCH for CPCH	X	–	–

Note *: The same phase reference as with the associated DPCH shall be used. The support for dedicated pilots as phase reference for HS-PDSCH, ~~and~~ HS-SCCH, E-AGCH, E-RGCH and E-HICH is optional for the UE.

Furthermore, during a PDSCH frame, and within the slot prior to that PDSCH frame, the phase reference on the associated DPCH shall not change. During a DPCH frame overlapping with any part of an associated HS-DSCH or HS-SCCH subframe, the phase reference on this DPCH shall not change.

5.3.3.3 Primary Common Control Physical Channel (P-CCPCH)

The Primary CCPCH is a fixed rate (30 kbps, SF=256) downlink physical channels used to carry the BCH transport channel.

Figure 15 shows the frame structure of the Primary CCPCH. The frame structure differs from the downlink DPCH in that no TPC commands, no TFCI and no pilot bits are transmitted. The Primary CCPCH is not transmitted during the first 256 chips of each slot. Instead, Primary SCH and Secondary SCH are transmitted during this period (see subclause 5.3.3.5).

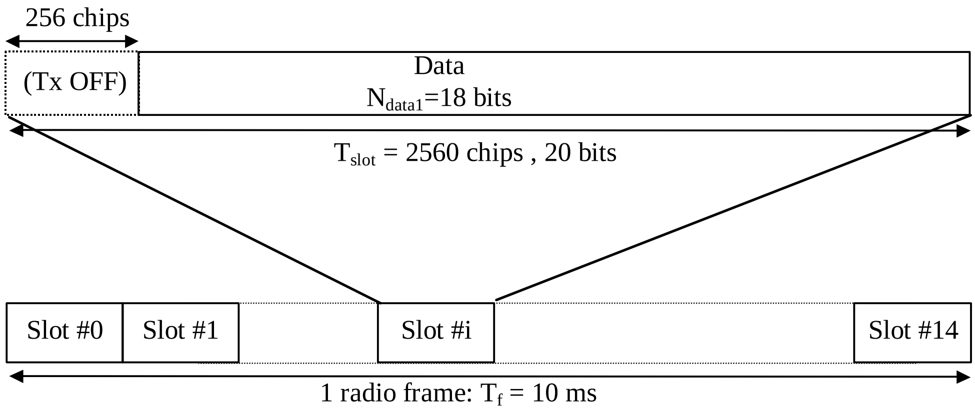


Figure 15: Frame structure for Primary Common Control Physical Channel

5.3.3.3.1 Primary CCPCH structure with STTD encoding

In case the diversity antenna is present in UTRAN and the P-CCPCH is to be transmitted using open loop transmit diversity, the data bits of the P-CCPCH are STTD encoded as given in subclause 5.3.1.1.1. The last two data bits in even numbered slots are STTD encoded together with the first two data bits in the following slot, except for slot #14 where the two last data bits are not STTD encoded and instead transmitted with equal power from both the antennas, see figure 16. Higher layers signal whether STTD encoding is used for the P-CCPCH or not. In addition the presence/absence of STTD encoding on P-CCPCH is indicated by modulating the SCH, see 5.3.3.4. During power on and hand over between cells the UE can determine the presence of STTD encoding on the P-CCPCH, by either receiving the higher layer message, by demodulating the SCH channel, or by a combination of the above two schemes.

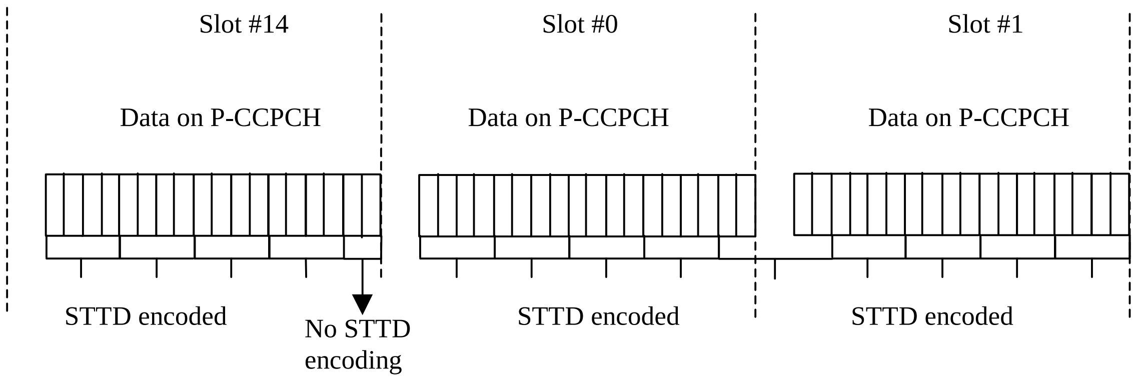


Figure 16: STTD encoding for the data bits of the P-CCPCH

5.3.3.4 Secondary Common Control Physical Channel (S-CCPCH)

The Secondary CCPCH is used to carry the FACH and PCH. There are two types of Secondary CCPCH: those that include TFCI and those that do not include TFCI. It is the UTRAN that determines if a TFCI should be transmitted, hence making it mandatory for all UEs to support the use of TFCI. The set of possible rates for the Secondary CCPCH is the same as for the downlink DPCH, see subclause 5.3.2. The frame structure of the Secondary CCPCH is shown in figure 17.

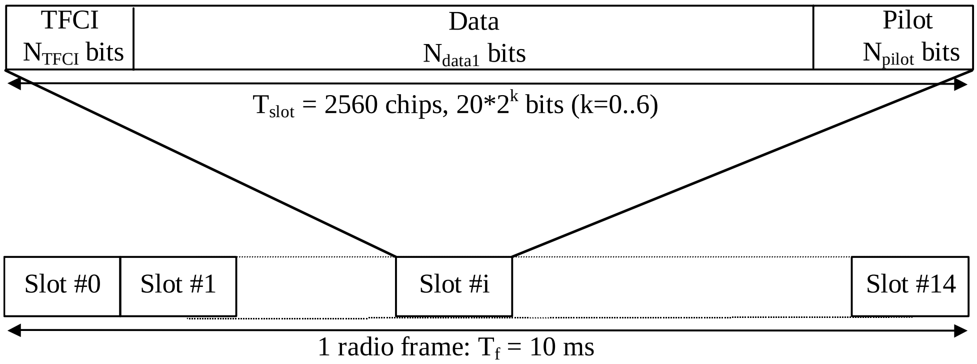


Figure 17: Frame structure for Secondary Common Control Physical Channel

The parameter k in figure 17 determines the total number of bits per downlink Secondary CCPCH slot. It is related to the spreading factor SF of the physical channel as SF = $256/2^k$. The spreading factor range is from 256 down to 4.

The values for the number of bits per field are given in Table 18. The channel bit and symbol rates given in Table 18 are the rates immediately before spreading. The slot formats with pilot bits are not supported in this release. The pilot patterns are given in Table 19.

The FACH and PCH can be mapped to the same or to separate Secondary CCPCHs. If FACH and PCH are mapped to the same Secondary CCPCH, they can be mapped to the same frame. The main difference between a CCPCH and a downlink dedicated physical channel is that a CCPCH is not inner-loop power controlled. The main difference between the Primary and Secondary CCPCH is that the transport channel mapped to the Primary CCPCH (BCH) can only have a fixed predefined transport format combination, while the Secondary CCPCH support multiple transport format combinations using TFCI.

Table 18: Secondary CCPCH fields

Slot Format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	Channel Symbol Rate (ksps)	SF	Bits/ Frame	Bits/ Slot	N_{data1}	N_{pilot}	N_{TFCI}
0	30	15	256	300	20	20	0	0
1	30	15	256	300	20	12	8	0
2	30	15	256	300	20	18	0	2
3	30	15	256	300	20	10	8	2
4	60	30	128	600	40	40	0	0
5	60	30	128	600	40	32	8	0
6	60	30	128	600	40	38	0	2
7	60	30	128	600	40	30	8	2
8	120	60	64	1200	80	72	0	8*
9	120	60	64	1200	80	64	8	8*
10	240	120	32	2400	160	152	0	8*
11	240	120	32	2400	160	144	8	8*
12	480	240	16	4800	320	312	0	8*
13	480	240	16	4800	320	296	16	8*
14	960	480	8	9600	640	632	0	8*
15	960	480	8	9600	640	616	16	8*
16	1920	960	4	19200	1280	1272	0	8*
17	1920	960	4	19200	1280	1256	16	8*

* If TFCI bits are not used, then DTX shall be used in TFCI field.

The pilot symbol pattern described in Table 19 is not supported in this release. The shadowed part can be used as frame synchronization words. (The symbol pattern of pilot symbols other than the frame synchronization word shall be "11"). In Table 19, the transmission order is from left to right. (Each two-bit pair represents an I/Q pair of QPSK modulation.)

Table 19: Pilot Symbol Pattern

	N_{pilot} = 8				N_{pilot} = 16							
Symbol #	0	1	2	3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Slot #0	11	11	11	10	11	11	11	10	11	11	11	10
1	11	00	11	10	11	00	11	10	11	11	11	00
2	11	01	11	01	11	01	11	01	11	10	11	00
3	11	00	11	00	11	00	11	00	11	01	11	10
4	11	10	11	01	11	10	11	01	11	11	11	11
5	11	11	11	10	11	11	11	10	11	01	11	01
6	11	11	11	00	11	11	11	00	11	10	11	11
7	11	10	11	00	11	10	11	00	11	10	11	00
8	11	01	11	10	11	01	11	10	11	00	11	11
9	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	00	11	11
10	11	01	11	01	11	01	11	01	11	11	11	10
11	11	10	11	11	11	10	11	11	11	00	11	10
12	11	10	11	00	11	10	11	00	11	01	11	01
13	11	00	11	11	11	00	11	11	11	00	11	00
14	11	00	11	11	11	00	11	11	11	10	11	01

For slot formats using TFCI, the TFCI value in each radio frame corresponds to a certain transport format combination of the FACHs and/or PCHs currently in use. This correspondence is (re-)negotiated at each FACH/PCH addition/removal. The mapping of the TFCI bits onto slots is described in [3].

5.3.3.4.1 Secondary CCPCH structure with STTD encoding

In case the diversity antenna is present in UTRAN and the S-CCPCH is to be transmitted using open loop transmit diversity, the data and TFCI bits of the S-CCPCH are STTD encoded as given in subclause 5.3.1.1.1. The pilot symbol pattern for antenna 2 for the S-CCPCH given in Table 20 is not supported in this release.

Table 20: Pilot symbol pattern for antenna 2 when STTD encoding is used on the S-CCPCH

	N_{pilot} = 8				N_{pilot} = 16							
Symbol #	0	1	2	3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Slot #0	11	00	00	10	11	00	00	10	11	00	00	10
1	11	00	00	01	11	00	00	01	11	10	00	10
2	11	11	00	00	11	11	00	00	11	10	00	11
3	11	10	00	01	11	10	00	01	11	00	00	00
4	11	11	00	11	11	11	00	11	11	01	00	10
5	11	00	00	10	11	00	00	10	11	11	00	00
6	11	10	00	10	11	10	00	10	11	01	00	11
7	11	10	00	11	11	10	00	11	11	10	00	11
8	11	00	00	00	11	00	00	00	11	01	00	01
9	11	01	00	10	11	01	00	10	11	01	00	01
10	11	11	00	00	11	11	00	00	11	00	00	10
11	11	01	00	11	11	01	00	11	11	00	00	01
12	11	10	00	11	11	10	00	11	11	11	00	00
13	11	01	00	01	11	01	00	01	11	10	00	01
14	11	01	00	01	11	01	00	01	11	11	00	11

5.3.3.5 Synchronisation Channel (SCH)

The Synchronisation Channel (SCH) is a downlink signal used for cell search. The SCH consists of two sub channels, the Primary and Secondary SCH. The 10 ms radio frames of the Primary and Secondary SCH are divided into 15 slots, each of length 2560 chips. Figure 18 illustrates the structure of the SCH radio frame.

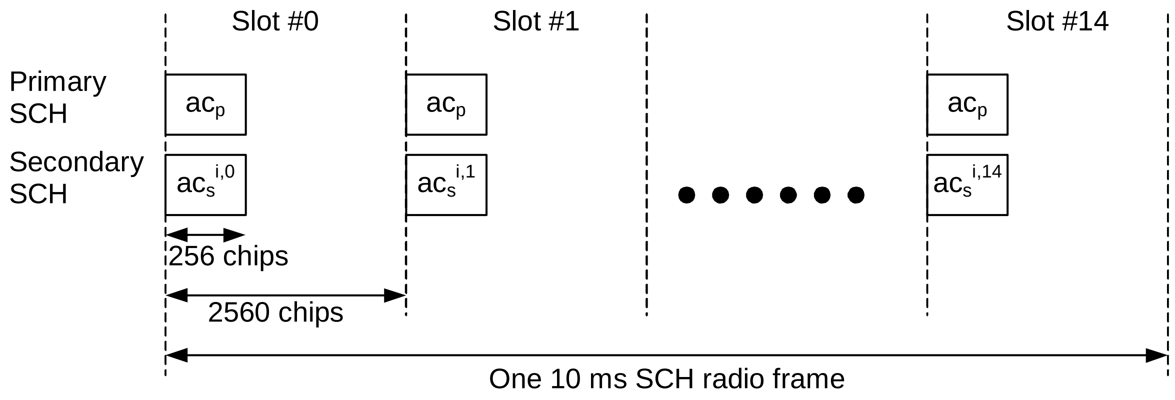


Figure 18: Structure of Synchronisation Channel (SCH)

The Primary SCH consists of a modulated code of length 256 chips, the Primary Synchronisation Code (PSC) denoted c_p in figure 18, transmitted once every slot. The PSC is the same for every cell in the system.

The Secondary SCH consists of repeatedly transmitting a length 15 sequence of modulated codes of length 256 chips, the Secondary Synchronisation Codes (SSC), transmitted in parallel with the Primary SCH. The SSC is denoted $c_s^{i,k}$ in figure 18, where i = 0, 1, …, 63 is the number of the scrambling code group, and k = 0, 1, …, 14 is the slot number. Each SSC is chosen from a set of 16 different codes of length 256. This sequence on the Secondary SCH indicates which of the code groups the cell's downlink scrambling code belongs to.

The primary and secondary synchronization codes are modulated by the symbol a shown in figure 18, which indicates the presence/ absence of STTD encoding on the P-CCPCH and is given by the following table:

P-CCPCH STTD encoded	a = +1
P-CCPCH not STTD encoded	a = -1

5.3.3.5.1 SCH transmitted by TSTD

Figure 19 illustrates the structure of the SCH transmitted by the TSTD scheme. In even numbered slots both PSC and SSC are transmitted on antenna 1, and in odd numbered slots both PSC and SSC are transmitted on antenna 2.

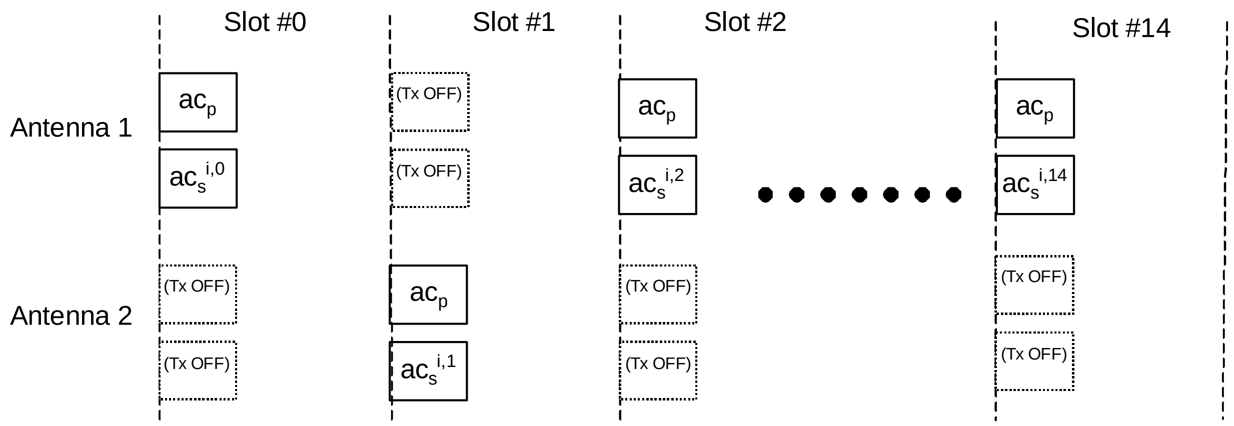


Figure 19: Structure of SCH transmitted by TSTD scheme

5.3.3.6 Physical Downlink Shared Channel (PDSCH)

The Physical Downlink Shared Channel (PDSCH) is used to carry the Downlink Shared Channel (DSCH).

A PDSCH corresponds to a channelisation code below or at a PDSCH root channelisation code. A PDSCH is allocated on a radio frame basis to a single UE. Within one radio frame, UTRAN may allocate different PDSCHs under the same PDSCH root channelisation code to different UEs based on code multiplexing. Within the same radio frame, multiple parallel PDSCHs, with the same spreading factor, may be allocated to a single UE. This is a special case of multicode transmission. All the PDSCHs are operated with radio frame synchronisation.

The notion of PDSCH root channelisation code is defined in [4].

PDSCHs allocated to the same UE on different radio frames may have different spreading factors.

The frame and slot structure of the PDSCH are shown on figure 20.

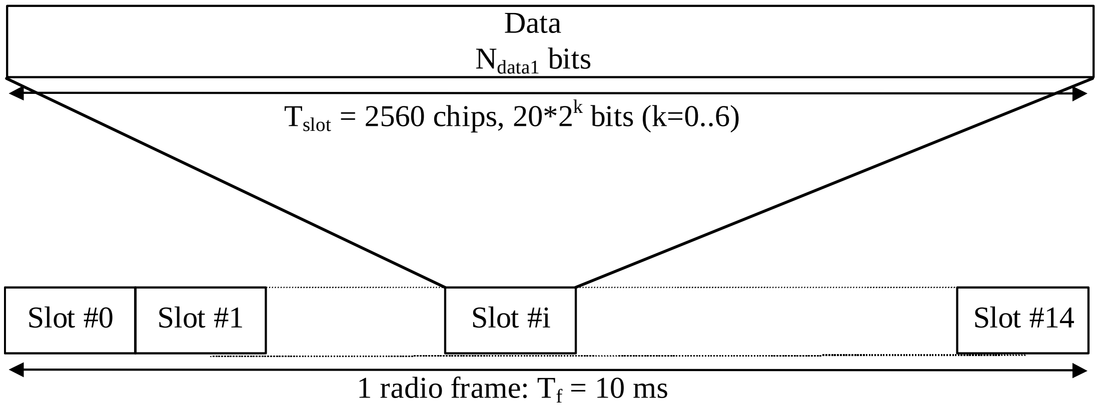


Figure 20: Frame structure for the PDSCH

For each radio frame, each PDSCH is associated with one downlink DPCH. The PDSCH and associated DPCH do not necessarily have the same spreading factors and are not necessarily frame aligned.

All relevant Layer 1 control information is transmitted on the DPCCH part of the associated DPCH, i.e. the PDSCH does not carry Layer 1 information. To indicate for UE that there is data to decode on the DSCH, the TFCI field of the associated DPCH shall be used.

The TFCI informs the UE of the instantaneous transport format parameters related to the PDSCH as well as the channelisation code of the PDSCH.

The channel bit rates and symbol rates for PDSCH are given in Table 21.

For PDSCH the allowed spreading factors may vary from 256 to 4.

Table 21: PDSCH fields

Slot format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	Channel Symbol Rate (ksps)	SF	Bits/ Frame	Bits/ Slot	N_{data1}
0	30	15	256	300	20	20
1	60	30	128	600	40	40
2	120	60	64	1200	80	80
3	240	120	32	2400	160	160
4	480	240	16	4800	320	320
5	960	480	8	9600	640	640
6	1920	960	4	19200	1280	1280

When open loop transmit diversity is employed for the PDSCH, STTD encoding is used on the data bits as described in subclause 5.3.1.1.1.

When closed loop transmit diversity is employed on the associated DPCH, it shall be used also on the PDSCH as described in [5].

5.3.3.7 Acquisition Indicator Channel (AICH)

The Acquisition Indicator channel (AICH) is a fixed rate (SF=256) physical channel used to carry Acquisition Indicators (AI). Acquisition Indicator AI_s corresponds to signature s on the PRACH.

Figure 21 illustrates the structure of the AICH. The AICH consists of a repeated sequence of 15 consecutive *access slots* (AS), each of length 5120 chips. Each access slot consists of two parts, an *Acquisition-Indicator* (AI) part consisting of 32 real-valued signals $a_0, \ldots, a_{31}$ and a part of duration 1024 chips with no transmission that is not formally part of the AICH. The part of the slot with no transmission is reserved for possible use by CSICH or possible future use by other physical channels.

The spreading factor (SF) used for channelisation of the AICH is 256.

The phase reference for the AICH is the Primary CPICH.

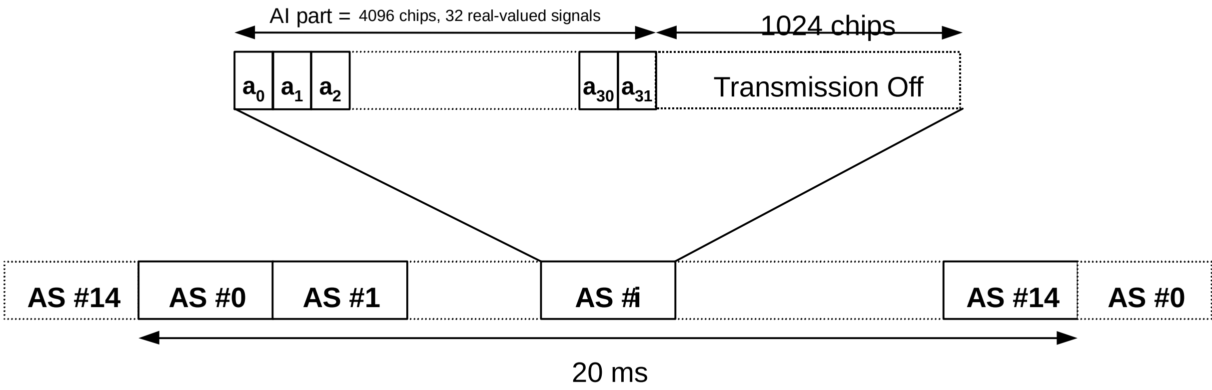


Figure 21: Structure of Acquisition Indicator Channel (AICH)

The real-valued signals $a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_{31}$ in figure 21 are given by

$$a_j = \sum_{s=0}^{15} AI_s b_{s,j}$$

where AI_s, taking the values +1, -1, and 0, is the acquisition indicator corresponding to signature s and the sequence $b_{s,0}, \ldots, b_{s,31}$ is given by Table 22. If the signature s is not a member of the set of available signatures for all the Access Service Class (ASC) for the corresponding PRACH (cf [5]), then AI_s shall be set to 0.

The use of acquisition indicators is described in [5]. If an Acquisition Indicator is set to +1, it represents a positive acknowledgement. If an Acquisition Indicator is set to -1, it represents a negative acknowledgement.

The real-valued signals, a_j, are spread and modulated in the same fashion as bits when represented in { +1, -1 } form.

In case STTD-based open-loop transmit diversity is applied to AICH, STTD encoding according to subclause 5.3.1.1.1 is applied to each sequence $b_{s,0}, b_{s,1}, \ldots, b_{s,31}$ separately before the sequences are combined into AICH signals $a_0, \ldots, a_{31}$.

Table 22: AICH signature patterns

s	$b_{s,0}, b_{s,1} \ldots, b_{s,31}$																														
0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1
2	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1
3	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1
4	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
5	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1
6	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1
7	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1
8	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
9	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1
10	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1
11	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1
12	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
13	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1
14	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1
15	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1

5.3.3.8 CPCH Access Preamble Acquisition Indicator Channel (AP-AICH)

The Access Preamble Acquisition Indicator channel (AP-AICH) is a fixed rate (SF=256) physical channel used to carry AP acquisition indicators (API) of CPCH. AP acquisition indicator API_s corresponds to AP signature *s* transmitted by UE.

AP-AICH and AICH may use the same or different channelisation codes. The phase reference for the AP-AICH is the Primary CPICH. Figure 22 illustrates the structure of AP-AICH. The AP-AICH has a part of duration 4096 chips where the AP acquisition indicator (API) is transmitted, followed by a part of duration 1024chips with no transmission that is not formally part of the AP-AICH. The part of the slot with no transmission is reserved for possible use by CSICH or possible future use by other physical channels.

The spreading factor (SF) used for channelisation of the AP-AICH is 256.

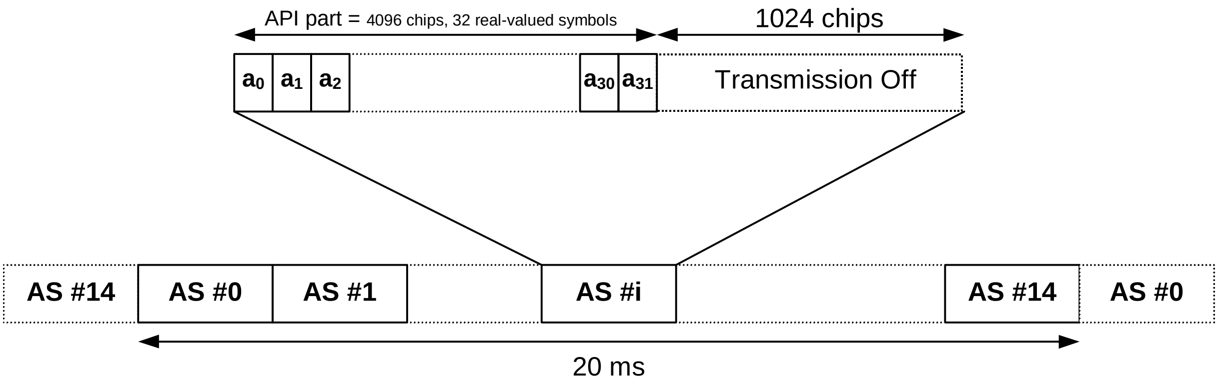


Figure 22: Structure of AP Acquisition Indicator Channel (AP-AICH)

The real-valued symbols a_0, a_1, …, a_{31} in figure 22 are given by

$$a_j = \sum_{s=0}^{15} API_s \times b_{s,j}$$

where API_s, taking the values +1, -1, and 0, is the AP acquisition indicator corresponding to Access Preamble signature s transmitted by UE and the sequence $b_{s,0}$, …, $b_{s,31}$ is given in Table 22. If the signature s is not a member of the set of UL Access Preamble signatures for the corresponding PCPCH (cf [5] then API_s shall be set to 0.

The use of acquisition indicators is described in [5]. If an AP acquisition indicator is set to +1, it represents a positive acknowledgement. If an AP acquisition indicator is set to -1, it represents a negative acknowledgement.

The real-valued symbols, a_j, are spread and modulated in the same fashion as bits when represented in { +1, -1 } form.

In case STTD-based open-loop transmit diversity is applied to AP-AICH, STTD encoding according to subclause 5.3.1.1.1 is applied to each sequence $b_{s,0}$, $b_{s,1}$, ..., $b_{s,31}$ separately before the sequences are combined into AP-AICH symbols a_0, …, a_{31}.

5.3.3.9 CPCH Collision Detection/Channel Assignment Indicator Channel (CD/CA-ICH)

The Collision Detection Channel Assignment Indicator channel (CD/CA-ICH) is a fixed rate (SF=256) physical channel used to carry CD Indicator (CDI) only if the CA is not active, or CD Indicator/CA Indicator (CDI/CAI) at the same time if the CA is active. The structure of CD/CA-ICH is shown in figure 23. CD/CA-ICH and AP-AICH may use the same or different channelisation codes.

The CD/CA-ICH has a part of duration of 4096chips where the CDI/CAI is transmitted, followed by a part of duration 1024chips with no transmission that is not formally part of the CD/CA-ICH. The part of the slot with no transmission is reserved for possible use by CSICH or possible future use by other physical channels.

The spreading factor (SF) used for channelisation of the CD/CA-ICH is 256.

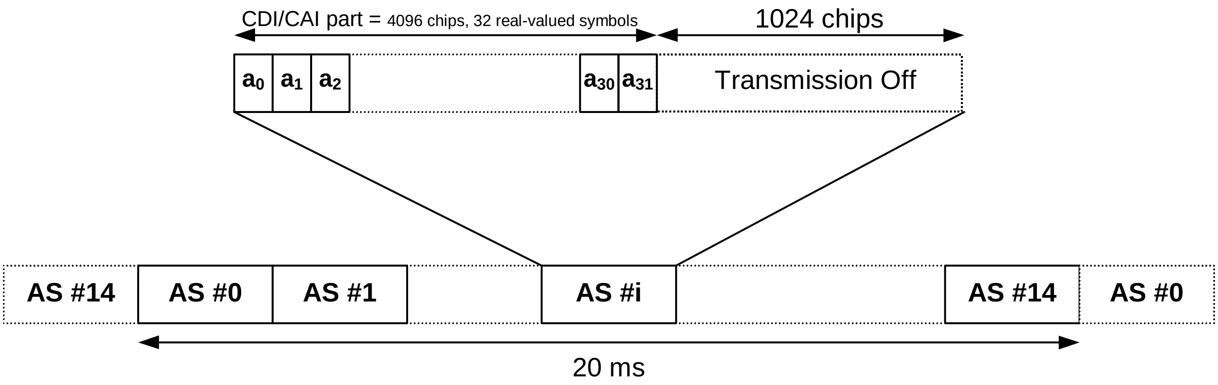


Figure 23: Structure of CD/CA Indicator Channel (CD/CA-ICH)

In case STTD-based open-loop transmit diversity is applied to CD/CA-ICH, STTD encoding according to subclause 5.3.1.1.1 is applied to each sequence $b_{s,0}$, $b_{s,1}$, ..., $b_{s,31}$ separately before the sequences are combined into CD/CA-ICH symbols a_0, …, a_{31}.

In case CA is not active, the real-valued symbols a_0, a_1, …, a_{31} in figure 23 are given by

$$a_j = \sum_{s=0}^{15} CDI_s \times b_{s,j}$$

where CDI_s, taking the values +1, and 0, is the CD indicator corresponding to CD preamble signature *s* transmitted by UE and the sequence $b_{s,0}$, …, $b_{s,31}$ is given in Table 22. If the signature *s* is not a member of the set of CD Preamble signatures for the corresponding PCPCH (cf [5]), then CDI_s shall be set to 0.

The real-valued symbols, a_j, are spread and modulated in the same fashion as bits when represented in { +1, -1 } form.

In case CA is active, the real-valued symbols a_0, a_1, …, a_{31} in figure 23 are given by

$$a_j = \sum_{i=0}^{15} CDI_i \times b_{s_i,j} + \sum_{k=0}^{15} CAI_k \times b_{s_k,j}$$

where the subscript $s_{i,}$, s_k depend on the indexes *i*, *k* according to Table 23, respectively, and indicate the signature number *s* in Table 22. The sequence $b_{s,0}$, …, $b_{s,31}$ is given in Table 22. CDI_i, taking the values +1/0 or -1/0, is the CD indicator corresponding to the CD preamble *i* transmitted by the UE, and CAI_k, taking the values +1/0 or -1/0, is the CA indicator corresponding to the assigned channel index *k* as given in Table 23. If the signature s_i is not a member of the set of CD Preamble signatures for the corresponding PCPCH (cf [5]), then CDI_s shall be set to 0. Similarly, if the signature s_k is not a member of the set of CD Preamble signatures for the corresponding PCPCH (cf [5]), then CDI_s shall be set to 0.

Table 23. Generation of CDI_i/CAI_k

UE transmitted CD Preamble i	CDI_i	signature s_i	Channel Assignment Index k	CAI_k	signature s_k
0	+1/0	1	0	+1/0	0
1	-1/0		1	-1/0	
2	+1/0	3	2	+1/0	8
3	-1/0		3	-1/0	
4	+1/0	5	4	+1/0	4
5	-1/0		5	-1/0	
6	+1/0	7	6	+1/0	12
7	-1/0		7	-1/0	
8	+1/0	9	8	+1/0	2
9	-1/0		9	-1/0	
10	+1/0	11	10	+1/0	10
11	-1/0		11	-1/0	
12	+1/0	13	12	+1/0	6
13	-1/0		13	-1/0	
14	+1/0	15	14	+1/0	14
15	-1/0		15	-1/0	

5.3.3.10 Paging Indicator Channel (PICH)

The Paging Indicator Channel (PICH) is a fixed rate (SF=256) physical channel used to carry the paging indicators. The PICH is always associated with an S-CCPCH to which a PCH transport channel is mapped.

Figure 24 illustrates the frame structure of the PICH. One PICH radio frame of length 10 ms consists of 300 bits (b_0, b_1, …, b_{299}). Of these, 288 bits (b_0, b_1, …, b_{287}) are used to carry paging indicators. The remaining 12 bits are not formally part of the PICH and shall not be transmitted (DTX). The part of the frame with no transmission is reserved for possible future use.

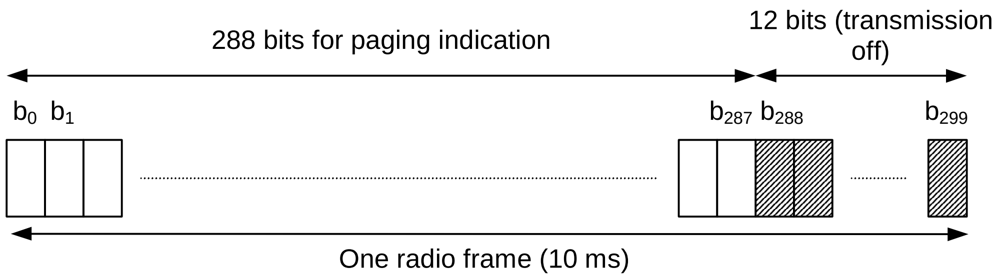


Figure 24: Structure of Paging Indicator Channel (PICH)

In each PICH frame, Np paging indicators {P_0, …, P_{Np-1}} are transmitted, where Np=18, 36, 72, or 144.

The PI calculated by higher layers for use for a certain UE, is associated to the paging indicator P_q, where q is computed as a function of the PI computed by higher layers, the SFN of the P-CCPCH radio frame during which the start of the PICH radio frame occurs, and the number of paging indicators per frame (Np):

$$q = \left(PI + \left\lfloor \left((18 \times (SFN + \lfloor SFN/8 \rfloor + \lfloor SFN/64 \rfloor + \lfloor SFN/512 \rfloor)) \bmod 144 \right) \times \frac{Np}{144} \right\rfloor \right) \bmod Np$$

Further, the PI calculated by higher layers is associated with the value of the paging indicator P_q. If a paging indicator in a certain frame is set to "1" it is an indication that UEs associated with this paging indicator and PI should read the corresponding frame of the associated S-CCPCH.

The PI bitmap in the PCH data frames over Iub contains indication values for all higher layer PI values possible. Each bit in the bitmap indicates if the paging indicator associated with that particular PI shall be set to 0 or 1. Hence, the calculation in the formula above is to be performed in Node B to make the association between PI and P_q.

The mapping from $\{P_0, \ldots, P_{Np-1}\}$ to the PICH bits $\{b_0, \ldots, b_{287}\}$ are according to Table 24.

Table 24: Mapping of paging indicators P_q to PICH bits

Number of paging indicators per frame (Np)	P_q = 1	P_q = 0
Np=18	$\{b_{16q}, \ldots, b_{16q+15}\} = \{1, 1,\ldots, 1\}$	$\{b_{16q}, \ldots, b_{16q+15}\} = \{0, 0,\ldots, 0\}$
Np=36	$\{b_{8q}, \ldots, b_{8q+7}\} = \{1, 1,\ldots, 1\}$	$\{b_{8q}, \ldots, b_{8q+7}\} = \{0, 0,\ldots, 0\}$
Np=72	$\{b_{4q}, \ldots, b_{4q+3}\} = \{1, 1,\ldots, 1\}$	$\{b_{4q}, \ldots, b_{4q+3}\} = \{0, 0,\ldots, 0\}$
Np=144	$\{b_{2q}, b_{2q+1}\} = \{1, 1\}$	$\{b_{2q}, b_{2q+1}\} = \{0, 0\}$

When transmit diversity is employed for the PICH, STTD encoding is used on the PICH bits as described in subclause 5.3.1.1.1.

5.3.3.11 CPCH Status Indicator Channel (CSICH)

The CPCH Status Indicator Channel (CSICH) is a fixed rate (SF=256) physical channel used to carry CPCH status information.

A CSICH is always associated with a physical channel used for transmission of CPCH AP-AICH and uses the same channelization and scrambling codes. Figure 25 illustrates the frame structure of the CSICH. The CSICH frame consists of 15 consecutive access slots (AS) each of length 40 bits. Each access slot consists of two parts, a part of duration 4096 chips with no transmission that is not formally part of the CSICH, and a Status Indicator (SI) part consisting of 8 bits $b_{8i},\ldots b_{8i+7}$, where i is the access slot number. The part of the slot with no transmission is reserved for use by AICH, AP-AICH or CD/CA-ICH. The modulation used by the CSICH is the same as for the PICH. The phase reference for the CSICH is the Primary CPICH.

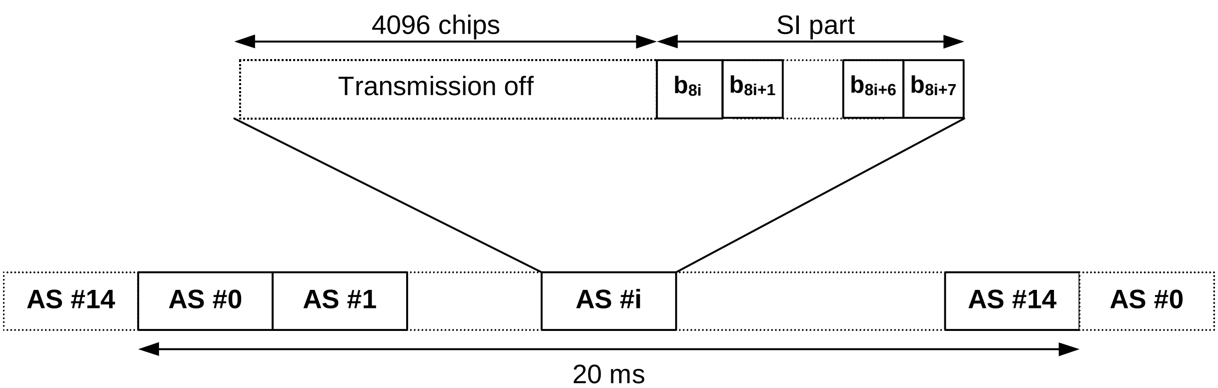


Figure 25: Structure of CPCH Status Indicator Channel (CSICH)

N Status Indicators $\{SI_0, \ldots, SI_{N-1}\}$ shall be transmitted in each CSICH frame. The mapping from $\{SI_0, \ldots, SI_{N-1}\}$ to the CSICH bits $\{b_0, \ldots, b_{119}\}$ is according to Table 25. The Status Indicators shall be transmitted in all the access slots of the CSICH frame, even if some signatures and/or access slots are shared between CPCH and RACH.

Table 25: Mapping of Status Indicators (SI) to CSICH bits

Number of SI per frame (N)	SI_n = 1	SI_n = 0
N=1	$\{b_0, \ldots, b_{119}\} = \{1, 1,\ldots, 1\}$	$\{b_0, \ldots, b_{119}\} = \{0, 0,\ldots, 0\}$
N=3	$\{b_{40n}, \ldots, b_{40n+39}\} = \{1, 1,\ldots, 1\}$	$\{b_{40n}, \ldots, b_{40n+39}\} = \{0, 0,\ldots, 0\}$
N=5	$\{b_{24n}, \ldots, b_{24n+23}\} = \{1, 1,\ldots, 1\}$	$\{b_{24n}, \ldots, b_{24n+23}\} = \{0, 0,\ldots, 0\}$
N=15	$\{b_{8n}, \ldots, b_{8n+7}\} = \{1, 1,\ldots, 1\}$	$\{b_{8n}, \ldots, b_{8n+7}\} = \{0, 0,\ldots, 0\}$
N=30	$\{b_{4n}, \ldots, b_{4n+3}\} = \{1, 1, 1, 1\}$	$\{b_{4n}, \ldots, b_{4n+3}\} = \{0, 0, 0, 0\}$
N=60	$\{b_{2n}, b_{2n+1}\} = \{1, 1\}$	$\{b_{2n}, b_{2n+1}\} = \{0, 0\}$

When transmit diversity is employed for the CSICH, STTD encoding is used on the CSICH bits as described in subclause 5.3.1.1.1.

The CPCH Status Indicator mode (CSICH mode) defines the structure of the information carried on the CSICH. At the UTRAN the value of the CPCH Status Indicator mode is set by higher layers. There are two CSICH modes depending on whether Channel Assignment is active or not. The CSICH mode defines the number of status indicators per frame and the content of each status indicator. Layer 1 transmits the CSICH information according to the CSICH mode and the structures defined in the following paragraphs.

5.3.3.11.1 CSICH Information Structure when Channel Assignment is not active

In this mode, CPCH Status Indication conveys the PCPCH Channel Availability value which is a 1 to 16 bit value which indicates the availability of each of the 1 to 16 defined PCPCHs in the CPCH set. PCPCHs are numbered from PCPCH0 through PCPCH15. There is one bit of the PCPCH Resource Availability (PRA) value for each defined PCPCH channel. If there are 2 PCPCHs defined in the CPCH set, then there are 2 bits in the PRA value. And likewise for other numbers of defined PCPCH channels up to 16 maximum CPCH channels per set when Channel Assignment is not active.

The number of SIs (Status Indicators) per frame is a function of the number of defined PCPCH channels.

Number of defined PCPCHs(=K)	Number of SIs per frame(=N)
1, 2, 3	3
4,5	5
6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13,14,15	15
16	30

The value of the SI shall indicate the PRA value for one of the defined PCPCHs, where PRA(n)=1 indicates that the PCPCH is available, and PRA(n)=0 indicates that the PCPCHn is not available. SI(0) shall indicate PRA(0) for PCPCH0, SI(1) shall indicate PRA(1) for PCPCH1, etc., for each defined PCPCH. When the number of SIs per frame exceeds the number of defined PCPCHs (K), the SIs which exceed K shall be set to repeat the PRA values for the defined PCPCHs. In general ,

SI(n) = PRA(n mod (K)),

where PRA(i) is availability of PCPCHi,

and n ranges from 0 to N-1.

5.3.3.11.2 PCPCH Availability when Channel Assignment is active

In this mode, CPCH Status Indication conveys two pieces of information. One is the Minimum Available Spreading Factor (MASF) value and the other is the PCPCH Resource Availability (PRA) value.

- MASF is a 3 bit number with bits MASF(0) through MASF(2) where MASF(0) is the MSB of the MASF value and MASF(2) is the LSB of the MASF value.

The following table defines MASF(0), MASF(1) and MASF(2) values to convey the MASF. All spreading factors greater than MASF are available

Minimum Available Spreading Factor (MASF)	MASF(0)	MASF(1)	MASF(2)
N/A (No available CPCH resources)	0	0	0
256	0	0	1
128	0	1	0
64	0	1	1
32	1	0	0
16	1	0	1
08	1	1	0
04	1	1	1

The number of SIs (Status Indicators) per frame, N is a function of the number of defined PCPCH channels, K.

Number of defined PCPCHs(K)	Number of SIs per frame(N)
1, 2,	5
3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12	15
13,14,15,16,17,18,19,20,21,22,23,24,25,26,27	30
28….57	60

PRA(n)=1 indicates that the PCPCHn is available, and PRA(n)=0 indicates that the PCPCHn is not available. PRA value for each PCPCH channel defined in a CPCH set shall be assigned to one SI (Status Indicator), and 3-bit MASF value shall be assigned to SIs as shown in Figure 26.

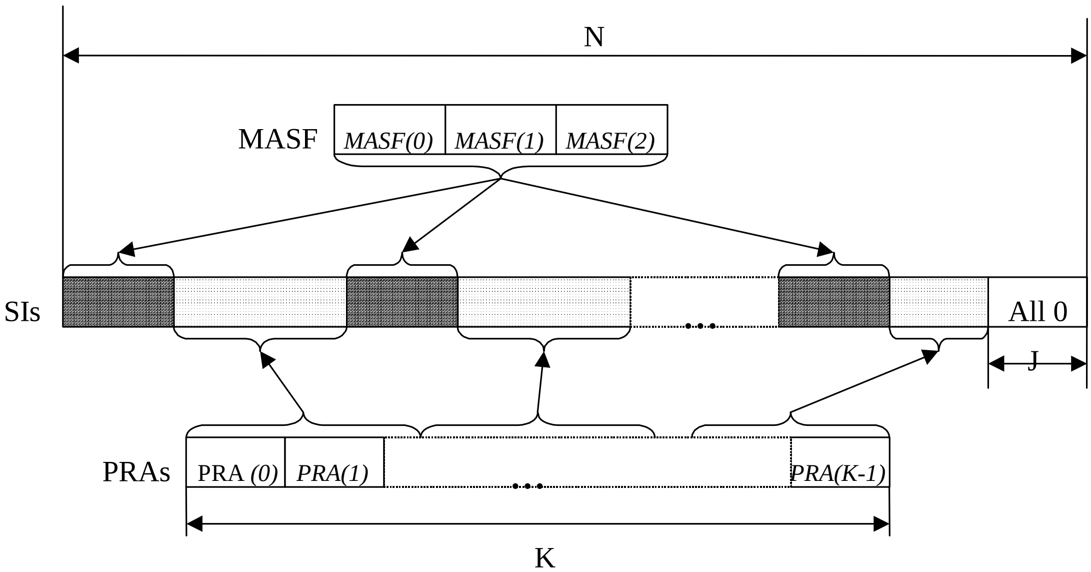


Figure 26: Mapping of MASF and PRAs to SIs in CSICH

The number of repetition that 3-bit MASF values shall be repeated is

$$T = \lfloor (N - K)/3 \rfloor$$

where $\lfloor x \rfloor$ is largest integer less than or equal to x. Each MASF value it, MASF(n), shall be mapped to SI as follows.

$$SI_{l(t+4)+i} = MASF(i), \quad 0 \le i \le 2 \quad l = 0,1, \ldots, s-1$$
$$SI_{s+l(t+3)+i} = MASF(i), \quad 0 \le i \le 2 \quad l = s, s+1, \ldots, T-1,$$

where

$$t = \lfloor K/T \rfloor$$

and

$$s = K - t \cdot T$$

Each PRA value bit, PRA(n), shall be mapped to SI as follows.

$$SI_{l(t+4)+j+3} = PRA(l + l \cdot t + j), \quad 0 \le j \le t \qquad l = 0,1, \ldots, s-1$$
$$SI_{s+l(t+3)+j+3} = PRA(s + l \cdot t + j), \quad 0 \le j \le t-1 \qquad l = s, s+1, \ldots, T-1$$

The remaining

$$J = N - (3T + K)$$

SIs shall be set to 0.

5.3.3.12 Shared Control Channel (HS-SCCH)

The HS-SCCH is a fixed rate (60 kbps, SF=128) downlink physical channel used to carry downlink signalling related to HS-DSCH transmission. Figure 26A illustrates the sub-frame structure of the HS-SCCH.

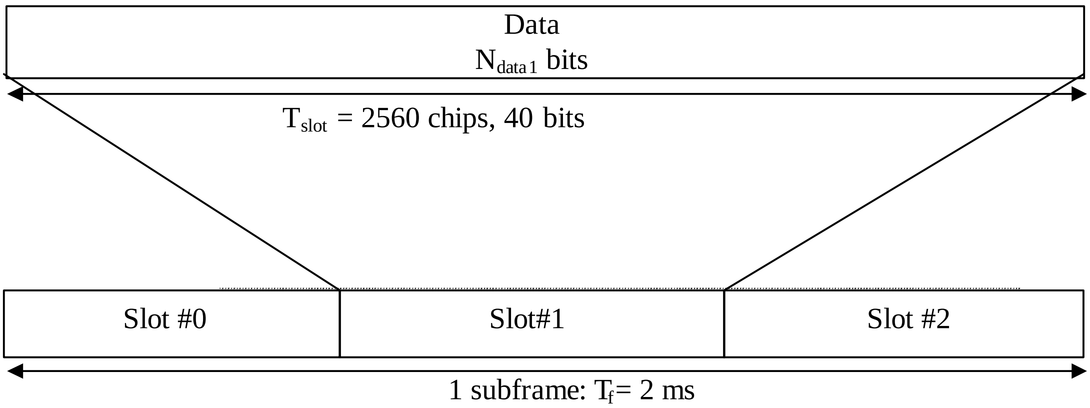


Figure 26A: Subframe structure for the HS-SCCH

5.3.3.13 High Speed Physical Downlink Shared Channel (HS-PDSCH)

The High Speed Physical Downlink Shared Channel (HS- PDSCH) is used to carry the High Speed Downlink Shared Channel (HS-DSCH).

A HS-PDSCH corresponds to one channelization code of fixed spreading factor SF=16 from the set of channelization codes reserved for HS-DSCH transmission. Multi-code transmission is allowed, which translates to UE being assigned multiple channelisation codes in the same HS-PDSCH subframe, depending on its UE capability.

The subframe and slot structure of HS-PDSCH are shown in figure 26B.

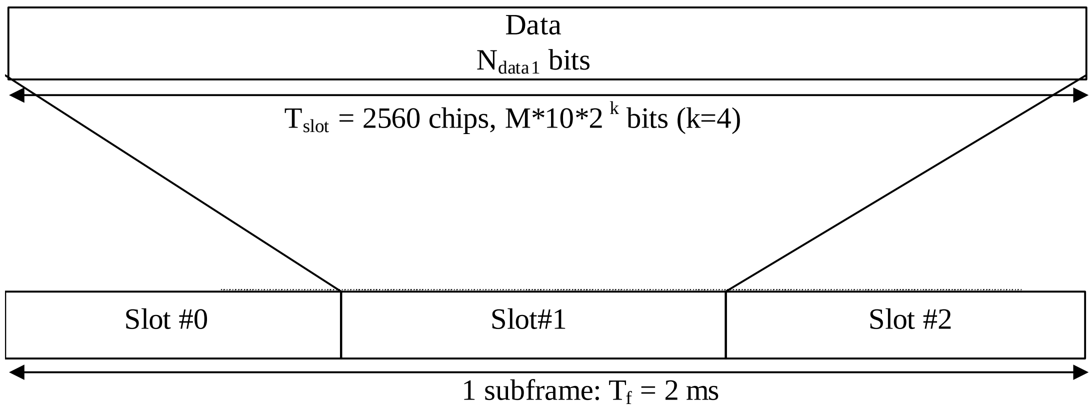


Figure 26B: Subframe structure for the HS-PDSCH

An HS-PDSCH may use QPSK or 16QAM modulation symbols. In figure 26B, M is the number of bits per modulation symbols i.e. M=2 for QPSK and M=4 for 16QAM. The slot formats are shown in table 26.

Table 26: HS-DSCH fields

Slot format #i	Channel Bit Rate (kbps)	Channel Symbol Rate (ksps)	SF	Bits/ HS-DSCH subframe	Bits/ Slot	Ndata
0(QPSK)	480	240	16	960	320	320
1(16QAM)	960	240	16	1920	640	640

All relevant Layer 1 information is transmitted in the associated HS-SCCH i.e. the HS-PDSCH does not carry any Layer 1 information.

5.3.3.14 E–DCH Absolute Grant Channel (E-AGCH)

The E-DCH Absolute Grant Channel (E-AGCH) is a fixed rate (30 kbps, SF=256) downlink physical channel carrying the uplink E-DCH absolute grant. Figure 26C illustrates the frame and sub-frame structure of the E-AGCH.

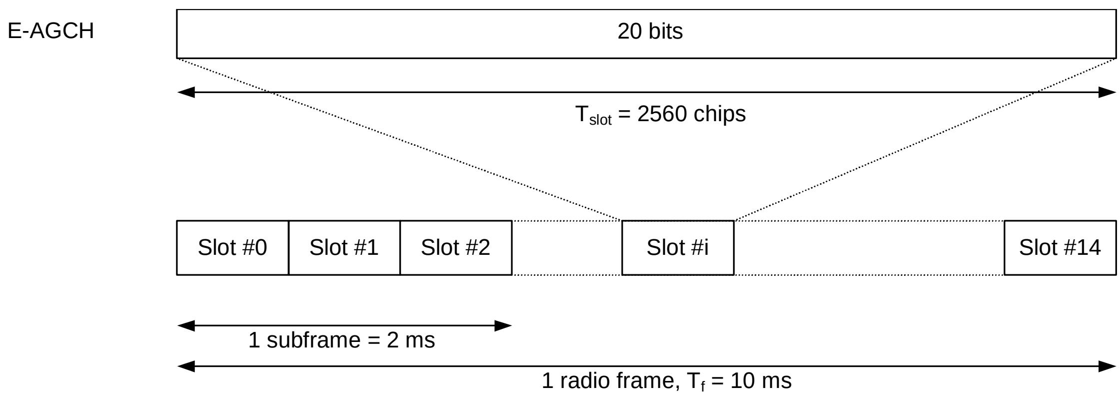


Figure 26C: Sub-frame structure for the E-AGCH

6 Mapping and association of physical channels

6.1 Mapping of transport channels onto physical channels

Figure 27 summarises the mapping of transport channels onto physical channels.

Transport Channels	**Physical Channels**
DCH	Dedicated Physical Data Channel (DPDCH)
	Dedicated Physical Control Channel (DPCCH)
E-DCH	E-DCH Dedicated Physical Data Channel (E-DPDCH)
	E-DCH Dedicated Physical Control Channel (E-DPCCH)
	E-DCH Absolute Grant Channel (E-AGCH)
	E-DCH Relative Grant Channel (E-RGCH)
	E-DCH Hybrid ARQ Indicator Channel (E-HICH)
RACH	Physical Random Access Channel (PRACH)
CPCH	Physical Common Packet Channel (PCPCH)
	Common Pilot Channel (CPICH)
BCH	Primary Common Control Physical Channel (P-CCPCH)
FACH	Secondary Common Control Physical Channel (S-CCPCH)
PCH	
	Synchronisation Channel (SCH)
DSCH	Physical Downlink Shared Channel (PDSCH)
	Acquisition Indicator Channel (AICH)
	Access Preamble Acquisition Indicator Channel (AP-AICH)
	Paging Indicator Channel (PICH)
	CPCH Status Indicator Channel (CSICH)
	Collision-Detection/Channel-Assignment Indicator Channel (CD/CA-ICH)
HS-DSCH	High Speed Physical Downlink Shared Channel (HS-PDSCH)
	HS-DSCH-related Shared Control Channel (HS-SCCH)
	Dedicated Physical Control Channel (uplink) for HS-DSCH (HS-DPCCH)

Transport Channels	Physical Channels
DCH	Dedicated Physical Data Channel (DPDCH)
	Dedicated Physical Control Channel (DPCCH)
RACH	Physical Random Access Channel (PRACH)
CPCH	Physical Common Packet Channel (PCPCH)
	Common Pilot Channel (CPICH)
BCH	Primary Common Control Physical Channel (P-CCPCH)
FACH	Secondary Common Control Physical Channel (S-CCPCH)
PCH	
	~~Synchronisation Channel (SCH)~~
DSCH	Physical Downlink Shared Channel (PDSCH)
	Acquisition Indicator Channel (AICH)
	Access Preamble Acquisition Indicator Channel (AP-AICH)
	Paging Indicator Channel (PICH)
	CPCH Status Indicator Channel (CSICH)
	Collision-Detection/Channel-Assignment Indicator Channel (CD/CA-ICH)
HS-DSCH	High Speed Physical Downlink Shared Channel (HS-PDSCH)
	HS-DSCH-related Shared Control Channel (HS-SCCH)
	Dedicated Physical Control Channel (uplink) for HS-DSCH (HS-DPCCH)

Figure 27: Transport-channel to physical-channel mapping

The DCHs are coded and multiplexed as described in [3], and the resulting data stream is mapped sequentially (first-in-first-mapped) directly to the physical channel(s). The mapping of BCH and FACH/PCH is equally straightforward, where the data stream after coding and interleaving is mapped sequentially to the Primary and Secondary CCPCH respectively. Also for the RACH, the coded and interleaved bits are sequentially mapped to the physical channel, in this case the message part of the PRACH. The E-DCH is coded as described in [3], and the resulting data stream is mapped sequentially (first-in-first-mapped) directly to the physical channel(s).

6.2 Association of physical channels and physical signals

Figure 28 illustrates the association between physical channels and physical signals.

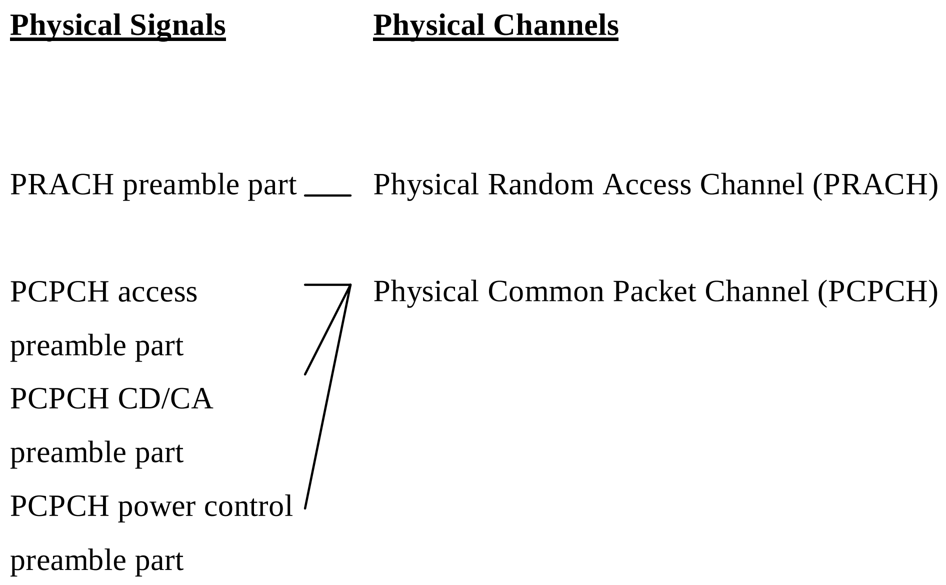


Figure 28: Physical channel and physical signal association

7 Timing relationship between physical channels

7.1 General

The P-CCPCH, on which the cell SFN is transmitted, is used as timing reference for all the physical channels, directly for downlink and indirectly for uplink.

Figure 29 below describes the frame timing of the downlink physical channels. For the AICH the access slot timing is included. Transmission timing for uplink physical channels is given by the received timing of downlink physical channels, as described in the following subclauses.

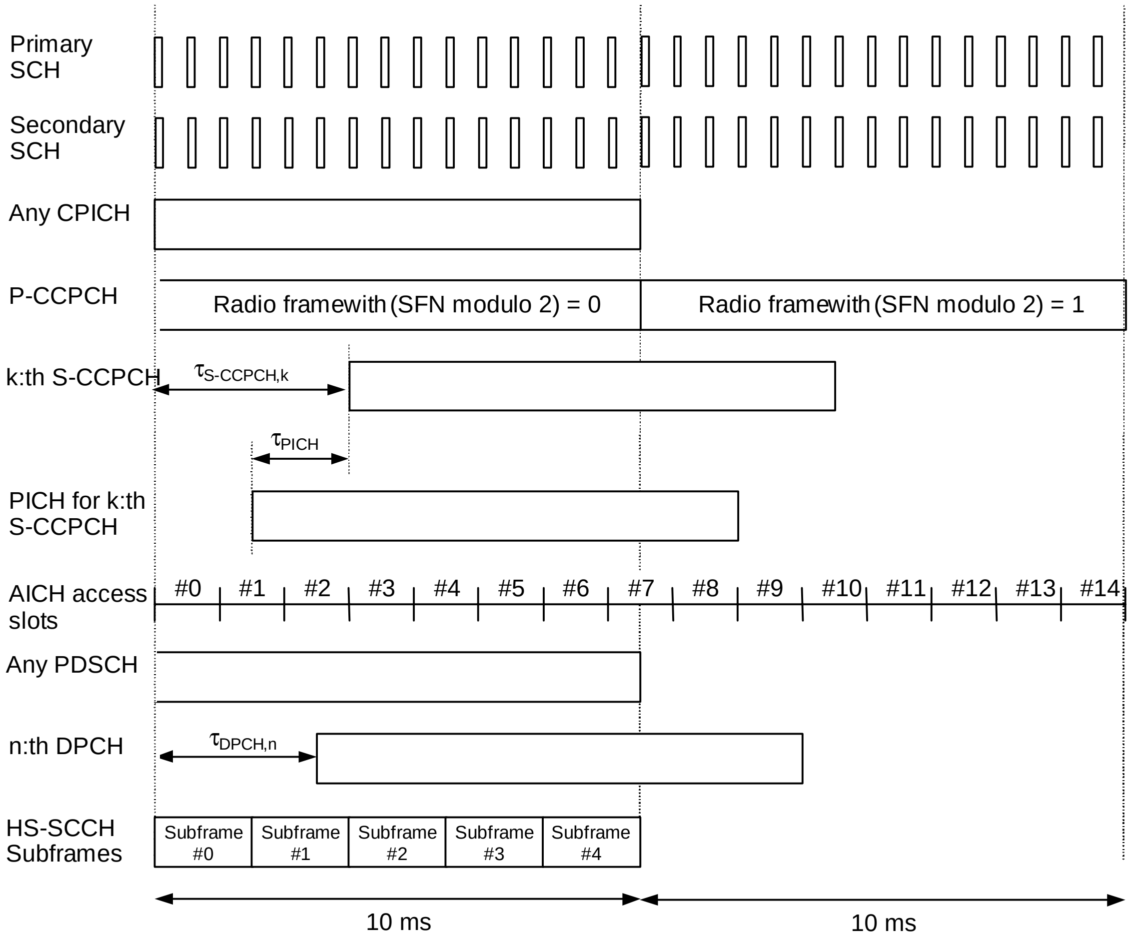


Figure 29: Radio frame timing and access slot timing of downlink physical channels

The following applies:

- SCH (primary and secondary), CPICH (primary and secondary), P-CCPCH, and PDSCH have identical frame timings.
- The S-CCPCH timing may be different for different S-CCPCHs, but the offset from the P-CCPCH frame timing is a multiple of 256 chips, i.e. $\tau_{S\text{-}CCPCH,k} = T_k \times 256$ chip, $T_k \in \{0, 1, \ldots, 149\}$.
- The PICH timing is τ_{PICH} = 7680 chips prior to its corresponding S-CCPCH frame timing, i.e. the timing of the S-CCPCH carrying the PCH transport channel with the corresponding paging information, see also subclause 7.2.
- AICH access slots #0 starts the same time as P-CCPCH frames with (SFN modulo 2) = 0. The AICH/PRACH and AICH/PCPCH timing is described in subclauses 7.3 and 7.4 respectively.
- The relative timing of associated PDSCH and DPCH is described in subclause 7.5.
- The DPCH timing may be different for different DPCHs, but the offset from the P-CCPCH frame timing is a multiple of 256 chips, i.e. $\tau_{DPCH,n} = T_n \times 256$ chip, $T_n \in \{0, 1, \ldots, 149\}$. The DPCH (DPCCH/DPDCH) timing relation with uplink DPCCH/DPDCHs is described in subclause 7.6.
- The start of HS-SCCH subframe #0 is aligned with the start of the P-CCPCH frames. The relative timing between a HS-PDSCH and the corresponding HS-SCCH is described in subclause 7.8.
- The E-DPCCH and all E-DPDCHs transmitted from one UE have the same frame timing as the DPCCH.

7.2 PICH/S-CCPCH timing relation

Figure 30 illustrates the timing between a PICH frame and its associated single S-CCPCH frame, i.e. the S-CCPCH frame that carries the paging information related to the paging indicators in the PICH frame. A paging indicator set in a PICH frame means that the paging message is transmitted on the PCH in the S-CCPCH frame starting τ_{PICH} chips after the transmitted PICH frame. τ_{PICH} is defined in subclause 7.1.

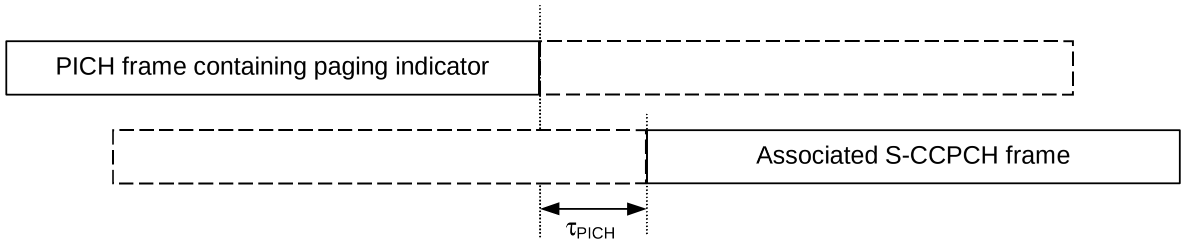


Figure 30: Timing relation between PICH frame and associated S-CCPCH frame

7.3 PRACH/AICH timing relation

The downlink AICH is divided into downlink access slots, each access slot is of length 5120 chips. The downlink access slots are time aligned with the P-CCPCH as described in subclause 7.1.

The uplink PRACH is divided into uplink access slots, each access slot is of length 5120 chips. Uplink access slot number n is transmitted from the UE τ_{p-a} chips prior to the reception of downlink access slot number n, $n = 0, 1, \ldots, 14$.

Transmission of downlink acquisition indicators may only start at the beginning of a downlink access slot. Similarly, transmission of uplink RACH preambles and RACH message parts may only start at the beginning of an uplink access slot.

The PRACH/AICH timing relation is shown in figure 31.

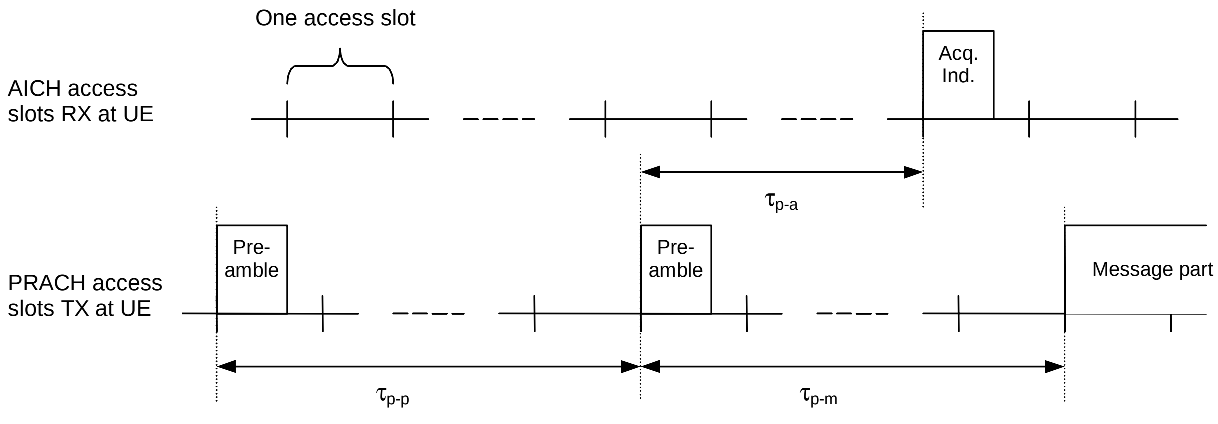


Figure 31: Timing relation between PRACH and AICH as seen at the UE

The preamble-to-preamble distance τ_{p-p} shall be larger than or equal to the minimum preamble-to-preamble distance $\tau_{p-p,min}$, i.e. $\tau_{p-p} \geq \tau_{p-p,min}$.

In addition to $\tau_{p\text{-}p,min}$, the preamble-to-AI distance $\tau_{p\text{-}a}$ and preamble-to-message distance $\tau_{p\text{-}m}$ are defined as follows:

- when AICH_Transmission_Timing is set to 0, then

  $\tau_{p\text{-}p,min}$ = 15360 chips (3 access slots)

  $\tau_{p\text{-}a}$ = 7680 chips

  $\tau_{p\text{-}m}$ = 15360 chips (3 access slots)

- when AICH_Transmission_Timing is set to 1, then

  $\tau_{p\text{-}p,min}$ = 20480 chips (4 access slots)

  $\tau_{p\text{-}a}$ = 12800 chips

  $\tau_{p\text{-}m}$ = 20480 chips (4 access slots)

The parameter AICH_Transmission_Timing is signalled by higher layers.

7.4 PCPCH/AICH timing relation

The uplink PCPCH is divided into uplink access slots, each access slot is of length 5120 chips. Uplink access slot number n is transmitted from the UE $\tau_{p\text{-}a1}$ chips prior to the reception of downlink access slot number n, n =0, 1, …,14.

The timing relationship between preambles, AICH, and the message is the same as PRACH/AICH. Note that the collision resolution preambles follow the access preambles in PCPCH/AICH. However, the timing relationships between CD-Preamble and CD/CA-ICH is identical to RACH Preamble and AICH. The timing relationship between CD/CA-ICH and the Power Control Preamble in CPCH is identical to AICH to message in RACH. The T_{cpch} timing parameter is identical to the PRACH/AICH transmission timing parameter. When T_{cpch} is set to zero or one, the following PCPCH/AICH timing values apply.

Note that a1 corresponds to AP-AICH and a2 corresponds to CD/CA-ICH.

$\tau_{p\text{-}p}$ = Time to next available access slot, between Access Preambles.

Minimum time = 15360 chips + 5120 chips X Tcpch

Maximum time = 5120 chips X 12 = 61440 chips

Actual time is time to next slot (which meets minimum time criterion) in allocated access slot subchannel group.

$\tau_{p\text{-}a1}$ = Time between Access Preamble and AP-AICH has two alternative values: 7680 chips or 12800 chips, depending on T_{cpch}

$\tau_{a1\text{-}cdp}$ = Time between receipt of AP-AICH and transmission of the CD Preamble $\tau_{a1\text{-}cdp}$ has a minimum value of $\tau_{a1\text{-}cdp,\ min}$ =7680 chips.

$\tau_{p\text{-}cdp}$ = Time between the last AP and CD Preamble. $\tau_{p\text{-}cdp}$ has a minimum value of $\tau_{p\text{-}cdp\text{-}min}$ which is either 3 or 4 access slots, depending on T_{cpch}

$\tau_{cdp\text{-}a2}$ = Time between the CD Preamble and the CD/CA-ICH has two alternative values: 7680 chips or 12800 chips, depending on T_{cpch}

$\tau_{cdp\text{-}pcp}$ = Time between CD Preamble and the start of the Power Control Preamble is either 3 or 4 access slots, depending on $T_{cpch.}$

The time between the start of the reception of DL-DPCCH slot at UE and the Power Control Preamble is T_0 chips, where T_0 is as in subclause 7.6.3.

The message transmission shall start 0 or 8 slots after the start of the power control preamble depending on the length of the power control preamble.

Figure 32 illustrates the PCPCH/AICH timing relationship whenT_{cpch} is set to 0 and all access slot subchannels are available for PCPCH.

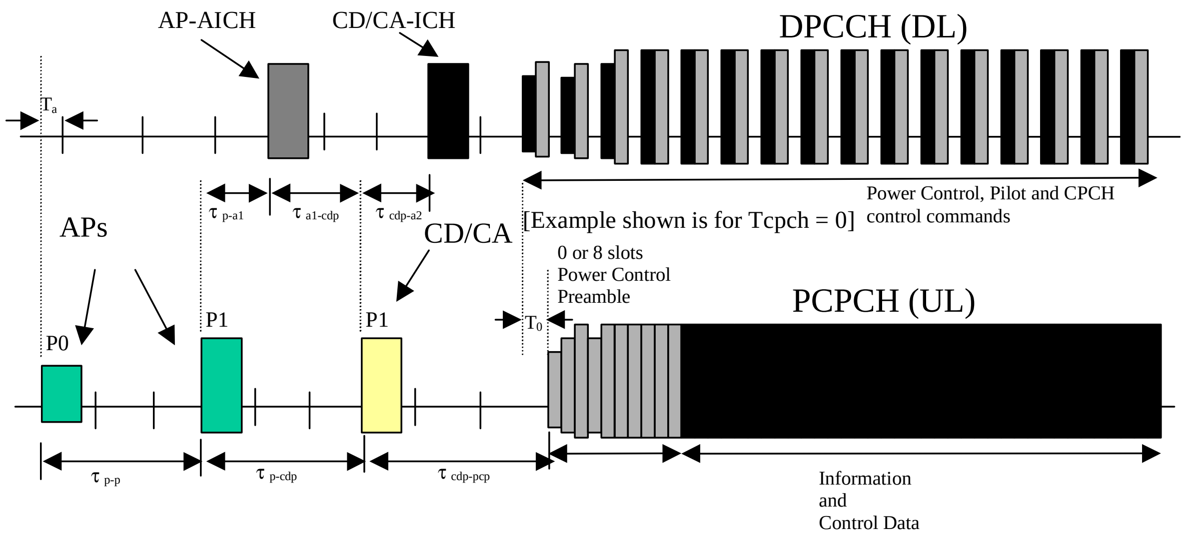


Figure 32: Timing of PCPCH and AICH transmission as seen by the UE, with T_{cpch}= 0

7.5 DPCH/PDSCH timing

The relative timing between a DPCH frame and the associated PDSCH frame is shown in figure 33.

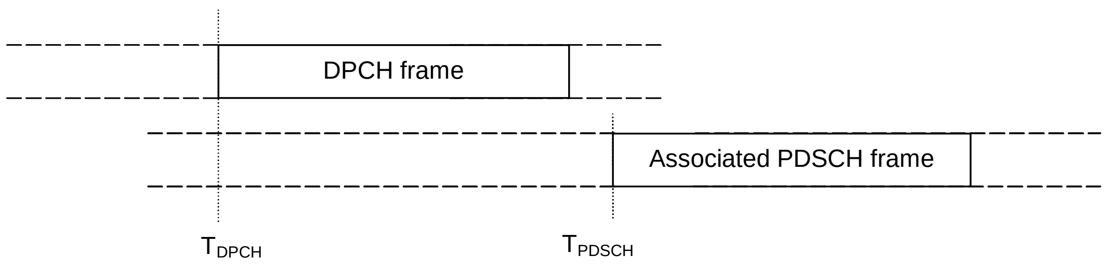


Figure 33: Timing relation between DPCH frame and associated PDSCH frame

The start of a DPCH frame is denoted T_{DPCH} and the start of the associated PDSCH frame is denoted T_{PDSCH}. Any DPCH frame is associated to one PDSCH frame through the relation 46080 chips $\leq T_{PDSCH} - T_{DPCH} < 84480$ chips, i.e., the associated PDSCH frame starts between three slots after the end of the DPCH frame and 18 slots after the end of the DPCH frame, as described in subclause 7.1.

7.6 DPCCH/DPDCH timing relations

7.6.1 Uplink

In uplink the DPCCH and all the DPDCHs transmitted from one UE have the same frame timing.

7.6.2 Downlink

In downlink, the DPCCH and all the DPDCHs carrying CCTrCHs of dedicated type to one UE have the same frame timing.

Note: support of multiple CCTrChs of dedicated type is not part of the current release.

7.6.3 Uplink/downlink timing at UE

At the UE, the uplink DPCCH/DPDCH frame transmission takes place approximately T_0 chips after the reception of the first detected path (in time) of the corresponding downlink DPCCH/DPDCH frame. T_0 is a constant defined to be 1024 chips. The first detected path (in time) is defined implicitly by the relevant tests in [14]. More information about the uplink/downlink timing relation and meaning of T_0 can be found in [5].

7.7 Uplink DPCCH/HS-DPCCH/HS-PDSCH timing at the UE

Figure 34 shows the timing offset between the uplink DPCH, the HS-PDSCH and the HS-DPCCH at the UE. An HS-DPCCH sub-frame starts $m \times 256$ chips after the start of an uplink DPCH frame that corresponds to the DL DPCH frame from the HS-DSCH serving cell containing the beginning of the related HS-PDSCH subframe with *m* calculated as

$m = (T_{TX\_diff} /256) + 101$

where T_{TX_diff} is the difference in chips (T_{TX_diff} =0, 256, ..., 38144), between

- the transmit timing of the start of the related HS-PDSCH subframe (see sub-clauses 7.8 and 7.1)

and

- the transmit timing of the start of the downlink DPCH frame from the HS-DSCH serving cell that contains the beginning of the HS-PDSCH subframe (see sub-clause 7.1).

At any one time, *m* therefore takes one of a set of five possible values according to the transmission timing of HS-DSCH sub-frame timings relative to the DPCH frame boundary. The UE and Node B shall only update the set of values of *m* in connection to UTRAN reconfiguration of downlink timing.

More information about uplink timing adjustments can be found in [5].

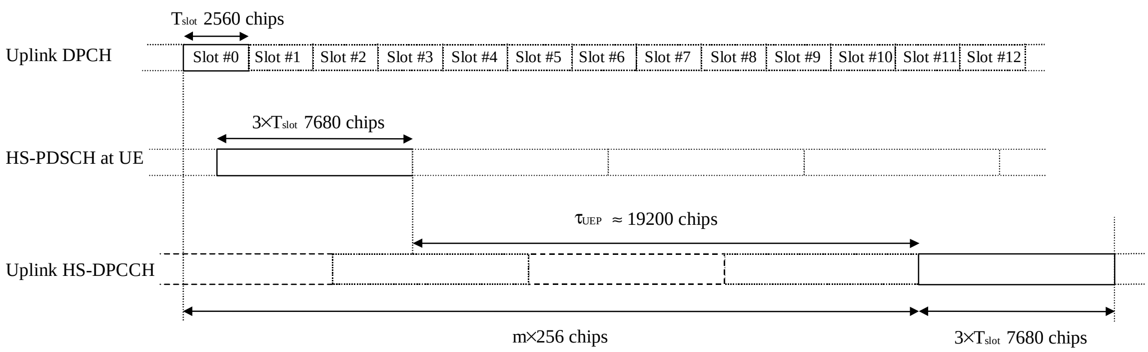


Figure 34: Timing structure at the UE for HS-DPCCH control signalling

7.8 HS-SCCH/HS-PDSCH timing

Figure 35 shows the relative timing between the HS-SCCH and the associated HS-PDSCH for one HS-DSCH sub-frame. The HS-PDSCH starts $\tau_{HS\text{-}PDSCH} = 2\times T_{slot}$ = 5120 chips after the start of the HS-SCCH.

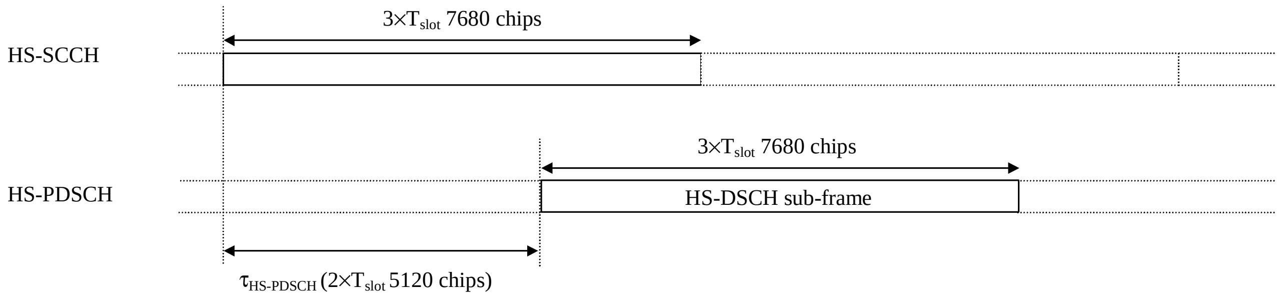


Figure 35: Timing relation between the HS-SCCH and the associated HS-PDSCH.

Annex A (informative): Change history

Change history							
Date	**TSG #**	**TSG Doc.**	**CR**	**Rev**	**Subject/Comment**	**Old**	**New**
	RAN_05	RP-99587	-		Approved at TSG RAN #5 and placed under Change Control	-	3.0.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99676	001	1	Removal of superframe notation	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99677	002	-	Use of CPICH in case of open loop Tx	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99677	003	2	CPCH power control preamble length	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99684	005	1	Editorial corrections	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99676	006	-	Change to the description of TSTD for SCH	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99678	007	1	Introduction of compressed mode by higher layer scheduling	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99676	008	1	Modifications to STTD text	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99684	009	1	20 ms RACH message length	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99676	010	-	Update to AICH description	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99678	011	1	Sliding paging indicators	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99677	016	-	TAB structure and timing relation for USTS	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99677	017	-	Timing for initialisation procedures	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99677	022	-	Modification of the STTD encoding scheme on DL DPCH with SF 512	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	-	-	-		Change history was added by the editor	3.1.0	3.1.1
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	013	6	Addition of a downlink channel indicating CPCH status	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	023	6	CPCH-related editorial changes, technical changes and additions to 25.211 and some clarifications to 7.4 PCPCH/AICH timing relation.	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	024	1	Additional description of TX diversity for PDSCH	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	025	1	Consistent numbering of scrambling code groups	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	026	-	Minor corrections to timing section	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	028	1	Timing of PDSCH	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	029	1	Modifications to STTD text	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	031	4	CD/CA-ICH for dual mode CPCH	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	033	-	Clarification of frame synchronization word and its usage	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	034	1	Editorial updates to 25.211	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	036	-	PDSCH multi-code transmission	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	037	-	Clarification of pilot bit patterns for CPCH and slot formats for CPCH PC-P and message part	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	039	-	Further restrictions on the application of the Tx diversity modes in DL	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	040	-	Clarification of downlink pilot bit patterns	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	041	-	Clarification of DCH initialisation	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	044	2	Emergency Stop of CPCH transmission and Start of Message Indicator	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000060	046	-	Clean up of USTS related specifications	3.1.1	3.2.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000265	047	4	Clarifications to power control preamble sections	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000265	048	-	Propagation delay for PCPCH	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000265	049	1	PICH undefined bits and AICH, AP-ICH, CD/CA-ICH non-transmitted chips	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000265	051	1	Bit value notation change for PICH and CSICH	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000265	053	1	Revision of notes in sections 5.3.2 and 5.3.2.1	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000265	054	5	Slot format clarification for CPCH	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000265	055	3	Physical channel nomenclature in FDD	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000265	056	3	Clarification for the PDSCH channelisation code association with DPCH in 25.211	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000265	057	2	Clarification for the PDSCH channelisation code association with DPCH in 25.211	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000265	058	-	Clarification of spreading factor for AICH	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000265	060	-	Explicit mention of slot format reconfiguration also for uplink	3.2.0	3.3.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000340	065	-	Correction of reference	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000340	066	4	Clarification of paging indicator mapping	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000340	068	-	Editorial modification of the 25.211 about the CD/CA-ICH	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000340	070	1	Support of closed loop transmit diversity modes	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000340	071	-	DPCH initialisation procedure	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000340	072	3	Correction on indicators	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000340	074	-	Correction of STTD for DPCH	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000340	075	-	Clarification of first significant path	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000340	076	-	Clarification of SCH transmitted by TSTD	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000340	077	1	Clarification of FBI field	3.3.0	3.4.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000537	079	2	Clarification of downlink phase reference	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000537	083	1	DL Transmission in the case of invalid data frames	3.4.0	3.5.0

Change history							
Date	**TSG #**	**TSG Doc.**	**CR**	**Rev**	**Subject/Comment**	**Old**	**New**
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000537	084	-	Clarification of figure 28	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000537	087	-	RACH message part length	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000537	088	-	Clarifications on power control preambles	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000537	089	1	Proposed CR to 25.211 for transfer of CSICH Information from Layer 3 Specification	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000537	090	-	PCPCH/DL-DPCCH Timing Relationship	3.4.0	3.5.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	-	-	-	Approved as Release 4 specification (v4.0.0) at TSG RAN #11	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010058	091	-	DSCH reading indication	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010058	092	1	Clarification of the S-CCPCH frame carrying paging information	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010255	095	3	Phase Reference for Secondary CCPCH carrying FACH	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010058	096	-	Uplink power control preamble	3.5.0	4.0.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010331	098	-	Downlink Phase Reference for DL-DPCCH for CPCH	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010331	100	-	Removal of out-of-date reference to FACH beamforming	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010331	102	-	Correction of compressed mode by puncturing	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010331	104	-	Correction of the representation of slot format	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010331	106	1	Clarification of PDSCH definition	4.0.0	4.1.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010518	111	2	Correction to DPCH/PDSCH timing	4.1.0	4.2.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010518	121	1	Clarification of the usage of Tx diversity modes in Soft HOV	4.1.0	4.2.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010709	114	2	Removal of another reference to FACH beamforming	4.1.0	4.2.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010518	118	1	Clarification of STTD	4.1.0	4.2.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010904	116	2	Clarification of the pilot bits on CPCH message part and S-CCPCH	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010736	123	-	Addition of pilot bit patterns table of downlink DPCCH for antenna 2 using closed loop mode 1	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010736	125	-	Slot format for the CPCH	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010736	127	1	Clarification of Tx diversity with PDSCH, AP-AICH, CD/CA-ICH and DL-DPCCH associated to CPCH	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010736	129	1	Interaction between DSCH scheduling and phase reference modification	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010736	131	-	Support of multiple CCTrChs of dedicated type	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010736	133	-	Removal of slow power control from TS 25.211	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010932	135	-	Restriction to simultaneous use of SSDT and closed loop mode TX diversity	4.2.0	4.3.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020046	139	1	Clarification of different diversity modes used in the same active set	4.3.0	4.4.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020058	146	-	Specification of HS-DSCH for Release 5 in 25.211	4.3.0	5.0.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020307	149	1	SCCPCH structure with STTD encoding	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020307	153	-	Downlink bit mapping	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020437	147	4	Specification of TX diversity for HSDPA	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	150	1	Adding section on HS-SCCH/HS-PDSCH timing relation	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	155	-	HSDPA subframe definition	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	157	1	Clarification for uplink HS-DPCCH/HS-PDSCH timing	5.0.0	5.1.0
14/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020591	161	1	Phase reference for HSDPA	5.1.0	5.2.0
14/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020571	164	-	Reversal of unwanted corrections resulting from CR 25.211-122	5.1.0	5.2.0
14/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020581	168	1	Numbering corrections	5.1.0	5.2.0
14/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020590	169		TX diversity on radio links in the active set	5.1.0	5.2.0
14/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020588	170	1	HS-DPCCH timing correction	5.1.0	5.2.0
14/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020587	171		Inclusion of closed loop transmit diversity for HSDPA	5.1.0	5.2.0
14/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020581	172		Physical channel mapping	5.1.0	5.2.0
20/12/02	RAN_18	RP-020845	173	-	Correction of the number of transport channels in clause 4.1	5.2.0	5.3.0
20/12/02	RAN_18	RP-020845	175	-	HSDPA Tx diversity of closed loop transmit diversity mode 2 use with HS-PDSCH/HS-SCCH	5.2.0	5.3.0
21/06/03	RAN_20	RP-030271	178	-	Alignment of the terminology, "subframe"	5.3.0	5.4.0
21/06/03	RAN_20	RP-030271	179	-	Correction of AICH description	5.3.0	5.4.0
21/06/03	RAN_20	RP-030271	180	-	Correction of description of TTX_diff	5.3.0	5.4.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030462	186	1	Removal of the combination of TxAA Mode 1 with HS-SCCH	5.4.0	5.5.0
13/01/04	RAN_22	-	-	-	Created for M.1457 update	5.5.0	6.0.0
09/06/04	RAN_24	RP-040231	189	1	Re-Introduction of S-CPICH in combination with Closed Loop TxDiversity	6.0.0	6.1.0
09/06/04	RAN_24	RP-040231	190	-	Clarification of NTFCI field of DL-DPCCH power preamble for CPCH	6.0.0	6.1.0
07/09/04	RAN_25	RP-040317	192	-	Correction for the slot range of DL DPCCH power control preamble for CPCH	6.1.0	6.2.0

3GPP TSG-RAN WG1 Meeting #39
Shin Yokohama, Japan, November 15th- 19th, 2004

Tdoc ⌘ R1-041520

CR-Form-v7.1

CHANGE REQUEST

⌘	**25.212**	**CR**	**196**	⌘ **rev**	**2**	⌘	Current version:	**6.2.0** ⌘

*For **HELP** on using this form, see bottom of this page or look at the pop-up text over the ⌘ symbols.*

Proposed change affects: UICC apps⌘ [ ] ME [X] Radio Access Network [X] Core Network [ ]

Title:	⌘	Introduction of E-DCH		
Source:	⌘	RAN WG1		
Work item code:	⌘	EDCH-Phys	***Date:*** ⌘	22/11/2004
Category:	⌘	**B**	***Release:*** ⌘	Rel-6
		Use one of the following categories: ***F*** *(correction)* ***A*** *(corresponds to a correction in an earlier release)* ***B*** *(addition of feature),* ***C*** *(functional modification of feature)* ***D*** *(editorial modification)* Detailed explanations of the above categories can be found in 3GPP TR 21.900.		*Use one of the following releases:* *Ph2 (GSM Phase 2)* *R96 (Release 1996)* *R97 (Release 1997)* *R98 (Release 1998)* *R99 (Release 1999)* *Rel-4 (Release 4)* *Rel-5 (Release 5)* *Rel-6 (Release 6)* *Rel-7 (Release 7)*

Reason for change:	⌘	Introduction of E-DCH in Rel-6.
Summary of change:	⌘	Addition of E-DCH Multiplexing and Channel Coding
Consequences if not approved:	⌘	

Clauses affected:	⌘	4.2.13.9, 4.2.14, 4.2.14.1.1, 4.8, 4.9, 4.10, 4.11, 4.12				
		Y	**N**			
Other specs affected:	⌘	X		Other core specifications	⌘	25.201, 25.211, 25.213, 25.214, 25.215
				Test specifications		
				O&M Specifications		
Other comments:	⌘					

How to create CRs using this form:

Comprehensive information and tips about how to create CRs can be found at http://www.3gpp.org/specs/CR.htm. Below is a brief summary:

1) Fill out the above form. The symbols above marked ⌘ contain pop-up help information about the field that they are closest to.

2) Obtain the latest version for the release of the specification to which the change is proposed. Use the MS Word "revision marks" feature (also known as "track changes") when making the changes. All 3GPP specifications can be downloaded from the 3GPP server under ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/specs/ For the latest version, look for the directory name with the latest date e.g. 2001-03 contains the specifications resulting from the March 2001 TSG meetings.

3) With "track changes" disabled, paste the entire CR form (use CTRL-A to select it) into the specification just in front of the clause containing the first piece of changed text. Delete those parts of the specification which are not relevant to the change request.

3GPP TS 25.212 V6.2.0 (2004-06)

T

3rd Generation Partnership Project;
Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network;
Multiplexing and channel coding (FDD)
(Release 6)

Keywords

UMTS, radio, mux

3GPP

Postal address

3GPP support office address

650 Route des Lucioles - Sophia Antipolis
Valbonne - FRANCE
Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Internet

http://www.3gpp.org

Contents

Foreword

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of the present document, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version x.y.z

where:

x the first digit:

1 presented to TSG for information;

2 presented to TSG for approval;

3 or greater indicates TSG approved document under change control.

y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.

z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the document.

1 Scope

The present document describes the characteristics of the Layer 1 multiplexing and channel coding in the FDD mode of UTRA.

2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies.

[1] 3GPP TS 25.201: "Physical layer - General Description".

[2] 3GPP TS 25.211: "Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (FDD)".

[3] 3GPP TS 25.213: "Spreading and modulation (FDD)".

[4] 3GPP TS 25.214: "Physical layer procedures (FDD)".

[5] 3GPP TS 25.215: "Physical layer – Measurements (FDD)".

[6] 3GPP TS 25.221: "Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (TDD)".

[7] 3GPP TS 25.222: "Multiplexing and channel coding (TDD)".

[8] 3GPP TS 25.223: "Spreading and modulation (TDD)".

[9] 3GPP TS 25.224: "Physical layer procedures (TDD)".

[10] 3GPP TS 25.225: "Physical layer – Measurements (TDD)".

[11] 3GPP TS 25.302: "Services Provided by the Physical Layer".

[12] 3GPP TS 25.402: "Synchronisation in UTRAN, Stage 2".

[13] 3GPP TS 25.331: "Radio Resource Control (RRC); Protocol Specification".

[14] ITU-T Recommendation X.691 (12/97) "Information technology - ASN.1 encoding rules: Specification of Packed Encoding Rules (PER)"

3 Definitions, symbols and abbreviations

3.1 Definitions

For the purposes of the present document, the following terms and definitions apply:

TG: Transmission Gap is consecutive empty slots that have been obtained with a transmission time reduction method. The transmission gap can be contained in one or two consecutive radio frames.

TGL: Transmission Gap Length is the number of consecutive empty slots that have been obtained with a transmission time reduction method. $0 \leq TGL \leq 14$. The CFNs of the radio frames containing the first empty slot of the transmission gaps, the CFNs of the radio frames containing the last empty slot, the respective positions N_{first} and N_{last} within these frames of the first and last empty slots of the transmission gaps, and the transmission gap lengths can be calculated with the compressed mode parameters described in [5].

TrCH number: The transport channel number identifies a TrCH in the context of L1. The L3 transport channel identity (TrCH ID) maps onto the L1 transport channel number. The mapping between the transport channel number and the TrCH ID is as follows: TrCH 1 corresponds to the TrCH with the lowest TrCH ID, TrCH 2 corresponds to the TrCH with the next lowest TrCH ID and so on.

3.2 Symbols

For the purposes of the present document, the following symbols apply:

$\lceil x \rceil$	round towards ∞, i.e. integer such that $x \leq \lceil x \rceil < x+1$
$\lfloor x \rfloor$	round towards -∞, i.e. integer such that $x-1 < \lfloor x \rfloor \leq x$
$\lvert x \rvert$	absolute value of x
sgn(x)	signum function, i.e. $\mathrm{sgn}(x) = \begin{cases} 1; & x \geq 0 \\ -1; & x < 0 \end{cases}$
N_{first}	The first slot in the *TG*, located in the first compressed radio frame if the TG spans two frames.
N_{last}	The last slot in the *TG*, located in the second compressed radio frame if the TG spans two frames.
N_{tr}	Number of transmitted slots in a radio frame.

Unless otherwise is explicitly stated when the symbol is used, the meaning of the following symbols is:

i	TrCH number
j	TFC number
k	Bit number
l	TF number
m	Transport block number
n_i	Radio frame number of TrCH i.
p	PhCH number
r	Code block number
I	Number of TrCHs in a CCTrCH.
C_i	Number of code blocks in one TTI of TrCH i.
F_i	Number of radio frames in one TTI of TrCH i.
M_i	Number of transport blocks in one TTI of TrCH i.
$N_{data,j}$	Number of data bits that are available for the CCTrCH in a radio frame with TFC j.
$N^{cm}_{data,j}$	Number of data bits that are available for the CCTrCH in a compressed radio frame with TFC j.
P	Number of PhCHs used for one CCTrCH.
PL	Puncturing Limit for the uplink. Signalled from higher layers
RM_i	Rate Matching attribute for TrCH i. Signalled from higher layers.

Temporary variables, i.e. variables used in several (sub)clauses with different meaning.

x, X
y, Y
z, Z

3.3 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the following abbreviations apply:

ARQ	Automatic Repeat Request
BCH	Broadcast Channel
BER	Bit Error Rate
BLER	Block Error Rate
BS	Base Station
CCPCH	Common Control Physical Channel
CCTrCH	Coded Composite Transport Channel

CFN	Connection Frame Number
CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check
DCH	Dedicated Channel
DL	Downlink (Forward link)
DPCCH	Dedicated Physical Control Channel
DPCH	Dedicated Physical Channel
DPDCH	Dedicated Physical Data Channel
DS-CDMA	Direct-Sequence Code Division Multiple Access
DSCH	Downlink Shared Channel
DTX	Discontinuous Transmission
E-AGCH	E-DCH Absolute Grant Channel
E-DCH	Enhanced Dedicated Channel
E-DPCCH	E-DCH Dedicated Physical Control Channel
E-DPDCH	E-DCH Dedicated Physical Data Channel
E-HICH	E-DCH Hybrid ARQ Indicator Channel
E-RGCH	E-DCH Relative Grant Channel
FACH	Forward Access Channel
FDD	Frequency Division Duplex
FER	Frame Error Rate
GF	Galois Field
HARQ	Hybrid Automatic Repeat reQuest
HS-DPCCH	Dedicated Physical Control Channel (uplink) for HS-DSCH
HS-DSCH	High Speed Downlink Shared Channel
HS-PDSCH	High Speed Physical Downlink Shared Channel
HS-SCCH	Shared Control Channel for HS-DSCH
MAC	Medium Access Control
Mcps	Mega Chip Per Second
MS	Mobile Station
OVSF	Orthogonal Variable Spreading Factor (codes)
PCCC	Parallel Concatenated Convolutional Code
PCH	Paging Channel
PhCH	Physical Channel
PRACH	Physical Random Access Channel
RACH	Random Access Channel
RSC	Recursive Systematic Convolutional Coder
RV	Redundancy Version
RX	Receive
SCH	Synchronisation Channel
SF	Spreading Factor
SFN	System Frame Number
SIR	Signal-to-Interference Ratio
SNR	Signal to Noise Ratio
TF	Transport Format
TFC	Transport Format Combination
TFCI	Transport Format Combination Indicator
TPC	Transmit Power Control
TrCH	Transport Channel
TTI	Transmission Time Interval
TX	Transmit
UL	Uplink (Reverse link)

4 Multiplexing, channel coding and interleaving

4.1 General

Data stream from/to MAC and higher layers (Transport block / Transport block set) is encoded/decoded to offer transport services over the radio transmission link. Channel coding scheme is a combination of error detection, error correcting, rate matching, interleaving and transport channels mapping onto/splitting from physical channels.

4.2 General coding/multiplexing of TrCHs

This section only applies to the transport channels: DCH, RACH, CPCH, DSCH, BCH, FACH and PCH. Other transport channels which do not use the general method are described separately below.

Data arrives to the coding/multiplexing unit in form of transport block sets once every transmission time interval. The transmission time interval is transport-channel specific from the set {10 ms, 20 ms, 40 ms, 80 ms}.

The following coding/multiplexing steps can be identified:

- add CRC to each transport block (see subclause 4.2.1);
- transport block concatenation and code block segmentation (see subclause 4.2.2);
- channel coding (see subclause 4.2.3);
- radio frame equalisation (see subclause 4.2.4);
- rate matching (see subclause 4.2.7);
- insertion of discontinuous transmission (DTX) indication bits (see subclause 4.2.9);
- interleaving (two steps, see subclauses 4.2.5 and 4.2.11);
- radio frame segmentation (see subclause 4.2.6);
- multiplexing of transport channels (see subclause 4.2.8);
- physical channel segmentation (see subclause 4.2.10);
- mapping to physical channels (see subclause 4.2.12).

The coding/multiplexing steps for uplink and downlink are shown in figure 1 and figure 2 respectively.

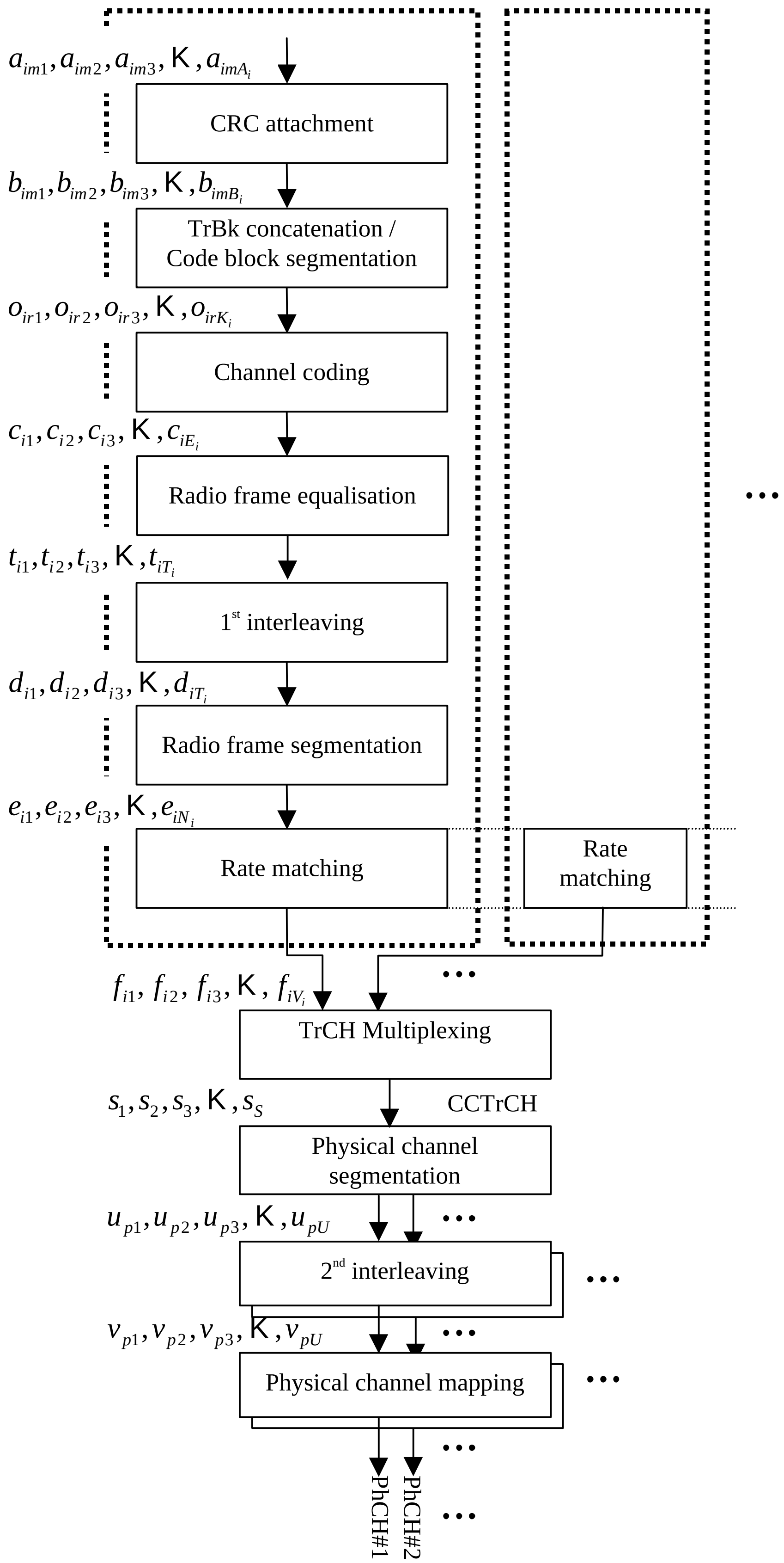


Figure 1: Transport channel multiplexing structure for uplink

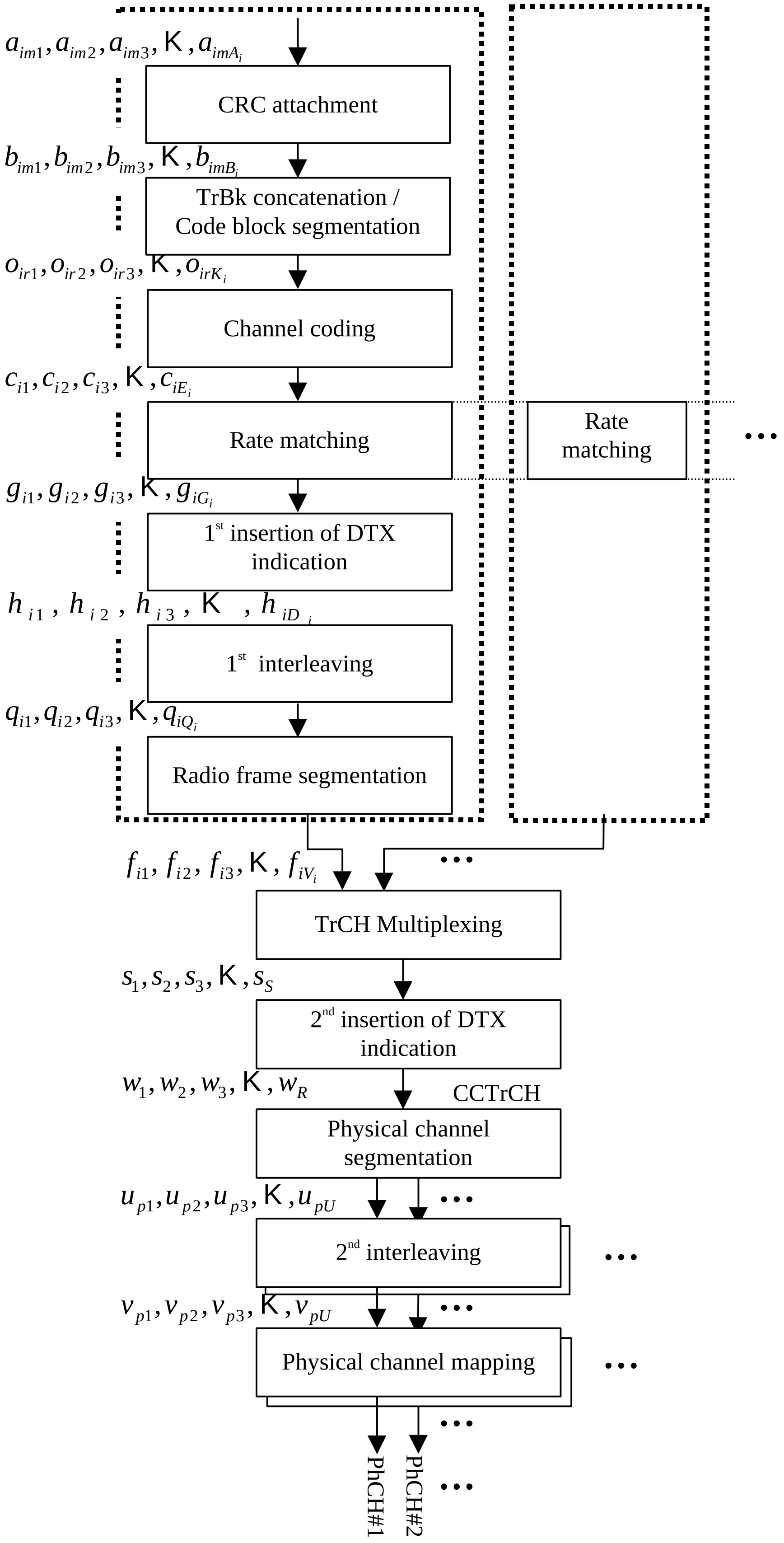


Figure 2: Transport channel multiplexing structure for downlink

The single output data stream from the TrCH multiplexing, including DTX indication bits in downlink, is denoted *Coded Composite Transport Channel (CCTrCH)*. A CCTrCH can be mapped to one or several physical channels.

4.2.1 CRC attachment

Error detection is provided on transport blocks through a Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC). The size of the CRC is 24, 16, 12, 8 or 0 bits and it is signalled from higher layers what CRC size that should be used for each TrCH.

4.2.1.1 CRC Calculation

The entire transport block is used to calculate the CRC parity bits for each transport block. The parity bits are generated by one of the following cyclic generator polynomials:

- $g_{CRC24}(D) = D^{24} + D^{23} + D^{6} + D^{5} + D + 1$;
- $g_{CRC16}(D) = D^{16} + D^{12} + D^{5} + 1$;
- $g_{CRC12}(D) = D^{12} + D^{11} + D^{3} + D^{2} + D + 1$;
- $g_{CRC8}(D) = D^{8} + D^{7} + D^{4} + D^{3} + D + 1$.

Denote the bits in a transport block delivered to layer 1 by $a_{im1}, a_{im2}, a_{im3}, \ldots, a_{imA_i}$, and the parity bits by $p_{im1}, p_{im2}, p_{im3}, \ldots, p_{imL_i}$. A_i is the size of a transport block of TrCH i, m is the transport block number, and L_i is the number of parity bits. L_i can take the values 24, 16, 12, 8, or 0 depending on what is signalled from higher layers.

The encoding is performed in a systematic form, which means that in GF(2), the polynomial:

$$a_{im1}D^{A_i+23} + a_{im2}D^{A_i+22} + \ldots + a_{imA_i}D^{24} + p_{im1}D^{23} + p_{im2}D^{22} + \ldots + p_{im23}D^{1} + p_{im24}$$

yields a remainder equal to 0 when divided by $g_{CRC24}(D)$, polynomial:

$$a_{im1}D^{A_i+15} + a_{im2}D^{A_i+14} + \ldots + a_{imA_i}D^{16} + p_{im1}D^{15} + p_{im2}D^{14} + \ldots + p_{im15}D^{1} + p_{im16}$$

yields a remainder equal to 0 when divided by $g_{CRC16}(D)$, polynomial:

$$a_{im1}D^{A_i+11} + a_{im2}D^{A_i+10} + \ldots + a_{imA_i}D^{12} + p_{im1}D^{11} + p_{im2}D^{10} + \ldots + p_{im11}D^{1} + p_{im12}$$

yields a remainder equal to 0 when divided by $g_{CRC12}(D)$ and polynomial:

$$a_{im1}D^{A_i+7} + a_{im2}D^{A_i+6} + \ldots + a_{imA_i}D^{8} + p_{im1}D^{7} + p_{im2}D^{6} + \ldots + p_{im7}D^{1} + p_{im8}$$

yields a remainder equal to 0 when divided by $g_{CRC8}(D)$.

If no transport blocks are input to the CRC calculation ($M_i = 0$), no CRC attachment shall be done. If transport blocks are input to the CRC calculation ($M_i \neq 0$) and the size of a transport block is zero ($A_i = 0$), CRC shall be attached, i.e. all parity bits equal to zero.

4.2.1.2 Relation between input and output of the CRC attachment block

The bits after CRC attachment are denoted by $b_{im1}, b_{im2}, b_{im3}, \ldots, b_{imB_i}$, where $B_i = A_i + L_i$. The relation between a_{imk} and b_{imk} is:

$$b_{imk} = a_{imk} \qquad k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, A_i$$

$$b_{imk} = p_{im(L_i+1-(k-A_i))} \qquad k = A_i + 1, A_i + 2, A_i + 3, \ldots, A_i + L_i$$

4.2.2 Transport block concatenation and code block segmentation

All transport blocks in a TTI are serially concatenated. If the number of bits in a TTI is larger than Z, the maximum size of a code block in question, then code block segmentation is performed after the concatenation of the transport blocks. The maximum size of the code blocks depends on whether convolutional coding or turbo coding is used for the TrCH.

4.2.2.1 Concatenation of transport blocks

The bits input to the transport block concatenation are denoted by $b_{im1}, b_{im2}, b_{im3}, \ldots, b_{imB_i}$ where i is the TrCH number, m is the transport block number, and B_i is the number of bits in each block (including CRC). The number of transport blocks on TrCH i is denoted by M_i. The bits after concatenation are denoted by $x_{i1}, x_{i2}, x_{i3}, \ldots, x_{iX_i}$, where i is the TrCH number and $X_i=M_iB_i$. They are defined by the following relations:

$x_{ik} = b_{i1k}$ $\quad k = 1, 2, \ldots, B_i$

$x_{ik} = b_{i,2,(k-B_i)}$ $\quad k = B_i + 1, B_i + 2, \ldots, 2B_i$

$x_{ik} = b_{i,3,(k-2B_i)}$ $\quad k = 2B_i + 1, 2B_i + 2, \ldots, 3B_i$

$\ldots$

$x_{ik} = b_{i,M_i,(k-(M_i-1)B_i)}$ $\quad k = (M_i - 1)B_i + 1, (M_i - 1)B_i + 2, \ldots, M_iB_i$

4.2.2.2 Code block segmentation

Segmentation of the bit sequence from transport block concatenation is performed if $X_i>Z$. The code blocks after segmentation are of the same size. The number of code blocks on TrCH i is denoted by C_i. If the number of bits input to the segmentation, X_i, is not a multiple of C_i, filler bits are added to the beginning of the first block. If turbo coding is selected and $X_i < 40$, filler bits are added to the beginning of the code block. The filler bits are transmitted and they are always set to 0. The maximum code block sizes are:

- convolutional coding: $Z = 504$;
- turbo coding: $Z = 5114$.

The bits output from code block segmentation, for $C_i \neq 0$, are denoted by $o_{ir1}, o_{ir2}, o_{ir3}, \ldots, o_{irK_i}$, where i is the TrCH number, r is the code block number, and K_i is the number of bits per code block.

Number of code blocks:

$_i = \lceil X_i/Z \rceil$

Number of bits in each code block (applicable for $C_i \neq 0$ only):

if $X_i < 40$ and Turbo coding is used, then

$K_i = 40$

else

$K_i = \lceil X_i / C_i \rceil$

end if

Number of filler bits: $Y_i = C_iK_i - X_i$

for $k = 1$ to Y_i -- Insertion of filler bits

$o_{i1k} = 0$

end for

for $k = Y_i+1$ to K_i

$$o_{i1k} = x_{i,(k-Y_i)}$$

end for

$r = 2$ -- Segmentation

while $r \le C_i$

for $k = 1$ to K_i

$$o_{irk} = x_{i,(k+(r-1)\cdot K_i - Y_i)}$$

end for

$r = r+1$

end while

4.2.3 Channel coding

Code blocks are delivered to the channel coding block. They are denoted by $o_{ir1}, o_{ir2}, o_{ir3}, \ldots, o_{irK_i}$, where i is the TrCH number, r is the code block number, and K_i is the number of bits in each code block. The number of code blocks on TrCH i is denoted by C_i. After encoding the bits are denoted by $y_{ir1}, y_{ir2}, y_{ir3}, \ldots, y_{irY_i}$, where Y_i is the number of encoded bits. The relation between o_{irk} and y_{irk} and between K_i and Y_i is dependent on the channel coding scheme.

The following channel coding schemes can be applied to TrCHs:

- convolutional coding;
- turbo coding.

Usage of coding scheme and coding rate for the different types of TrCH is shown in table 1.

The values of Y_i in connection with each coding scheme:

- convolutional coding with rate 1/2: $Y_i = 2*K_i + 16$; rate 1/3: $Y_i = 3*K_i + 24$;
- turbo coding with rate 1/3: $Y_i = 3*K_i + 12$.

Table 1: Usage of channel coding scheme and coding rate

<table>
<tr><th>Type of TrCH</th><th>Coding scheme</th><th>Coding rate</th></tr>
<tr><td>BCH</td><td rowspan="4">Convolutional coding</td><td rowspan="3">1/2</td></tr>
<tr><td>PCH</td></tr>
<tr><td>RACH</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">CPCH, DCH, DSCH, FACH</td><td>1/3, 1/2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Turbo coding</td><td>1/3</td></tr>
</table>

4.2.3.1 Convolutional coding

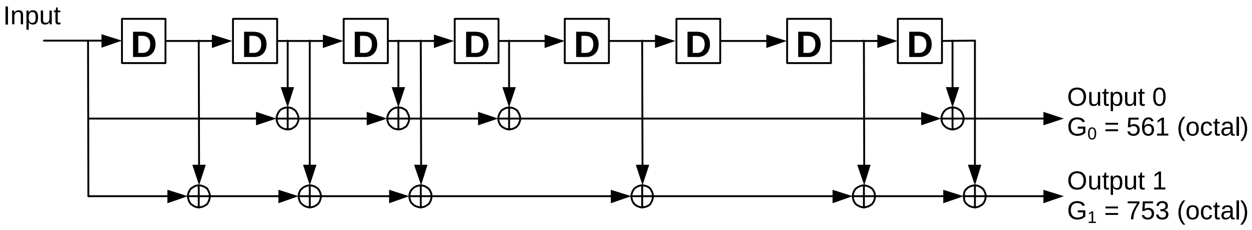
Convolutional codes with constraint length 9 and coding rates 1/3 and 1/2 are defined.

The configuration of the convolutional coder is presented in figure 3.

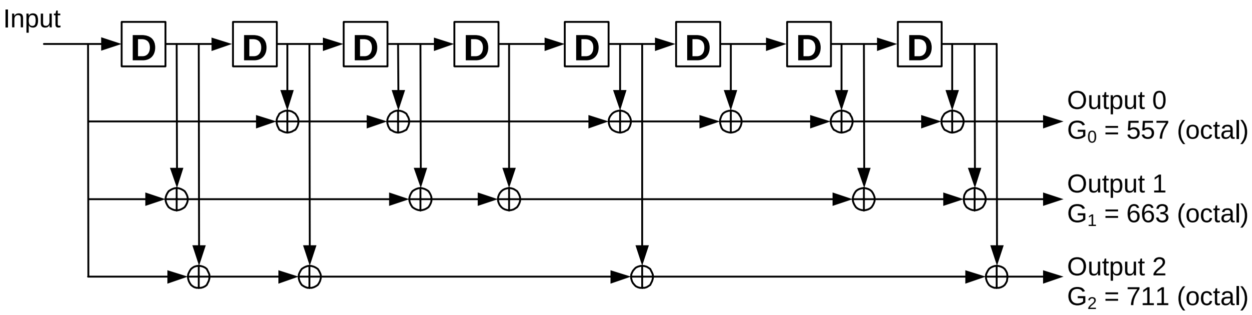
Output from the rate 1/3 convolutional coder shall be done in the order output0, output1, output2, output0, output1, output 2, output 0,…,output2. Output from the rate 1/2 convolutional coder shall be done in the order output 0, output 1, output 0, output 1, output 0, …, output 1.

8 tail bits with binary value 0 shall be added to the end of the code block before encoding.

The initial value of the shift register of the coder shall be "all 0" when starting to encode the input bits.



(a) Rate 1/2 convolutional coder



(b) Rate 1/3 convolutional coder

Figure 3: Rate 1/2 and rate 1/3 convolutional coders

4.2.3.2 Turbo coding

4.2.3.2.1 Turbo coder

The scheme of Turbo coder is a Parallel Concatenated Convolutional Code (PCCC) with two 8-state constituent encoders and one Turbo code internal interleaver. The coding rate of Turbo coder is 1/3. The structure of Turbo coder is illustrated in figure 4.

The transfer function of the 8-state constituent code for PCCC is:

$$G(D) = \left[1, \frac{g_1(D)}{g_0(D)}\right],$$

where

$$g_0(D) = 1 + D^2 + D^3,$$

$$g_1(D) = 1 + D + D^3.$$

The initial value of the shift registers of the 8-state constituent encoders shall be all zeros when starting to encode the input bits.

Output from the Turbo coder is

$$x_1, z_1, z'_1, x_2, z_2, z'_2, \ldots, x_K, z_K, z'_K,$$

where $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_K$ are the bits input to the Turbo coder i.e. both first 8-state constituent encoder and Turbo code internal interleaver, and K is the number of bits, and $z_1, z_2, \ldots, z_K$ and $z'_1, z'_2, \ldots, z'_K$ are the bits output from first and second 8-state constituent encoders, respectively.

The bits output from Turbo code internal interleaver are denoted by $x'_1, x'_2, \ldots, x'_K$, and these bits are to be input to the second 8-state constituent encoder.

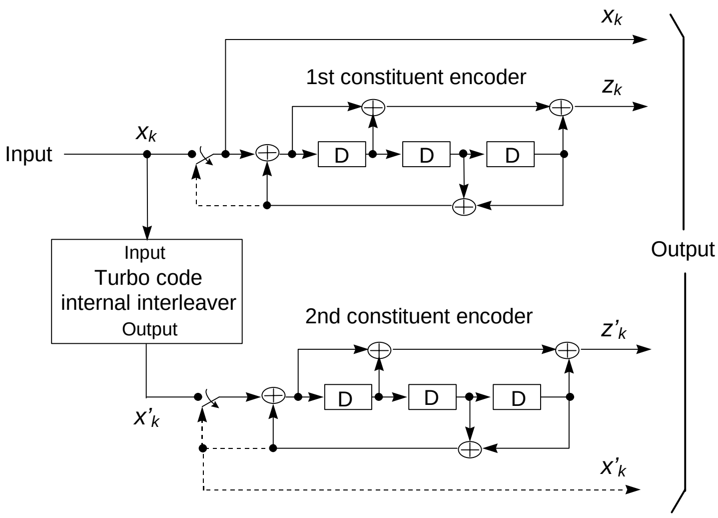


Figure 4: Structure of rate 1/3 Turbo coder (dotted lines apply for trellis termination only)

4.2.3.2.2 Trellis termination for Turbo coder

Trellis termination is performed by taking the tail bits from the shift register feedback after all information bits are encoded. Tail bits are padded after the encoding of information bits.

The first three tail bits shall be used to terminate the first constituent encoder (upper switch of figure 4 in lower position) while the second constituent encoder is disabled. The last three tail bits shall be used to terminate the second constituent encoder (lower switch of figure 4 in lower position) while the first constituent encoder is disabled.

The transmitted bits for trellis termination shall then be:

$$x_{K+1}, z_{K+1}, x_{K+2}, z_{K+2}, x_{K+3}, z_{K+3}, x'_{K+1}, z'_{K+1}, x'_{K+2}, z'_{K+2}, x'_{K+3}, z'_{K+3}.$$

4.2.3.2.3 Turbo code internal interleaver

The Turbo code internal interleaver consists of bits-input to a rectangular matrix with padding, intra-row and inter-row permutations of the rectangular matrix, and bits-output from the rectangular matrix with pruning. The bits input to the Turbo code internal interleaver are denoted by $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots, x_K$, where K is the integer number of the bits and takes one value of $40 \leq K \leq 5114$. The relation between the bits input to the Turbo code internal interleaver and the bits input to the channel coding is defined by $x_k = o_{irk}$ and $K = K_i$.

The following subclause specific symbols are used in subclauses 4.2.3.2.3.1 to 4.2.3.2.3.3:

K	Number of bits input to Turbo code internal interleaver
R	Number of rows of rectangular matrix
C	Number of columns of rectangular matrix
p	Prime number
v	Primitive root
$\langle s(j) \rangle_{j \in \{0,1,\ldots,p-2\}}$	Base sequence for intra-row permutation
q_i	Minimum prime integers
r_i	Permuted prime integers

$\langle T(i) \rangle_{i \in \{0,1,\ldots,R-1\}}$ Inter-row permutation pattern

$\langle U_i(j) \rangle_{j \in \{0,1,\ldots,C-1\}}$ Intra-row permutation pattern of *i*-th row

i Index of row number of rectangular matrix

j Index of column number of rectangularmatrix

k Index of bit sequence

4.2.3.2.3.1 Bits-input to rectangular matrix with padding

The bit sequence $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots, x_K$ input to the Turbo code internal interleaver is written into the rectangular matrix as follows.

(1) Determine the number of rows of the rectangular matrix, R, such that:

$$R = \begin{cases} 5, \text{if } (40 \le K \le 159) \\ 10, \text{if } ((160 \le K \le 200) \text{ or } (481 \le K \le 530)) \\ 20, \text{if } (K = \text{any other value}) \end{cases}.$$

The rows of rectangular matrix are numbered 0, 1, …, R - 1 from top to bottom.

(2) Determine the prime number to be used in the intra-permutation, p, and the number of columns of rectangular matrix, C, such that:

if (481 $\le K \le$ 530) then

$p = 53$ and $C = p$.

else

Find minimum prime number p from table 2 such that

$$K \le R \times (p+1),$$

and determine C such that

$$C = \begin{cases} p-1 & if \quad K \le R \times (p-1) \\ p & if \quad R \times (p-1) < K \le R \times p \\ p+1 & if \quad R \times p < K \end{cases}.$$

end if

The columns of rectangular matrix are numbered 0, 1, …, C - 1 from left to right.

Table 2: List of prime number *p* and associated primitive root *v*

p	*v*	*p*	*v*	*p*	*v*	*p*	*v*	*p*	*v*
7	3	47	5	101	2	157	5	223	3
11	2	53	2	103	5	163	2	227	2
13	2	59	2	107	2	167	5	229	6
17	3	61	2	109	6	173	2	233	3
19	2	67	2	113	3	179	2	239	7
23	5	71	7	127	3	181	2	241	7
29	2	73	5	131	2	191	19	251	6
31	3	79	3	137	3	193	5	257	3
37	2	83	2	139	2	197	2		
41	6	89	3	149	2	199	3		
43	3	97	5	151	6	211	2		

(3) Write the input bit sequence $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots, x_K$ into the $R \times C$ rectangular matrix row by row starting with bit y_1 in column 0 of row 0:

$$\begin{bmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & \ldots & y_C \\ y_{(C+1)} & y_{(C+2)} & y_{(C+3)} & \ldots & y_{2C} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ldots & \vdots \\ y_{((R-1)C+1)} & y_{((R-1)C+2)} & y_{((R-1)C+3)} & \ldots & y_{R\times C} \end{bmatrix}$$

where $y_k = x_k$ for k = 1, 2, …, K and if $R \times C > K$, the dummy bits are padded such that $y_k = 0 or 1$ for $k = K + 1, K + 2, \ldots, R \times C$. These dummy bits are pruned away from the output of the rectangular matrix after intra-row and inter-row permutations.

4.2.3.2.3.2 Intra-row and inter-row permutations

After the bits-input to the $R \times C$ rectangular matrix, the intra-row and inter-row permutations for the $R \times C$ rectangular matrix are performed stepwise by using the following algorithm with steps (1) – (6):

(1) Select a primitive root *v* from table 2 in section 4.2.3.2.3.1, which is indicated on the right side of the prime number *p*.

(2) Construct the base sequence $\langle s(j) \rangle_{j\in\{0,1,\ldots,p-2\}}$ for intra-row permutation as:

$s(j) = (v \times s(j-1)) \bmod p$, j = 1, 2,…, (p - 2), and $s(0)$ = 1.

(3) Assign q_0 = 1 to be the first prime integer in the sequence $\langle q_i \rangle_{i\in\{0,1,\ldots,R-1\}}$, and determine the prime integer q_i in the sequence $\langle q_i \rangle_{i\in\{0,1,\ldots,R-1\}}$ to be a least prime integer such that g.c.d(q_i, p - 1) = 1, $q_i > 6$, and $q_i > q_{(i-1)}$ for each i = 1, 2, …, R – 1. Here g.c.d. is greatest common divisor.

(4) Permute the sequence $\langle q_i \rangle_{i\in\{0,1,\ldots,R-1\}}$ to make the sequence $\langle r_i \rangle_{i\in\{0,1,\ldots,R-1\}}$ such that

$r_{T(i)} = q_i$, i = 0, 1, …, R - 1,

where $\langle T(i) \rangle_{i\in\{0,1,\ldots,R-1\}}$ is the inter-row permutation pattern defined as the one of the four kind of patterns, which are shown in table 3, depending on the number of input bits *K*.

Table 3: Inter-row permutation patterns for Turbo code internal interleaver

Number of input bits *K*	Number of rows *R*	Inter-row permutation patterns <*T*(0), *T*(1), …, *T*(*R* - 1)>
$(40 \le K \le 159)$	5	<4, 3, 2, 1, 0>
$(160 \le K \le 200)$ or $(481 \le K \le 530)$	10	<9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 0>

$(2281 \le K \le 2480)$ or $(3161 \le K \le 3210)$	20	<19, 9, 14, 4, 0, 2, 5, 7, 12, 18, 16, 13, 17, 15, 3, 1, 6, 11, 8, 10>
K = any other value	20	<19, 9, 14, 4, 0, 2, 5, 7, 12, 18, 10, 8, 13, 17, 3, 1, 16, 6, 15, 11>

(5) Perform the i-th (i = 0, 1, …, R - 1) intra-row permutation as:

if ($C = p$) then

$U_i(j) = s((j \times r_i) \bmod (p-1))$, j = 0, 1, …, (p - 2), and $U_i(p-1) = 0$,

where $U_i(j)$ is the original bit position of j-th permuted bit of i-th row.

end if

if ($C = p + 1$) then

$U_i(j) = s((j \times r_i) \bmod (p-1))$, j = 0, 1, …, (p - 2). $U_i(p-1) = 0$, and $U_i(p) = p$,

where $U_i(j)$ is the original bit position of j-th permuted bit of i-th row, and

if ($K = R \times C$) then

Exchange $U_{R-1}(p)$ with $U_{R-1}(0)$.

end if

end if

if ($C = p - 1$) then

$U_i(j) = s((j \times r_i) \bmod (p-1)) - 1$, j = 0, 1, …, (p - 2),

where $U_i(j)$ is the original bit position of j-th permuted bit of i-th row.

end if

(6) Perform the inter-row permutation for the rectangular matrix based on the pattern $\langle T(i) \rangle_{i \in \{0,1,\ldots,R-1\}}$,

where $T(i)$ is the original row position of the i-th permuted row.

4.2.3.2.3.3 Bits-output from rectangular matrix with pruning

After intra-row and inter-row permutations, the bits of the permuted rectangular matrix are denoted by y'_k:

$$\begin{bmatrix} y'_1 & y'_{(R+1)} & y'_{(2R+1)} & \cdots & y'_{((C-1)R+1)} \\ y'_2 & y'_{(R+2)} & y'_{(2R+2)} & \cdots & y'_{((C-1)R+2)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ y'_R & y'_{2R} & y'_{3R} & \cdots & y'_{C \times R} \end{bmatrix}$$

The output of the Turbo code internal interleaver is the bit sequence read out column by column from the intra-row and inter-row permuted $R \times C$ rectangular matrix starting with bit y'_1 in row 0 of column 0 and ending with bit y'_{CR} in row R - 1 of column C - 1. The output is pruned by deleting dummy bits that were padded to the input of the rectangular matrix before intra-row and inter row permutations, i.e. bits y'_k that corresponds to bits y_k with $k > K$ are removed from the output. The bits output from Turbo code internal interleaver are denoted by $x'_1, x'_2, \ldots, x'_K$, where x'_1 corresponds to the bit y'_k with smallest index k after pruning, x'_2 to the bit y'_k with second smallest index k after pruning, and so on. The number of bits output from Turbo code internal interleaver is K and the total number of pruned bits is:

$R \times C - K$.

4.2.3.3 Concatenation of encoded blocks

After the channel coding for each code block, if C_i is greater than 1, the encoded blocks are serially concatenated so that the block with lowest index *r* is output first from the channel coding block, otherwise the encoded block is output from channel coding block as it is. The bits output are denoted by $c_{i1}, c_{i2}, c_{i3}, \ldots, c_{iE_i}$, where *i* is the TrCH number and $E_i = C_iY_i$. The output bits are defined by the following relations:

$c_{ik} = y_{i1k}$ $k = 1, 2, \ldots, Y_i$

$c_{ik} = y_{i,2,(k-Y_i)}$ $k = Y_i + 1, Y_i + 2, \ldots, 2Y_i$

$c_{ik} = y_{i,3,(k-2Y_i)}$ $k = 2Y_i + 1, 2Y_i + 2, \ldots, 3Y_i$

$\ldots$

$c_{ik} = y_{i,C_i,(k-(C_i-1)Y_i)}$ $k = (C_i - 1)Y_i + 1, (C_i - 1)Y_i + 2, \ldots, C_iY_i$

If no code blocks are input to the channel coding ($C_i = 0$), no bits shall be output from the channel coding, i.e. $E_i = 0$.

4.2.4 Radio frame size equalisation

Radio frame size equalisation is padding the input bit sequence in order to ensure that the output can be segmented in F_i data segments of same size as described in subclause 4.2.7. Radio frame size equalisation is only performed in the UL.

The input bit sequence to the radio frame size equalisation is denoted by $c_{i1}, c_{i2}, c_{i3}, \ldots, c_{iE_i}$, where *i* is TrCH number and E_i the number of bits. The output bit sequence is denoted by $t_{i1}, t_{i2}, t_{i3}, \ldots, t_{iT_i}$, where T_i is the number of bits. The output bit sequence is derived as follows:

- $t_{ik} = c_{ik}$, for k = 1… E_i; and
- $t_{ik} = \{0, 1\}$ for k= E_i +1… T_i, if $E_i < T_i$;

where

- $T_i = F_i * N_i$; and
- $N_i = \lceil E_i / F_i \rceil$ is the number of bits per segment after size equalisation.

4.2.5 1st interleaving

In Compressed Mode by puncturing, bits marked with a fourth value on top of {0, 1, δ} and noted p, are introduced in the radio frames to be compressed, in positions corresponding to the first bits of the radio frames. They will be removed in a later stage of the multiplexing chain to create the actual gap. Additional puncturing has been performed in the rate matching step, over the TTI containing the compressed radio frame, to create room for these p-bits. The following subclause describes this feature.

4.2.5.1 Insertion of marked bits in the sequence to be input in first interleaver

In normal mode, compressed mode by higher layer scheduling, and compressed mode by spreading factor reduction:

$x_{i,k} = z_{i,k}$ and $X_i = Z_i$

In case the TTI contains a radio frame that is compressed by puncturing and fixed positions are used, sequence $x_{i,k}$ which will be input to first interleaver for TrCH *i* and TTI *m* within largest TTI, is built from bits $z_{i,k}$, $k=1, \ldots, Z_i$, plus $Np_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$ bits marked p and $X_i = Z_i + Np_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$, as is described thereafter.

$Np_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$ is defined in the Rate Matching subclause 4.2.7.

$P1_{Fi}$ (x) defines the inter column permutation function for a TTI of length $F_i \times$10ms, as defined in Table 4 in section 4.2.5.2. $P1_{Fi}$ (x) is the Bit Reversal function of x on $\log_2(F_i)$ bits.

NOTE 1: C[x], x= 0 to F_i– 1, the number of bits p which have to be inserted in each of the F_i segments of the TTI, where x is the column number before permutation, i.e. in each column of the first interleaver. C[$P1_{Fi}$(x)] is equal to $Np_{i,\max}^{m\times F_i+x}$ for x equal 0 to F_i–1 for fixed positions. It is noted $Np_i^{m\times F_i+x}$ in the following initialisation step.

NOTE 2: cbi[x], x=0 to F_i – 1, the counter of the number of bits p inserted in each of the F_i segments of the TTI, i.e. in each column of the first interleaver x is the column number before permutation.

col = 0

while col < F_i **do** -- here col is the column number after column permutation

C[$P1_{Fi}$ (col)] = $Np_i^{m\times F_i+col}$ -- initialisation of number of bits p to be inserted in each of the F_i segments of the TTI number *m*

cbi[$P1_{Fi}$ (col)] = 0 -- initialisation of counter of number of bits p inserted in each of the F_i segments of the TTI

col = col +1

end do

n = 0, m = 0

while n < X_i **do** -- from here col is the column number before column permutation

col = *n* mod F_i

if cbi[col] < C[col] **do**

$x_{i,n}$ = p -- insert one p bit

cbi[col] = cbi[col]+1 -- update counter of number of bits p inserted

else -- no more p bit to insert in this segment

$x_{i,n} = z_{i,,m}$

m = m+1

endif

n = n +1

end do

4.2.5.2 1st interleaver operation

The 1st interleaving is a block interleaver with inter-column permutations. The input bit sequence to the block interleaver is denoted by $x_{i,1}, x_{i,2}, x_{i,3}, \ldots, x_{i,X_i}$, where *i* is TrCH number and X_i the number of bits. Here X_i is guaranteed to be an integer multiple of the number of radio frames in the TTI. The output bit sequence from the block interleaver is derived as follows:

(1) Select the number of columns C1 from table 4 depending on the TTI. The columns are numbered 0, 1, …, C1 - 1 from left to right.

(2) Determine the number of rows of the matrix, R1 defined as

R1 = X_i / C1.

The rows of the matrix are numbered 0, 1, …, R1 - 1 from top to bottom.

(3) Write the input bit sequence into the R1 × C1 matrix row by row starting with bit $x_{i,1}$ in column 0 of row 0 and ending with bit $x_{i,(\mathrm{R1}\times\mathrm{C1})}$ in column C1 - 1 of row R1 - 1:

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_{i,1} & x_{i,2} & x_{i,3} & \ldots & x_{i,\mathrm{C1}} \\ x_{i,(\mathrm{C1}+1)} & x_{i,(\mathrm{C1}+2)} & x_{i,(\mathrm{C1}+3)} & \ldots & x_{i,(2\times\mathrm{C1})} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ldots & \vdots \\ x_{i,((\mathrm{R1}-1)\times\mathrm{C1}+1)} & x_{i,((\mathrm{R1}-1)\times\mathrm{C1}+2)} & x_{i,((\mathrm{R1}-1)\times\mathrm{C1}+3)} & \ldots & x_{i,(\mathrm{R1}\times\mathrm{C1})} \end{bmatrix}$$

(4) Perform the inter-column permutation for the matrix based on the pattern $\left\langle \mathrm{P1}_{\mathrm{C1}}(j) \right\rangle_{j\in\{0,1,\ldots,\mathrm{C1}-1\}}$ shown in table 4, where $\mathrm{P1}_{\mathrm{C1}}(j)$ is the original column position of the *j*-th permuted column. After permutation of the columns, the bits are denoted by y_{ik}:

$$\begin{bmatrix} y_{i,1} & y_{i,(\mathrm{R1}+1)} & y_{i,(2\times\mathrm{R1}+1)} & \ldots & y_{i,((\mathrm{C1}-1)\times\mathrm{R1}+1)} \\ y_{i,2} & y_{i,(\mathrm{R1}+2)} & y_{i,(2\times\mathrm{R1}+2)} & \ldots & y_{i,((\mathrm{C1}-1)\times\mathrm{R1}+2)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ldots & \vdots \\ y_{i,\mathrm{R1}} & y_{i,(2\times\mathrm{R1})} & y_{i,(3\times\mathrm{R1})} & \ldots & y_{i,(\mathrm{C1}\times\mathrm{R1})} \end{bmatrix}$$

(5) Read the output bit sequence $y_{i,1}, y_{i,2}, y_{i,3}, \ldots, y_{i,(\mathrm{C1}\times\mathrm{R1})}$ of the block interleaver column by column from the inter-column permuted R1 × C1 matrix. Bit $y_{i,1}$ corresponds to row 0 of column 0 and bit $y_{i,(\mathrm{R1}\times\mathrm{C1})}$ corresponds to row R1 - 1 of column C1 - 1.

Table 4 Inter-column permutation patterns for 1st interleaving

TTI	Number of columns C1	Inter-column permutation patterns $\langle \mathrm{P1}_{\mathrm{C1}}(0), \mathrm{P1}_{\mathrm{C1}}(1), \ldots, \mathrm{P1}_{\mathrm{C1}}(\mathrm{C1}-1) \rangle$
10 ms	1	<0>
20 ms	2	<0,1>
40 ms	4	<0,2,1,3>
80 ms	8	<0,4,2,6,1,5,3,7>

4.2.5.3 Relation between input and output of 1st interleaving in uplink

The bits input to the 1st interleaving are denoted by $t_{i,1}, t_{i,2}, t_{i,3}, \ldots, t_{i,T_i}$, where *i* is the TrCH number and T_i the number of bits. Hence, $z_{i,k} = t_{i,k}$ and $Z_i = T_i$.

The bits output from the 1st interleaving are denoted by $d_{i,1}, d_{i,2}, d_{i,3}, \ldots, d_{i,T_i}$, and $d_{i,k} = y_{i,k}$.

4.2.5.4 Relation between input and output of 1st interleaving in downlink

If fixed positions of the TrCHs in a radio frame is used then the bits input to the 1st interleaving are denoted by $h_{i1}, h_{i2}, h_{i3}, \ldots, h_{iD_i}$, where *i* is the TrCH number. Hence, $z_{ik} = h_{ik}$ and $Z_i = D_i$.

If flexible positions of the TrCHs in a radio frame is used then the bits input to the 1st interleaving are denoted by $g_{i1}, g_{i2}, g_{i3}, \ldots, g_{iG_i}$, where *i* is the TrCH number. Hence, $z_{ik} = g_{ik}$ and $Z_i = G_i$.

The bits output from the 1st interleaving are denoted by $q_{i1}, q_{i2}, q_{i3}, \ldots, q_{iQ_i}$, where *i* is the TrCH number and Q_i is the number of bits. Hence, $q_{ik} = y_{ik}$, $Q_i = F_i H_i$ if fixed positions are used, and $Q_i = G_i$ if flexible positions are used.

4.2.6 Radio frame segmentation

When the transmission time interval is longer than 10 ms, the input bit sequence is segmented and mapped onto consecutive F_i radio frames. Following rate matching in the DL and radio frame size equalisation in the UL the input bit sequence length is guaranteed to be an integer multiple of F_i.

The input bit sequence is denoted by $x_{i1}, x_{i2}, x_{i3}, \ldots, x_{iX_i}$ where i is the TrCH number and X_i is the number bits. The F_i output bit sequences per TTI are denoted by $y_{i,n_i1}, y_{i,n_i2}, y_{i,n_i3}, \ldots, y_{i,n_iY_i}$ where n_i is the radio frame number in current TTI and Y_i is the number of bits per radio frame for TrCH i. The output sequences are defined as follows:

$y_{i,n_ik} = x_{i,((n_i-1)\cdot Y_i)+k}$, $n_i = 1\ldots F_i$, $k = 1\ldots Y_i$

where

$Y_i = (X_i / F_i)$ is the number of bits per segment.

The n_i -th segment is mapped to the n_i -th radio frame of the transmission time interval.

4.2.6.1 Relation between input and output of the radio frame segmentation block in uplink

The input bit sequence to the radio frame segmentation is denoted by $d_{i1}, d_{i2}, d_{i3}, \ldots, d_{iT_i}$, where i is the TrCH number and T_i the number of bits. Hence, $x_{ik} = d_{ik}$ and $X_i = T_i$.

The output bit sequence corresponding to radio frame n_i is denoted by $e_{i1}, e_{i2}, e_{i3}, \ldots, e_{iN_i}$, where i is the TrCH number and N_i is the number of bits. Hence, $e_{i,k} = y_{i,n_ik}$ and $N_i = Y_i$.

4.2.6.2 Relation between input and output of the radio frame segmentation block in downlink

The bits input to the radio frame segmentation are denoted by $q_{i1}, q_{i2}, q_{i3}, \ldots, q_{iQ_i}$, where i is the TrCH number and Q_i the number of bits. Hence, $x_{ik} = q_{ik}$ and $X_i = Q_i$.

The output bit sequence corresponding to radio frame n_i is denoted by $f_{i1}, f_{i2}, f_{i3}, \ldots, f_{iV_i}$, where i is the TrCH number and V_i is the number of bits. Hence, $f_{i,k} = y_{i,n_ik}$ and $V_i = Y_i$.

4.2.7 Rate matching

Rate matching means that bits on a transport channel are repeated or punctured. Higher layers assign a rate-matching attribute for each transport channel. This attribute is semi-static and can only be changed through higher layer signalling. The rate-matching attribute is used when the number of bits to be repeated or punctured is calculated.

The number of bits on a transport channel can vary between different transmission time intervals. In the downlink the transmission is interrupted if the number of bits is lower than maximum. When the number of bits between different transmission time intervals in uplink is changed, bits are repeated or punctured to ensure that the total bit rate after TrCH multiplexing is identical to the total channel bit rate of the allocated dedicated physical channels.

If no bits are input to the rate matching for all TrCHs within a CCTrCH, the rate matching shall output no bits for all TrCHs within the CCTrCH and no uplink DPDCH will be selected in the case of uplink rate matching.

Notation used in subcaluse 4.2.7 and subclauses:

$N_{i,j}$: For uplink: Number of bits in a radio frame before rate matching on TrCH i with transport format combination j .

For downlink: An intermediate calculation variable (not an integer but a multiple of 1/8).

$N_{i,l}^{TTI}$: Number of bits in a transmission time interval before rate matching on TrCH *i* with transport format *l*. Used in downlink only.

$\Delta N_{i,j}$: For uplink: If positive - number of bits that should be repeated in each radio frame on TrCH *i* with transport format combination *j*.

If negative - number of bits that should be punctured in each radio frame on TrCH *i* with transport format combination *j*.

For downlink : An intermediate calculation variable (not an integer but a multiple of 1/8).

$\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$: If positive - number of bits to be repeated in each transmission time interval on TrCH *i* with transport format *l*.

If negative - number of bits to be punctured in each transmission time interval on TrCH *i* with transport format *l*.

Used in downlink only.

$Np_{i,l}^{TTI,m}$, $m=0$ *to* $(F_{max} / F_i) - 1$:Positive or null: number of bits to be removed in TTI number *m* within the largest TTI, to create the required gaps in the compressed radio frames of this TTI, in case of compressed mode by puncturing, for TrCH *i* with transport format *l*. In case of fixed positions and compressed mode by puncturing, this value is noted $Np_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$ since it is calculated for all TrCH with their maximum number of bits; thus it is the same for all TFCs

Used in downlink only.

$Np_{i,l}^{n}$ $n=0$ *to* $F_{max} -1$:Positive or null: number of bits, in radio frame number *n* within the largest TTI, corresponding to the gap for compressed mode in this radio frame, for TrCH *i* with transport format *l*. The value will be null for the radio frames not overlapping with a transmission gap. In case of fixed positions and compressed mode by puncturing, this value is noted $Np_{i,\max}^{n}$ since it is calculated for all TrCHs with their maximum number of bits; thus it is the same for all TFCs

Used in downlink only.

$N_{TGL}[k]$, $k=0$ *to* $F_{\max}-1$: Positive or null: number of bits in each radio frame corresponding to the gap for compressed mode for the CCTrCH.

RM_i: Semi-static rate matching attribute for transport channel *i*. RM_i is provided by higher layers or takes a value as indicated in section 4.2.13.

PL: Puncturing limit for uplink. This value limits the amount of puncturing that can be applied in order to avoid multicode or to enable the use of a higher spreading factor. Signalled from higher layers. The allowed puncturing in % is actually equal to (1-PL)*100.

$N_{data,j}$: Total number of bits that are available for the CCTrCH in a radio frame with transport format combination *j*.

I: Number of TrCHs in the CCTrCH.

$Z_{i,j}$: Intermediate calculation variable.

F_i: Number of radio frames in the transmission time interval of TrCH *i*.

$F_{\max}$ Maximum number of radio frames in a transmission time interval used in the CCTrCH :

$$F_{\max} = \max_{1 \le i \le I} F_i$$

n_i: Radio frame number in the transmission time interval of TrCH *i* ($0 \le n_i < F_i$).

q: Average puncturing or repetition distance (normalised to only show the remaining rate matching on top of an integer number of repetitions). Used in uplink only.

$P1_F(n_i)$: The column permutation function of the 1st interleaver, $P1_F(x)$ is the original position of column with number x after permutation. P1 is defined on table 4 of section 4.2.5.2 (note that the $P1_F$ is self-inverse). Used for rate matching in uplink only.

$S[n]$: The shift of the puncturing or repetition pattern for radio frame n_i when $n = P1_{F_i}(n_i)$. Used in uplink only.

$TF_i(j)$: Transport format of TrCH i for the transport format combination j.

$TFS(i)$ The set of transport format indexes l for TrCH i.

TFCS The set of transport format combination indexes j.

e_{ini} Initial value of variable e in the rate matching pattern determination algorithm of subclause 4.2.7.5.

e_{plus} Increment of variable e in the rate matching pattern determination algorithm of subclause4.2.7.5.

e_{minus} Decrement of variable e in the rate matching pattern determination algorithm of subclause 4.2.7.5.

b: Indicates systematic and parity bits

b=1: Systematic bit. x_k in subclause 4.2.3.2.1.

b=2: 1st parity bit (from the upper Turbo constituent encoder). z_k in subcaluse 4.2.3.2.1.

b=3: 2nd parity bit (from the lower Turbo constituent encoder). z'_k in subclause 4.2.3.2.1.

The * (star) notation is used to replace an index x when the indexed variable X_x does not depend on the index x. In the left wing of an assignment the meaning is that "$X_* = Y$" is equivalent to "**for all** $\underline{x}$ **do** $X_x = Y$ ". In the right wing of an assignment, the meaning is that "$Y = X_*$ " is equivalent to "**take any** $\underline{x}$ **and do** $Y = X_x$".

The following relations, defined for all TFC j, are used when calculating the rate matching parameters:

$$Z_{0,j} = 0$$

$$Z_{i,j} = \left\lfloor \frac{\left(\left(\sum_{m=1}^{i} RM_m \times N_{m,j}\right) \times N_{data,j}\right)}{\sum_{m=1}^{I} RM_m \times N_{m,j}} \right\rfloor \text{ for all } i = 1 \ldots I \qquad (1)$$

$$\Delta N_{i,j} = Z_{i,j} - Z_{i-1,j} - N_{i,j} \text{ for all } i = 1 \ldots I$$

4.2.7.1 Determination of rate matching parameters in uplink

4.2.7.1.1 Determination of SF and number of PhCHs needed

In uplink, puncturing can be applied to match the CCTrCH bit rate to the PhCH bit rate. The bit rate of the PhCH(s) is limited by the UE capability and restrictions imposed by UTRAN, through limitations on the PhCH spreading factor. The maximum amount of puncturing that can be applied is 1-PL, PL is signalled from higher layers. The number of available bits in the radio frames of one PhCH for all possible spreading factors is given in [2]. Denote these values by N_{256}, N_{128}, N_{64}, N_{32}, N_{16}, N_8, and N_4, where the index refers to the spreading factor. The possible number of bits available to the CCTrCH on all PhCHs, N_{data}, then are { N_{256}, N_{128}, N_{64}, N_{32}, N_{16}, N_8, N_4, $2\times N_4$, $3\times N_4$, $4\times N_4$, $5\times N_4$, $6\times N_4$}.

For a RACH CCTrCH SET0 represents the set of N_{data} values allowed by the UTRAN, as set by the minimum SF provided by higher layers. SET0 may be a sub-set of { N_{256}, N_{128}, N_{64}, N_{32} }. SET0 does not take into account the UE’s capability.

For other CCTrCHs, SET0 denotes the set of N_{data} values allowed by the UTRAN and supported by the UE, as part of the UE's capability. SET0 can be a subset of { N_{256}, N_{128}, N_{64}, N_{32}, N_{16}, N_8, N_4, $2\times N_4$, $3\times N_4$, $4\times N_4$, $5\times N_4$, $6\times N_4$}. $N_{data,\,j}$ for the transport format combination j is determined by executing the following algorithm:

SET1 = { N_{data} in SET0 such that $\left(\min_{1\le y\le I}\{RM_y\}\right)\times N_{data} - \sum_{x=1}^{I} RM_x \times N_{x,j}$ is non negative }

If SET1 is not empty and the smallest element of SET1 requires just one PhCH then

$N_{data,j}$ = min SET1

else

SET2 = { N_{data} in SET0 such that $\left(\min_{1\le y\le I}\{RM_y\}\right)\times N_{data} - PL\times\sum_{x=1}^{I} RM_x \times N_{x,j}$ is non negative }

Sort SET2 in ascending order

N_{data} = min SET2

While N_{data} is not the max of SET2 and the follower of N_{data} requires no additional PhCH do

N_{data} = follower of N_{data} in SET2

End while

$N_{data,j}$ = N_{data}

End if

For a RACH CCTrCH, if $N_{data,j}$ is not part of the UE's capability then the TFC j cannot be used.

4.2.7.1.2 Determination of parameters needed for calculating the rate matching pattern

The number of bits to be repeated or punctured, $\Delta N_{i,j}$, within one radio frame for each TrCH i is calculated with equation 1 for all possible transport format combinations j and selected every radio frame. $N_{data,j}$ is given from subclause 4.2.7.1.1.

In a compressed radio frame, $N_{data,j}$ is replaced by $N_{data,j}^{cm}$ in Equation 1. $N_{data,j}^{cm}$ is given as follows:

In a radio frame compressed by higher layer scheduling, $N_{data,j}^{cm}$ is obtained by executing the algorithm in subclause 4.2.7.1.1 but with the number of bits in one radio frame of one PhCH reduced to $\frac{N_{tr}}{15}$ of the value in normal mode.

N_{tr} is the number of transmitted slots in a compressed radio frame and is defined by the following relation:

$$N_{tr} = \begin{cases} 15 - TGL, & \text{if } N_{first} + TGL \le 15 \\ N_{first}, & \text{in first frame if } N_{first} + TGL > 15 \\ 30 - TGL - N_{first}, & \text{in second frame if } N_{first} + TGL > 15 \end{cases}$$

N_{first} and TGL are defined in subclause 4.4.

In a radio frame compressed by spreading factor reduction, $N_{data,j}^{cm} = 2\times\left(N_{data,j} - N_{TGL}\right)$, where

$$N_{TGL} = \frac{15 - N_{tr}}{15}\times N_{data,j}$$

If $\Delta N_{i,j} = 0$ then the output data of the rate matching is the same as the input data and the rate matching algorithm of subclause 4.2.7.5 does not need to be executed.

If $\Delta N_{i,j} \neq 0$ the parameters listed in subclauses 4.2.7.1.2.1 and 4.2.7.1.2.2 shall be used for determining e_{ini}, e_{plus}, and e_{minus} (regardless if the radio frame is compressed or not).

4.2.7.1.2.1 Convolutionally encoded TrCHs

$R = \Delta N_{i,j} \bmod N_{i,j}$ -- note: in this context $\Delta N_{i,j} \bmod N_{i,j}$ is in the range of 0 to N_{ij}-1 i.e. -1 mod 10 = 9.

if $R \neq 0$ and $2 \times R \leq N_{ij}$

then $q = \lceil N_{i,j} / R \rceil$

else

$q = \lceil N_{i,j} / (R - N_{i,j}) \rceil$

endif

-- note: q is a signed quantity.

if q is even

then $q' = q + \gcd(|q|, F_i)/F_i$ -- where $\gcd(|q|, F_i)$ means greatest common divisor of $|q|$ and F_i

-- note that q' is not an integer, but a multiple of 1/8

else

$q' = q$

endif

for $x = 0$ to $F_i - 1$

$S[|\lfloor x \times q' \rfloor| \bmod F_i] = (|\lfloor x \times q' \rfloor| \operatorname{div} F_i)$

end for

$\Delta N_i = \Delta N_{i,j}$

a = 2

For each radio frame, the rate-matching pattern is calculated with the algorithm in subclause 4.2.7.5, where :

$X_i = N_{i,j}$., and

$e_{ini} = (a \times S[P1_{Fi}(n_i)] \times |\Delta N_i| + 1) \bmod (a \cdot N_{ij})$.

$e_{plus} = a \times N_{i,j}$

$e_{minus} = a \times |\Delta N_i|$

puncturing for $\Delta N < 0$, repetition otherwise.

4.2.7.1.2.2 Turbo encoded TrCHs

If repetition is to be performed on turbo encoded TrCHs, i.e. $\Delta N_{i,j} > 0$, the parameters in subclause 4.2.7.1.2.1 are used.

If puncturing is to be performed, the parameters below shall be used. Index b is used to indicate systematic (b=1), 1st parity (b=2), and 2nd parity bit (b=3).

$a=2$ when b=2

$a=1$ when b=3

$$\Delta N_i = \begin{cases} \lfloor \Delta N_{i,j}/2 \rfloor, & b=2 \\ \lceil \Delta N_{i,j}/2 \rceil, & b=3 \end{cases}$$

If ΔN_i is calculated as 0 for *b*=2 or *b*=3, then the following procedure and the rate matching algorithm of subclause 4.2.7.5 don't need to be performed for the corresponding parity bit stream.

$X_i = \lfloor N_{i,j}/3 \rfloor$,

$q = \lfloor X_i /|\Delta N_i| \rfloor$

if($q \leq 2$)

for r=0 to F_i-1

S[(3×r+b-1) mod F_I] = r mod 2;

end for

else

if q is even

then q' = q – *gcd(* q, F_i*)*/ F_i -- where *gcd (* q, F_i*)* means greatest common divisor of q and F_i
-- note that q' is not an integer, but a multiple of 1/8

else q' = q

endif

for x=0 to F_i -1

r = $\lceil x \times q' \rceil$ mod F_i;

S[(3×r+b-1) mod F_i] = $\lceil x \times q' \rceil$ div F_i;

endfor

endif

For each radio frame, the rate-matching pattern is calculated with the algorithm in subclause 4.2.7.5, where:

X_i is as above:

$e_{ini} = (a \times S[P1_{Fi}(n_i)] \times |\Delta N_i| + X_i) \bmod (a \times X_i)$, if e_{ini} =0 then $e_{ini} = a \times X_i$

$e_{plus} = a \times X_i$

$e_{minus} = a \times |\Delta N_i|$

4.2.7.2 Determination of rate matching parameters in downlink

For downlink channels other than the downlink shared channel(s) (DSCH), $N_{data,j}$ does not depend on the transport format combination *j*. $N_{data,*}$ is given by the channelization code(s) assigned by higher layers.

Denote the number of physical channels used for the CCTrCH by *P*. $N_{data,*}$ is the number of bits available to the CCTrCH in one radio frame and defined as $N_{data,*}=P \times 15 \times (N_{data1}+N_{data2})$, where N_{data1} and N_{data2} are defined in [2]. Note that contrary to the uplink, the same rate matching patterns are used in TTIs containing no compressed radio frames and in TTIs containing radio frames compressed by spreading factor reduction or higher layer scheduling.

For a DSCH CCTrCH , different sets of channelisation codes may be configured by higher layers resulting in possibly multiple $N_{data,*}$ values, where $N_{data,*}$ is the number of bits available to the CCTrCH in one radio frame and is given by $N_{data,*}=P \times 15 \times (N_{data1}+N_{data2})$, where N_{data1} and N_{data2} are defined in [2]. Each $N_{data,*}$ corresponds to a sub-set of the Transport format combinations configured as part of the TFCS. For a DSCH CCTrCH only flexible positions apply. The rate matching calculations as specified in section 4.2.7.2.2 shall be performed for each $N_{data,*}$, where the TFCS taken into account in the calculations is restricted to the set of TFCs associated with $N_{data,*}$, as configured by higher layers. Therefore the amount of rate matching for a transport channel *i* for a TTI interval is a function of the $N_{data,*}$ value which shall be constant over the entire TTI as specified in section 4.2.14.

In the following, the total amount of puncturing or repetition for the TTI is calculated.

Additional calculations for TTIs containing radio frames compressed by puncturing in case fixed positions are used, are performed to determine this total amount of rate matching needed.

For compressed mode by puncturing, in TTIs where some compressed radio frames occur, the puncturing is increased or the repetition is decreased compared to what is calculated according to the rate matching parameters provided by higher layers. This allows to cope with reduction of available data bits on the physical channel(s) if the slot format for the compressed frame(s) contains fewer data bits than for the normal frames(s), and to create room for later insertion of marked bits, noted p-bits, which will identify the positions of the gaps in the compressed radio frames.

The amount of additional puncturing corresponds to the number of bits to create the gap in the TTI for TrCH *i*, plus the difference between the number of data bits available in normal frames and in compressed frames, due to slot format change. In case of fixed positions, it is calculated in addition to the amount of rate matching indicated by higher layers. It is noted $Np_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$.

In fixed positions case, to obtain the total rate matching $\Delta N_{i,\max}^{TTI,cm,m}$ to be performed on the TTI *m*, $Np_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$ is subtracted from $\Delta N_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$ (calculated based on higher layers RM parameters as for normal rate matching). This allows to create room for the $Np_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$ bits p to be inserted later. If the result is null, i.e. the amount of repetition matches exactly the amount of additional puncturing needed, then no rate matching is necessary.

In case of compressed mode by puncturing and fixed positions, for some calculations, $N'_{data,*}$ is used for radio frames with gap instead of $N_{data,*}$, where $N'_{data,*} = P \times 15 \times (N'_{data1} + N'_{data2})$. N'_{data1} and N'_{data2} are the number of bits in the data fields of the slot format used for the frames compressed by puncturing.

4.2.7.2.1 Determination of rate matching parameters for fixed positions of TrCHs

4.2.7.2.1.1 Calculation of $\Delta N_{i,\max}$ for normal mode and compressed mode by spreading factor reduction

First an intermediate calculation variable $N_{i,*}$ is calculated for all transport channels *i* by the following formula:

$$N_{i,*} = \frac{1}{F_i} \times \left(\max_{l \in TFS(i)} N_{i,l}^{TTI} \right)$$

In order to compute the $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$ parameters for all TrCH *i* and all TF *l*, we first compute an intermediate parameter $\Delta N_{i,\max}$ by the following formula, where $\Delta N_{i,*}$ is derived from $N_{i,*}$ by the formula given at subclause 4.2.7:

$$\Delta N_{i,max} = F_i \times \Delta N_{i,*}$$

If $\Delta N_{i,max} = 0$ then, for TrCH *i*, the output data of the rate matching is the same as the input data and the rate matching algorithm of subclause 4.2.7.5 does not need to be executed. In this case we have :

$$\forall l \in TFS(i)\ \Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI} = 0$$

If $\Delta N_{i,max} \neq 0$ the parameters listed in subclauses 4.2.7.2.1.3 and 4.2.7.2.1.4 shall be used for determining e_{ini}, e_{plus}, and e_{minus}, and $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$.

4.2.7.2.1.2 Calculations for compressed mode by puncturing

Calculations of $\Delta N_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$ for all TTI *m* within largest TTI, for all TrCH *i*

First an intermediate calculation variable $N_{i,*}$ is calculated for all transport channels *i* by the following formula:

$$N_{i,*} = \frac{1}{F_i} \times \left(\max_{l \in TFS(i)} N_{i,l}^{TTI} \right)$$

Then an intermediate calculation variable $\Delta N_{i,*}$ is derived from $N_{i,*}$ by the formula given at subclause 4.2.7, for all TrCH *i*.

In order to compute the $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI,m}$ parameters for all TrCH *i*, all TF *l* and all TTI with number *m* in the largest TTI, we first compute an intermediate parameter $\Delta N_{i,\max}^{m}$ by the following formula :

$$\Delta N_{i,\max}^{m} = F_i \times \Delta N_{i,*}$$

Calculations of $Np_{i,\max}^{n}$ and $Np_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$

Let $Np_{i,\max}^{n}$ be the number of bits to eliminate on TrCH *i* to create the gap for compressed mode and to cope for the reduction of the number of available data bits in the compressed frame if the changed slot format contains fewer data bits than for normal frame, in each radio frame n of the TTI, calculated for the Transport Format Combination of TrCH *i*, in which the number of bits of TrCH *i* is at its maximum.

$Np_{i,\max}^{n}$ is calculated for each radio frame n of the TTI in the following way.

Intermediate variables Z_i *for* $i = 1$ *to* I are calculated using the formula (1) in 4.2.7, by replacing $N_{data,j}$ in the frames compressed by puncturing with $(N_{TGL}[n] + (N_{data,*} - N'_{data,*}))$.

The number of bits corresponding to the gap for TrCH *i*, in each radio frame of its TTI is calculated using the number of bits to remove on all Physical Channels $N_{TGL}[k]$, where k is the radio frame number in the largest TTI.

For each radio frame k of the largest TTI that is overlapping with a transmission gap, $N_{TGL}[k]$ is given by the relation:

$$N_{TGL} = \begin{cases} \frac{TGL}{15} \times N'_{data,*} & \text{, if } N_{first} + TGL \le 15 \\ \frac{15 - N_{first}}{15} \times N'_{data,*} & \text{, in first radio frame of the gap if } N_{first} + TGL > 15 \\ \frac{TGL - (15 - N_{first})}{15} \times N'_{data,*} & \text{, in second radio frame of the gap if } N_{first} + TGL > 15 \end{cases}$$

N_{first} and TGL are defined in subclause 4.4.

Note that $N_{TGL}[k] = 0$ if radio frame k is not overlapping with a transmission gap.

Then $Np_{i,\max}^{n} = (Z_i - Z_{i-1})$ *for* $i = 1$ *to* I

The total number of bits $Np_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$ corresponding to the gaps for compressed mode for TrCH i in the TTI is calculated as:

$$Np_{i,\max}^{TTI,m} = \sum_{n=m\times F_i}^{n=(m+1)\times F_i-1} Np_{i,\max}^{n}$$

The amount of rate matching $\Delta N_{i,\max}^{TTI,cm,m}$ for the highest TrCH bit rate is then computed by the following formula :

$$\Delta N_{i,\max}^{TTI,cm,m} = \Delta N_{i,\max}^{m} - Np_{i,\max}^{TTI,m}$$

If $\Delta N_{i,\max}^{TTI,cm,m} = 0$, then, for TrCH *i*, the output data of the rate matching is the same as the input data and the rate matching algorithm of subclause 4.2.7.5 does not need to be executed.

If $\Delta N_{i,\max}^{TTI,cm,m} \neq 0$, then, for TrCH *i*, the rate matching algorithm of subclause 4.2.7.5 needs to be executed, and the parameters listed in subclauses 4.2.7.2.1.3 and 4.2.7.2.1.4 shall be used for determining e_{ini}, e_{plus}, and e_{minus}, and $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI,m}$.

4.2.7.2.1.3 Determination of rate matching parameters for convolutionally encoded TrCHs

$$\Delta N_i = \Delta N_{i,max}$$

For compressed mode by puncturing, ΔN_i is defined as: $\Delta N_i = \Delta N_{i,\max}^{TTI,cm,m}$, instead of the previous relation.

a=2

$$N_{max} = \max_{l \in TFS(i)} N_{il}^{TTI}$$

For each transmission time interval of TrCH *i* with TF *l*, the rate-matching pattern is calculated with the algorithm in subclause 4.2.7.5. The following parameters are used as input:

$$X_i = N_{il}^{TTI}$$

$$e_{ini} = 1$$

$$e_{plus} = a \times N_{max}$$

$$e_{\min us} = a \times |\Delta N_i|$$

Puncturing if $\Delta N_i < 0$, repetition otherwise. The values of $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$ may be computed by counting repetitions or puncturing when the algorithm of subclause 4.2.7.5 is run. The resulting values of $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$ can be represented with following expression.

$$\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI} = \left\lceil \frac{|\Delta N_i| \times X_i}{N_{max}} \right\rceil \times \text{sgn}(\Delta N_i)$$

For compressed mode by puncturing, the above formula produces $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI,m}$ instead of $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$.

4.2.7.2.1.4 Determination of rate matching parameters for Turbo encoded TrCHs

If repetition is to be performed on turbo encoded TrCHs, i.e. $\Delta N_{i,max} > 0$, the parameters in subclause 4.2.7.2.1.3 are used.

If puncturing is to be performed, the parameters below shall be used. Index *b* is used to indicate systematic (*b*=1), 1st parity (*b*=2), and 2nd parity bit (*b*=3).

a=2 when *b*=2

a=1 when *b*=3

The bits indicated by *b*=1 shall not be punctured.

$$\Delta N_i^b = \begin{cases} \lfloor \Delta N_{i,max}/2 \rfloor, & \text{for } b=2 \\ \lceil \Delta N_{i,max}/2 \rceil, & \text{for } b=3 \end{cases}$$

In Compressed Mode by puncturing, the following relations are used instead of the previous ones:

$$\Delta N_i^b = \lfloor \Delta N_{i,\max}^{TTI,cm,m}/2 \rfloor, \text{ for } b=2$$

$$\Delta N_{i\ I}^b = \lceil \Delta N_{i,\max}^{TTI,cm,m}/2 \rceil, \text{ for } b=3$$

$$N_{max} = \max_{l \in TFS(i)} (N_{il}^{TTI}/3)$$

For each transmission time interval of TrCH *i* with TF *l*, the rate-matching pattern is calculated with the algorithm in subcaluse 4.2.7.5. The following parameters are used as input:

$$X_i = N_{il}^{TTI}/3$$

$$e_{ini} = N_{max}$$

$$e_{plus} = a \times N_{max}$$

$$e_{\min us} = a \times \left| \Delta N_i^b \right|$$

The values of $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$ may be computed by counting puncturing when the algorithm of subclause 4.2.7.5 is run. The resulting values of $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$ can be represented with following expression.

$$\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI} = -\left\lfloor \frac{\left| \Delta N_i^2 \right| \times X_i}{N_{max}} + 0.5 \right\rfloor - \left\lfloor \frac{\left| \Delta N_i^3 \right| \times X_i}{N_{max}} \right\rfloor$$

In the above equation, the first term of the right hand side represents the amount of puncturing for *b*=2 and the second term represents the amount of puncturing for *b*=3.

For compressed mode by puncturing, the above formula produces $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI,m}$ instead of $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$.

4.2.7.2.2 Determination of rate matching parameters for flexible positions of TrCHs

4.2.7.2.2.1 Calculations for normal mode, compressed mode by higher layer scheduling, and compressed mode by spreading factor reduction

First an intermediate calculation variable N_{ij} is calculated for all transport channels *i* and all transport format combinations *j* by the following formula:

$$N_{i,j} = \frac{1}{F_i} \times N_{i,TF_i(j)}^{TTI}$$

Then rate matching ratios RF_i are calculated for each the transport channel i in order to minimise the number of DTX bits when the bit rate of the CCTrCH is maximum. The RF_i ratios are defined by the following formula:

$$RF_i = \frac{N_{data,*}}{\max\limits_{j \in TFCS} \sum_{i=1}^{i=I} \left(RM_i \times N_{i,j} \right)} \times RM_i$$

The computation of $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$ parameters is then performed in two phases. In a first phase, tentative temporary values of $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$ are computed, and in the second phase they are checked and corrected. The first phase, by use of the RF_i ratios, ensures that the number of DTX indication bits inserted is minimum when the CCTrCH bit rate is maximum, but it does not ensure that the maximum CCTrCH bit rate is not greater than $N_{data,*}$. per 10ms. The latter condition is ensured through the checking and possible corrections carried out in the second phase.

At the end of the second phase, the latest value of $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$ is the definitive value.

The first phase defines the tentative temporary $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI}$ for all transport channel i and any of its transport format l by use of the following formula:

$$\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI} = F_i \times \left\lceil \frac{RF_i \times N_{i,l}^{TTI}}{F_i} \right\rceil - N_{i,l}^{TTI} = F_i \times \left\lceil \frac{N_{data,*} \times RM_i \times N_{i,l}^{TTI}}{F_i \times \max\limits_{j \in TFCS} \sum_{i=1}^{I} \left(RM_i \times N_{i,j} \right)} \right\rceil - N_{i,l}^{TTI}$$

The second phase is defined by the following algorithm:

for all j in *TFCS* in ascending order of TFCI do -- for all TFC

$$D = \sum_{i=1}^{i=I} \frac{N_{i,TF_i(j)}^{TTI} + \Delta N_{i,TF_i(j)}^{TTI}}{F_i}$$ -- CCTrCH bit rate (bits per 10ms) for TFC j

if $D > N_{data,*}$ then

for i = 1 to I do -- for all TrCH

$\Delta N = F_i \times \Delta N_{i,j}$ -- $\Delta N_{i,j}$ is derived from $N_{i,j}$ by the formula given at subclause 4.2.7.

if $\Delta N_{i,TF_i(j)}^{TTI} > \Delta N$ then

$\Delta N_{i,TF_i(j)}^{TTI} = \Delta N$

end-if

end-for

end-if

end-for

If $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI} = 0$ then, for TrCH i at TF l, the output data of the rate matching is the same as the input data and the rate matching algorithm of subclause 4.2.7.5 does not need to be executed.

If $\Delta N_{i,l}^{TTI} \neq 0$ the parameters listed in subclauses 4.2.7.2.2.2 and 4.2.7.2.2.3 shall be used for determining e_{ini}, e_{plus}, and e_{minus}.

4.2.7.2.2.2 Determination of rate matching parameters for convolutionally encoded TrCHs

$$\Delta N_i = \Delta N_{il}^{TTI}$$

a=2

For each transmission time interval of TrCH *i* with TF *l*, the rate-matching pattern is calculated with the algorithm in subclause 4.2.7.5. The following parameters are used as input:

$$X_i = N_{il}^{TTI}$$

$$e_{ini} = 1$$

$$e_{plus} = a \times N_{il}^{TTI}$$

$$e_{\min us} = a \times |\Delta N_i|$$

puncturing for $\Delta N_i < 0$, repetition otherwise.

4.2.7.2.2.3 Determination of rate matching parameters for Turbo encoded TrCHs

If repetition is to be performed on turbo encoded TrCHs, i.e. $\Delta N_{il}^{TTI} > 0$, the parameters in subclause 4.2.7.2.2.2 are used.

If puncturing is to be performed, the parameters below shall be used. Index *b* is used to indicate systematic (*b*=1), 1st parity (*b*=2), and 2nd parity bit (*b*=3).

a=2 when *b*=2

a=1 when *b*=3

The bits indicated by *b*=1 shall not be punctured.

$$\Delta N_i = \begin{cases} \lfloor \Delta N_{il}^{TTI} / 2 \rfloor, & b = 2 \\ \lceil \Delta N_{il}^{TTI} / 2 \rceil, & b = 3 \end{cases}$$

For each transmission time interval of TrCH *i* with TF *l*, the rate-matching pattern is calculated with the algorithm in subclause 4.2.7.5. The following parameters are used as input:

$$X_i = N_{il}^{TTI} / 3,$$

$$e_{ini} = X_i,$$

$$e_{plus} = a \times X_i$$

$$e_{\min us} = a \times |\Delta N_i|$$

4.2.7.3 Bit separation and collection in uplink

The systematic bits of turbo encoded TrCHs shall not be punctured, the other bits may be punctured. The systematic bits, first parity bits, and second parity bits in the bit sequence input to the rate matching block are therefore separated into three sequences.

The first sequence contains:

- All of the systematic bits that are from turbo encoded TrCHs.

- From 0 to 2 first and/or second parity bits that are from turbo encoded TrCHs. These bits come into the first sequence when the total number of bits in a block after radio frame segmentation is not a multiple of three.

- Some of the systematic, first parity and second parity bits that are for trellis termination.

The second sequence contains:

- All of the first parity bits that are from turbo encoded TrCHs, except those that go into the first sequence when the total number of bits is not a multiple of three.

- Some of the systematic, first parity and second parity bits that are for trellis termination.

The third sequence contains:

- All of the second parity bits that are from turbo encoded TrCHs, except those that go into the first sequence when the total number of bits is not a multiple of three.

- Some of the systematic, first parity and second parity bits that are for trellis termination.

The second and third sequences shall be of equal length, whereas the first sequence can contain from 0 to 2 more bits. Puncturing is applied only to the second and third sequences.The bit separation function is transparent for convolutionally encoded TrCHs and for turbo encoded TrCHs with repetition. The bit separation and bit collection are illustrated in figures 5 and 6.

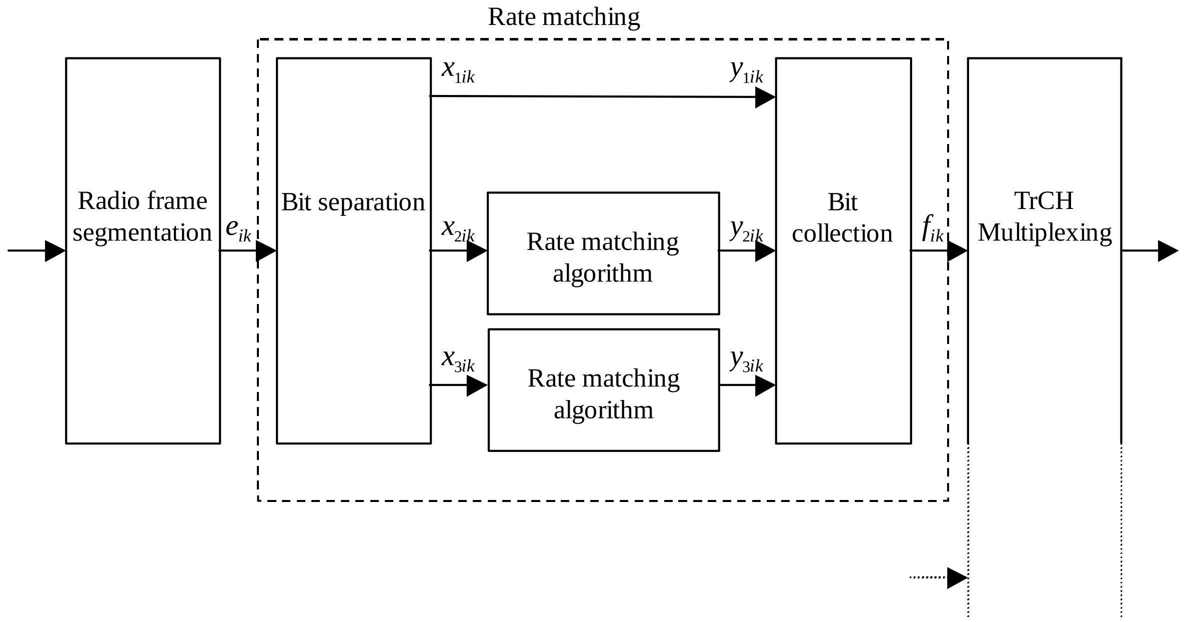


Figure 5: Puncturing of turbo encoded TrCHs in uplink

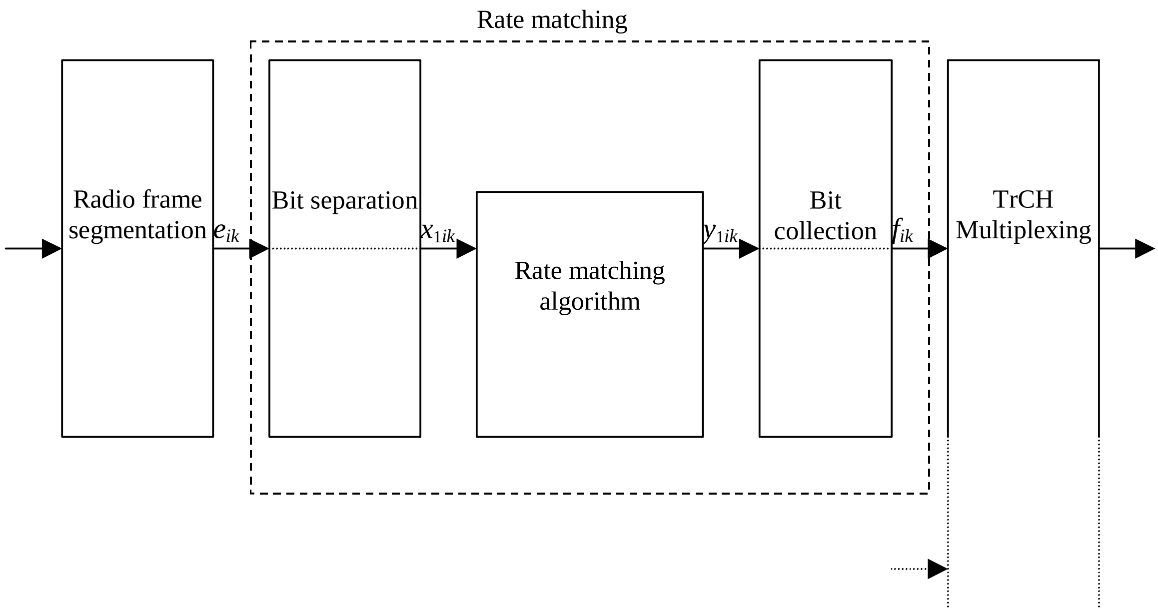


Figure 6: Rate matching for convolutionally encoded TrCHs and for turbo encoded TrCHs with repetition in uplink

The bit separation is dependent on the 1st interleaving and offsets are used to define the separation for different TTIs. *b* indicates the three sequences defined in this section, with *b*=1 indicating the first sequence, *b* = 2 the second one, and *b* = 3 the third one. The offsets α_b for these sequences are listed in table 5.

Table 5: TTI dependent offset needed for bit separation

TTI (ms)	α_1	α_2	α_3
10, 40	0	1	2
20, 80	0	2	1

The bit separation is different for different radio frames in the TTI. A second offset is therefore needed. The radio frame number for TrCH *i* is denoted by n_i. and the offset by β_{n_i} .

Table 6: Radio frame dependent offset needed for bit separation

TTI (ms)	β_0	β_1	β_2	β_3	β_4	β_5	β_6	β_7
10	0	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
20	0	1	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
40	0	1	2	0	NA	NA	NA	NA
80	0	1	2	0	1	2	0	1

4.2.7.3.1 Bit separation

The bits input to the rate matching are denoted by $e_{i1}, e_{i2}, e_{i3}, \ldots, e_{iN_i}$, where *i* is the TrCH number and N_i is the number of bits input to the rate matching block. Note that the transport format combination number *j* for simplicity has been left out in the bit numbering, i.e. $N_i=N_{ij}$. The bits after separation are denoted by $x_{bi1}, x_{bi2}, x_{bi3}, \ldots, x_{biX_i}$. For turbo encoded TrCHs with puncturing, *b* indicates the three sequences defined in section 4.2.7.3, with *b*=1 indicating the first sequence, and so forth. For all other cases *b* is defined to be 1. X_i is the number of bits in each separated bit sequence. The relation between e_{ik} and x_{bik} is given below.

For turbo encoded TrCHs with puncturing:

$$x_{1,i,k} = e_{i,3(k-1)+1+(\alpha_1+\beta_{n_i}) \bmod 3} \qquad k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, X_i \qquad X_i = \lfloor N_i / 3 \rfloor$$

$x_{1,i,\lfloor N_i/3\rfloor+k} = e_{i,3\lfloor N_i/3\rfloor+k}$ $k = 1, \ldots, N_i \bmod 3$ Note: When (N_i mod 3) = 0 this row is not needed.

$x_{2,i,k} = e_{i,3(k-1)+1+(\alpha_2+\beta_{n_i}) \bmod 3}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, X_i$ $X_i = \lfloor N_i/3\rfloor$

$x_{3,i,k} = e_{i,3(k-1)+1+(\alpha_3+\beta_{n_i}) \bmod 3}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, X_i$ $X_i = \lfloor N_i/3\rfloor$

For convolutionally encoded TrCHs and turbo encoded TrCHs with repetition:

$x_{1,i,k} = e_{i,k}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, X_i$ $X_i = N_i$

4.2.7.3.2 Bit collection

The bits x_{bik} are input to the rate matching algorithm described in subclause 4.2.7.5. The bits output from the rate matching algorithm are denoted $y_{bi1}, y_{bi2}, y_{bi3}, \ldots, y_{biY_i}$.

Bit collection is the inverse function of the separation. The bits after collection are denoted by $z_{bi1}, z_{bi2}, z_{bi3}, \ldots, z_{biY_i}$. After bit collection, the bits indicated as punctured are removed and the bits are then denoted by $f_{i1}, f_{i2}, f_{i3}, \ldots, f_{iV_i}$, where i is the TrCH number and $V_i = N_{ij} + \Delta N_{ij}$. The relations between y_{bik}, z_{bik}, and f_{ik} are given below.

For turbo encoded TrCHs with puncturing ($Y_i = X_i$):

$z_{i,3(k-1)+1+(\alpha_1+\beta_{n_i}) \bmod 3} = y_{1,i,k}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, Y_i$

$z_{i,3\lfloor N_i/3\rfloor+k} = y_{1,i,\lfloor N_i/3\rfloor+k}$ $k = 1, \ldots, N_i \bmod 3$ Note: When (N_i mod 3) = 0 this row is not needed.

$z_{i,3(k-1)+1+(\alpha_2+\beta_{n_i}) \bmod 3} = y_{2,i,k}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, Y_i$

$z_{i,3(k-1)+1+(\alpha_3+\beta_{n_i}) \bmod 3} = y_{3,i,k}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, Y_i$

After the bit collection, bits $z_{i,k}$ with value δ, where $\delta \notin \{0, 1\}$, are removed from the bit sequence. Bit $f_{i,1}$ corresponds to the bit $z_{i,k}$ with smallest index k after puncturing, bit $f_{i,2}$ corresponds to the bit $z_{i,k}$ with second smallest index k after puncturing, and so on.

For convolutionally encoded TrCHs and turbo encoded TrCHs with repetition:

$z_{i,k} = y_{1,i,k}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, Y_i$

When repetition is used, $f_{i,k} = z_{i,k}$ and $Y_i = V_i$.

When puncturing is used, $Y_i = X_i$ and bits $z_{i,k}$ with value δ, where $\delta \notin \{0, 1\}$, are removed from the bit sequence. Bit $f_{i,1}$ corresponds to the bit $z_{i,k}$ with smallest index k after puncturing, bit $f_{i,2}$ corresponds to the bit $z_{i,k}$ with second smallest index k after puncturing, and so on.

4.2.7.4 Bit separation and collection in downlink

The systematic bits of turbo encoded TrCHs shall not be punctured, the other bits may be punctured.

The systematic bits, first parity bits and second parity bits in the bit sequence input to the rate matching block are therefore separated into three sequences of equal lengths.

The first sequence contains :

- All of the systematic bits that are from turbo encoded TrCHs.
- Some of the systematic, first parity and second parity bits that are for trellis termination.

The second sequence contains:

- All of the first parity bits that are from turbo encoded TrCHs.
- Some of the systematic, first parity and second parity bits that are for trellis termination.

The third sequence contains:

- All of the second parity bits that are from turbo encoded TrCHs.
- Some of the systematic, first parity and second parity bits that are for trellis termination.

Puncturing is applied only to the second and third sequences.

The bit separation function is transparent for convolutionally encoded TrCHs and for turbo encoded TrCHs with repetition. The bit separation and bit collection are illustrated in figures 7 and 8.

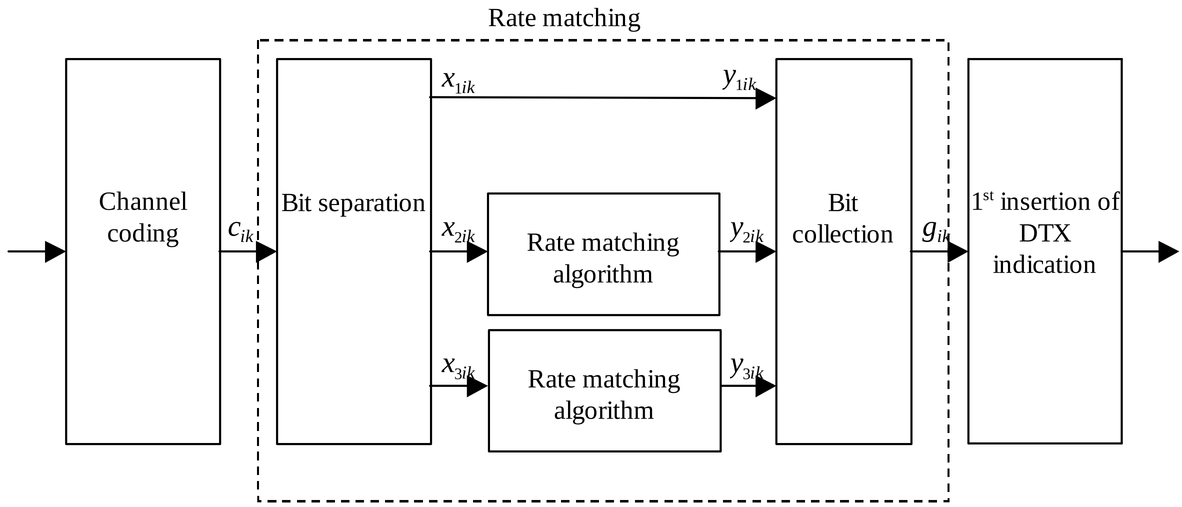


Figure 7: Puncturing of turbo encoded TrCHs in downlink

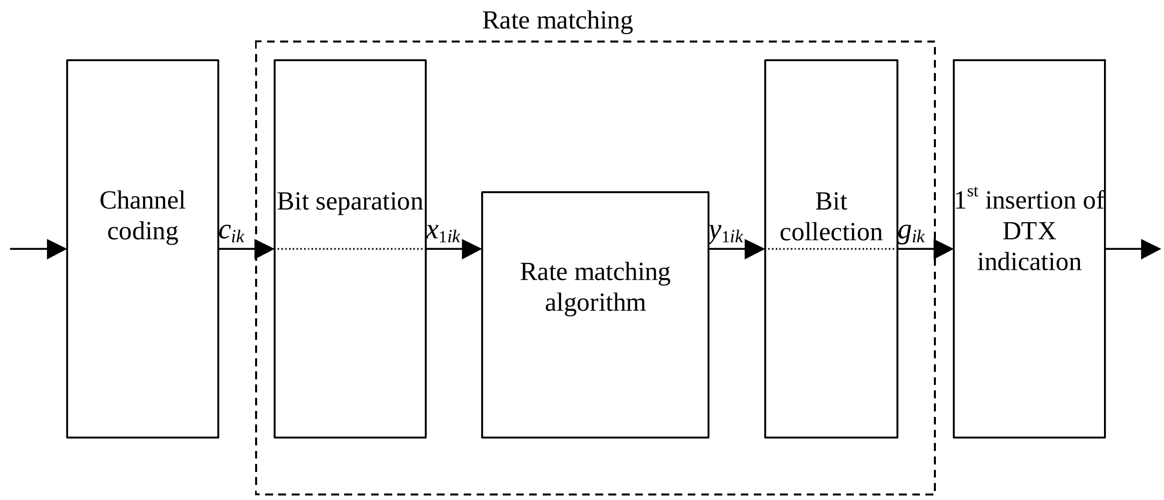


Figure 8: Rate matching for convolutionally encoded TrCHs and for turbo encoded TrCHs with repetition in downlink

4.2.7.4.1 Bit separation

The bits input to the rate matching are denoted by $c_{i1}, c_{i2}, c_{i3}, \ldots, c_{iE_i}$, where *i* is the TrCH number and E_i is the number of bits input to the rate matching block. Note that E_i is a multiple of 3 for turbo encoded TrCHs and that the transport format *l* for simplicity has been left out in the bit numbering, i.e. $E_i = N_{il}^{TTI}$. The bits after separation are denoted by $x_{bi1}, x_{bi2}, x_{bi3}, \ldots, x_{biX_i}$. For turbo encoded TrCHs with puncturing, *b* indicates the three sequences defined in section 4.2.7.4, with b=1 indicating the first sequence, and so forth. For all other cases *b* is defined to be 1. X_i is the number of bits in each separated bit sequence. The relation between c_{ik} and x_{bik} is given below.

For turbo encoded TrCHs with puncturing:

$x_{1,i,k} = c_{i,3(k-1)+1}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, X_i$ $X_i = E_i /3$

$x_{2,i,k} = c_{i,3(k-1)+2}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, X_i$ $X_i = E_i /3$

$x_{3,i,k} = c_{i,3(k-1)+3}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, X_i$ $X_i = E_i /3$

For convolutionally encoded TrCHs and turbo encoded TrCHs with repetition:

$x_{1,i,k} = c_{i,k}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, X_i$ $X_i = E_i$

4.2.7.4.2 Bit collection

The bits x_{bik} are input to the rate matching algorithm described in subclause 4.2.7.5. The bits output from the rate matching algorithm are denoted $y_{bi1}, y_{bi2}, y_{bi3}, \ldots, y_{biY_i}$.

Bit collection is the inverse function of the separation. The bits after collection are denoted by $z_{bi1}, z_{bi2}, z_{bi3}, \ldots, z_{biY_i}$. After bit collection, the bits indicated as punctured are removed and the bits are then denoted by $g_{i1}, g_{i2}, g_{i3}, \ldots, g_{iG_i}$, where *i* is the TrCH number and $G_i = N_{il}^{TTI} + \Delta N_{il}^{TTI}$. The relations between y_{bik}, z_{bik}, and g_{ik} are given below.

For turbo encoded TrCHs with puncturing ($Y_i=X_i$):

$z_{i,3(k-1)+1} = y_{1,i,k}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, Y_i$

$z_{i,3(k-1)+2} = y_{2,i,k}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, Y_i$

$z_{i,3(k-1)+3} = y_{3,i,k}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, Y_i$

After the bit collection, bits $z_{i,k}$ with value δ, where $\delta \notin \{0, 1\}$, are removed from the bit sequence. Bit $g_{i,1}$ corresponds to the bit $z_{i,k}$ with smallest index *k* after puncturing, bit $g_{i,2}$ corresponds to the bit $z_{i,k}$ with second smallest index *k* after puncturing, and so on.

For convolutionally encoded TrCHs and turbo encoded TrCHs with repetition:

$z_{i,k} = y_{1,i,k}$ $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, Y_i$

When repetition is used, $g_{i,k}=z_{i,k}$ and $Y_i=G_i$.

When puncturing is used, $Y_i=X_i$ and bits $z_{i,k}$ with value δ, where $\delta \notin \{0, 1\}$, are removed from the bit sequence. Bit $g_{i,1}$ corresponds to the bit $z_{i,k}$ with smallest index *k* after puncturing, bit $g_{i,2}$ corresponds to the bit $z_{i,k}$ with second smallest index *k* after puncturing, and so on.

4.2.7.5 Rate matching pattern determination

Denote the bits before rate matching by:

$x_{i1}, x_{i2}, x_{i3}, \ldots, x_{iX_i}$, where *i* is the TrCH number and the sequence is defined in 4.2.7.3 for uplink or in 4.2.7.4 for downlink. Parameters X_i, e_{ini}, e_{plus}, and e_{minus} are given in 4.2.7.1 for uplink or in 4.2.7.2 for downlink.

The rate matching rule is as follows:

```
if puncturing is to be performed
    e = e_ini          -- initial error between current and desired puncturing ratio
    m = 1              -- index of current bit
    do while m <= X_i
        e = e – e_minus        -- update error
        if e <= 0 then         -- check if bit number m should be punctured
            set bit x_i,m to δ where δ∉{0, 1}
            e = e + e_plus   -- update error
        end if
        m = m + 1              --  next bit
    end do
else
    e = e_ini              -- initial error between current and desired puncturing ratio
    m = 1                  -- index of current bit
    do while m <= X_i
        e = e – e_minus        -- update error
        do while e <= 0        -- check if bit number m should be repeated
            repeat bit x_i,m
            e = e +  e_plus  -- update error
        end do
        m = m + 1                  --  next bit
    end do
end if
```

A repeated bit is placed directly after the original one.

4.2.8 TrCH multiplexing

Every 10 ms, one radio frame from each TrCH is delivered to the TrCH multiplexing. These radio frames are serially multiplexed into a coded composite transport channel (CCTrCH).

The bits input to the TrCH multiplexing are denoted by $f_{i1}, f_{i2}, f_{i3}, \ldots, f_{iV_i}$, where i is the TrCH number and V_i is the number of bits in the radio frame of TrCH i. The number of TrCHs is denoted by I. The bits output from TrCH multiplexing are denoted by $s_1, s_2, s_3, \ldots, s_S$, where S is the number of bits, i.e. $S = \sum_i V_i$. The TrCH multiplexing is defined by the following relations:

$$s_k = f_{1k} \quad k = 1, 2, \ldots, V_1$$

$$s_k = f_{2,(k-V_1)} \quad k = V_1+1, V_1+2, \ldots, V_1+V_2$$

$$s_k = f_{3,(k-(V_1+V_2))} \quad k = (V_1+V_2)+1, (V_1+V_2)+2, \ldots, (V_1+V_2)+V_3$$

$\ldots$

$s_k = f_{I,(k-(V_1+V_2+\ldots+V_{I-1}))}$ $k = (V_1+V_2+\ldots+V_{I-1})+1, (V_1+V_2+\ldots+V_{I-1})+2, \ldots, (V_1+V_2+\ldots+V_{I-1})+V_I$

4.2.9 Insertion of discontinuous transmission (DTX) indication bits

In the downlink, DTX is used to fill up the radio frame with bits. The insertion point of DTX indication bits depends on whether fixed or flexible positions of the TrCHs in the radio frame are used. It is up to the UTRAN to decide for each CCTrCH whether fixed or flexible positions are used during the connection. DTX indication bits only indicate when the transmission should be turned off, they are not transmitted.

4.2.9.1 1st insertion of DTX indication bits

This step of inserting DTX indication bits is used only if the positions of the TrCHs in the radio frame are fixed. With fixed position scheme a fixed number of bits is reserved for each TrCH in the radio frame.

The bits from rate matching are denoted by $g_{i1}, g_{i2}, g_{i3}, \ldots, g_{iG_i}$, where G_i is the number of bits in one TTI of TrCH i. Denote the number of bits in one radio frame of TrCH i by H_i. Denote D_i the number of bits output of the first DTX insertion block.

In TTIs containing no compressed frames or frames compressed by spreading factor reduction, H_i is constant and corresponds to the maximum number of bits from TrCH i in one radio frame for any transport format of TrCH i and $D_i = F_i \times H_i$.

In TTIs containing frames compressed by puncturing, additional puncturing is performed in the rate matching block. The empty positions resulting from the additional puncturing are used to insert p-bits in the first interleaving block, the DTX insertion is therefore limited to allow for later insertion of p-bits. Thus DTX bits are inserted until the total number of bits is Di where $D_i = F_i \times H_i - Np^{TTI,m}_{i,max}$, and $H_i = N_{i,*} + \Delta N_{i,*}$.

The bits output from the DTX insertion are denoted by $h_{i1}, h_{i2}, h_{i3}, \ldots, h_{iDi}$ Note that these bits are three valued. They are defined by the following relations:

$$h_{ik} = g_{ik} \quad k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, G_i$$

$$h_{ik} = \delta \quad k = G_i+1, G_i+2, G_i+3, \ldots, D_i$$

where DTX indication bits are denoted by δ. Here $g_{ik} \in \{0, 1\}$ and $\delta \notin \{0, 1\}$.

4.2.9.2 2nd insertion of DTX indication bits

The DTX indication bits inserted in this step shall be placed at the end of the radio frame. Note that the DTX will be distributed over all slots after 2nd interleaving.

The bits input to the DTX insertion block are denoted by $s_1, s_2, s_3, \ldots, s_S$,where S is the number of bits from TrCH multiplexing. The number of PhCHs is denoted by P and the number of bits in one radio frame, including DTX indication bits, for each PhCH by R..

In non-compressed frames, $R = \frac{N_{data,*}}{P} = 15 \times (N_{data1} + N_{data2})$, where N_{data1} and N_{data2} are defined in [2].

For compressed frames, $N'_{data,*}$ is defined as $N'_{data,*} = P \times 15 \times (N'_{data1} + N'_{data2})$. N'_{data1} and N'_{data2} are the number of bits in the data fields of the slot format used for the current compressed frame, i.e. slot format A or B as defined in [2] corresponding to the spreading factor and the number of transmitted slots in use.

In frames compressed by puncturing and when fixed positions are used, no DTX shall be inserted, since the exact room for the gap is already reserved thanks to the earlier insertion of the p-bits.

In frames compressed by higher layer scheduling, additional DTX with respect to normal mode shall be inserted if the transmission time reduction does not exactly create a transmission gap of the desired *TGL*.

The number of bits available to the CCTrCH in one radio frame compressed by spreading factor reduction or by higher layer scheduling is denoted by $N_{data,*}^{cm}$ and $R = \frac{N_{data,*}^{cm}}{P}$.

For frames compressed by spreading factor reduction $N_{data,*}^{cm} = \frac{N'_{data,*}}{2}$.

For frames compressed by higher layer scheduling the exact value of $N_{data,*}^{cm}$ is dependent on the *TGL* which is signalled from higher layers. It can be calculated as $N_{data,*}^{cm} = N'_{data,*} - N_{TGL}$.

N_{TGL} is the number of bits that are located within the transmission gap and defined as:

$$N_{TGL} = \begin{cases} \frac{TGL}{15} \times N'_{data,*} & \text{, if } N_{first} + TGL \le 15 \\ \frac{15 - N_{first}}{15} \times N'_{data,*} & \text{, in first frame if } N_{first} + TGL > 15 \\ \frac{TGL - (15 - N_{first})}{15} \times N'_{data,*} & \text{, in second frame if } N_{first} + TGL > 15 \end{cases}$$

N_{first} and *TGL* are defined in subclause 4.4.

The bits output from the DTX insertion block are denoted by $w_1, w_2, w_3, \ldots, w_{(PR)}$. Note that these bits are four valued in case of compressed mode by puncturing, and three valued otherwise. They are defined by the following relations:

$w_k = s_k$ k = 1, 2, 3, …, S

$w_k = \delta$ k = S+1, S+2, S+3, …, $P \cdot R$

where DTX indication bits are denoted by δ. Here $s_k \in \{0,1, p\}$ and $\delta \notin \{0,1\}$.

4.2.10 Physical channel segmentation

When more than one PhCH is used, physical channel segmentation divides the bits among the different PhCHs. The bits input to the physical channel segmentation are denoted by $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots, x_X$, where *X* is the number of bits input to the physical channel segmentation block. The number of PhCHs is denoted by *P*.

The bits after physical channel segmentation are denoted $u_{p,1}, u_{p,2}, u_{p,3}, \ldots, u_{p,U}$, where *p* is PhCH number and *U* is the number of bits in one radio frame for each PhCH, i.e. $U = (X - N_{TGL} - (N_{data,*} - N'_{data,*}))/P$ for compressed mode by puncturing, and $U = \frac{X}{P}$ otherwise. The relation between x_k and $u_{p,k}$ is given below.

For all modes, some bits of the input flow are mapped to each code until the number of bits on the code is *U*. For modes other than compressed mode by puncturing, all bits of the input flow are taken to be mapped to the codes. For compressed mode by puncturing, only the bits of the input flow not corresponding to bits p are taken to be mapped to the codes, each bit p is removed to ensure creation the gap required by the compressed mode, as described below.

Bits on first PhCH after physical channel segmentation:

$u_{1,k} = x_{f(k)}$ $k = 1, 2, \ldots, U$

Bits on second PhCH after physical channel segmentation:

$u_{2,k} = x_{f(k+U)}$ $k = 1, 2, \ldots, U$

…

Bits on the P^{th} PhCH after physical channel segmentation:

$u_{P,k} = x_{f(k+(P-1)\times U)}$ $k = 1, 2, \ldots, U$

where *f* is such that :

- for modes other than compressed mode by puncturing, $x_{f(k)} = x_k$, i.e. $f(k) = k$, for all *k*.
- for compressed mode by puncturing, bit $u_{1,1}$ corresponds to the bit x_k with smallest index *k* when the bits p are not counted, bit $u_{1,2}$ corresponds to the bit x_k with second smallest index *k* when the bits p are not counted, and so on for bits $u_{1,3}, \ldots u_{1,U}, u_{2,1}, u_{2,2}, \ldots u_{2,U}, \ldots u_{P,1}, u_{P,2}, \ldots u_{P,U}$.

4.2.10.1 Relation between input and output of the physical segmentation block in uplink

The bits input to the physical segmentation are denoted by $s_1, s_2, s_3, \ldots, s_S$. Hence, $x_k = s_k$ and $Y = S$.

4.2.10.2 Relation between input and output of the physical segmentation block in downlink

The bits input to the physical segmentation are denoted by $w_1, w_2, w_3, \ldots, w_{(PU)}$. Hence, $x_k = w_k$ and $Y = PU$.

4.2.11 2nd interleaving

The 2nd interleaving is a block interleaver and consists of bits input to a matrix with padding, the inter-column permutation for the matrix and bits output from the matrix with pruning. The bits input to the block interleaver are denoted by $u_{p,1}, u_{p,2}, u_{p,3}, \ldots, u_{p,U}$, where *p* is PhCH number and *U* is the number of bits in one radio frame for one PhCH. The output bit sequence from the block interleaver is derived as follows:

(1) Assign C2 = 30 to be the number of columns of the matrix. The columns of the matrix are numbered 0, 1, 2, …, C2 - 1 from left to right.

(2) Determine the number of rows of the matrix, R2, by finding minimum integer R2 such that:

$U \leq \text{R2} \times \text{C2}$.

The rows of rectangular matrix are numbered 0, 1, 2, …, R2 - 1 from top to bottom.

(3) Write the input bit sequence $u_{p,1}, u_{p,2}, u_{p,3}, \ldots, u_{p,U}$ into the R2 $\times$ C2 matrix row by row starting with bit $y_{p,1}$ in column 0 of row 0:

$$\begin{bmatrix} y_{p,1} & y_{p,2} & y_{p,3} & \ldots & y_{p,\text{C2}} \\ y_{p,(\text{C2}+1)} & y_{p,(\text{C2}+2)} & y_{p,(\text{C2}+3)} & \ldots & y_{p,(2\times\text{C2})} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ldots & \vdots \\ y_{p,((\text{R2}-1)\times\text{C2}+1)} & y_{p,((\text{R2}-1)\times\text{C2}+2)} & y_{p,((\text{R2}-1)\times\text{C2}+3)} & \ldots & y_{p,(\text{R2}\times\text{C2})} \end{bmatrix}$$

where $y_{p,k} = u_{p,k}$ for $k = 1, 2, \ldots, U$ and if $\text{R2} \times \text{C2} > U$, the dummy bits are padded such that $y_{p,k}$ = 0 or 1 for $k = U + 1, U + 2, \ldots, \text{R2} \times \text{C2}$. These dummy bits are pruned away from the output of the matrix after the inter-column permutation.

(4) Perform the inter-column permutation for the matrix based on the pattern $\langle P2(j) \rangle_{j\in\{0,1,\ldots,C2-1\}}$ that is shown in table 7, where P2(*j*) is the original column position of the *j*-th permuted column. After permutation of the columns, the bits are denoted by $y'_{p,k}$.

$$\begin{bmatrix} y'_{p,1} & y'_{p,(R2+1)} & y'_{p,(2\times R2+1)} & \ldots & y'_{p,((C2-1)\times R2+1)} \\ y'_{p,2} & y'_{p,(R2+2)} & y'_{p,(2\times R2+2)} & \ldots & y'_{p,((C2-1)\times R2+2)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ldots & \vdots \\ y'_{p,R2} & y'_{p,(2\times R2)} & y'_{p,(3\times R2)} & \ldots & y'_{p,(C2\times R2)} \end{bmatrix}$$

(5) The output of the block interleaver is the bit sequence read out column by column from the inter-column permuted R2 × C2 matrix. The output is pruned by deleting dummy bits that were padded to the input of the matrix before the inter-column permutation, i.e. bits $y'_{p,k}$ that corresponds to bits $y_{p,k}$ with $k>U$ are removed from the output. The bits after 2nd interleaving are denoted by $v_{p,1}, v_{p,2}, \ldots, v_{p,U}$, where $v_{p,1}$ corresponds to the bit $y'_{p,k}$ with smallest index *k* after pruning, $v_{p,2}$ to the bit $y'_{p,k}$ with second smallest index *k* after pruning, and so on.

Table 7 Inter-column permutation pattern for 2nd interleaving

Number of columns C2	Inter-column permutation pattern < P2(0), P2(1), …, P2(C2-1) >
30	<0, 20, 10, 5, 15, 25, 3, 13, 23, 8, 18, 28, 1, 11, 21, 6, 16, 26, 4, 14, 24, 19, 9, 29, 12, 2, 7, 22, 27, 17>

4.2.12 Physical channel mapping

The PhCH for both uplink and downlink is defined in [2]. The bits input to the physical channel mapping are denoted by $v_{p,1}, v_{p,2}, \ldots, v_{p,U}$, where *p* is the PhCH number and *U* is the number of bits in one radio frame for one PhCH. The bits $v_{p,k}$ are mapped to the PhCHs so that the bits for each PhCH are transmitted over the air in ascending order with respect to *k*.

In compressed mode, no bits are mapped to certain slots of the PhCH(s). If $N_{first} + TGL \le 15$, no bits are mapped to slots N_{first} to N_{last}. If $N_{first} + TGL > 15$, i.e. the transmission gap spans two consecutive radio frames, the mapping is as follows:

- In the first radio frame, no bits are mapped to slots N_{first}, $N_{first}+1$, $N_{first}+2$, …, 14.
- In the second radio frame, no bits are mapped to the slots 0, 1, 2, …, N_{last}.

TGL, N_{first}, and N_{last} are defined in subclause 4.4.

4.2.12.1 Uplink

In uplink, the PhCHs used during a radio frame are either completely filled with bits that are transmitted over the air or not used at all. The only exception is when the UE is in compressed mode. The transmission can then be turned off during consecutive slots of the radio frame.

4.2.12.2 Downlink

In downlink, the PhCHs do not need to be completely filled with bits that are transmitted over the air. Values $v_{p,k} \notin \{0, 1\}$ correspond to DTX indicators, which are mapped to the DPCCH/DPDCH fields but are not transmitted over the air.

During compressed mode by reducing the spreading factor by 2, the data bits are always mapped into 7.5 slots within a compressed frame. No bits are mapped to the DPDCH field as follows:

If $N_{first} + TGL \leq 15$, i.e. the transmission gap spans one radio frame,

if $N_{first} + 7 \leq 14$

no bits are mapped to slots $N_{first}, N_{first} + 1$, $N_{first} + 2, \ldots, N_{first} + 6$

no bits are mapped to the first $(N_{Data1} + N_{Data2})/2$ bit positions of slot $N_{first}+7$

else

no bits are mapped to slots N_{first}, $N_{first} + 1$, $N_{first} + 2, \ldots, 14$

no bits are mapped to slots $N_{first} - 1$, $N_{first} - 2$, $N_{first} - 3$, …, 8

no bits are mapped to the last $(N_{Data1} + N_{Data2})/2$ bit positions of slot 7

end if

If $N_{first} + TGL > 15$, i.e. the transmission gap spans two consecutive radio frames,

In the first radio frame, no bits are mapped to last $(N_{Data1} + N_{Data2})/2$ bit positions in slot 7 as well as to slots 8, 9, 10, ..., 14.

In the second radio frame, no bits are mapped to slots 0, 1, 2, ..., 6 as well as to first $(N_{Data1} + N_{Data2})/2$ bit positions in slot 7.

N_{Data1} and N_{Data2} are defined in [2].

4.2.13 Restrictions on different types of CCTrCHs

Restrictions on the different types of CCTrCHs are described in general terms in TS 25.302[11]. In this subclause those restrictions are given with layer 1 notation.

4.2.13.1 Uplink Dedicated channel (DCH)

The maximum value of the number of TrCHs I in a CCTrCH, the maximum value of the number of transport blocks M_i on each transport channel, and the maximum value of the number of DPDCHs P are given from the UE capability class.

4.2.13.2 Random Access Channel (RACH)

- There can only be one TrCH in each RACH CCTrCH, i.e. I=1, $s_k = f_{1k}$ and $S = V_1$.
- The maximum value of the number of transport blocks M_1 on the transport channel is given from the UE capability class.
- The transmission time interval is either 10 ms or 20 ms.
- Only one PRACH is used, i.e. P=1, $u_{1k} = s_k$, and $U = S$.
- The Static rate matching parameter RM_1 is not provided by higher layer signalling on the System information as the other transport channel parameters. Any value may be used as there is one transport channel in the CCTrCH, hence one transport channel per Transport Format Combination and no need to do any balancing between multiple transport channels.

4.2.13.3 Common Packet Channel (CPCH)

- There can only be one TrCH in each CPCH CCTrCH, i.e. I=1, $s_k = f_{1k}$ and $S = V_1$.
- The maximum value of the number of transport blocks M_1 on the transport channel is given from the UE capability class.
- Only one PCPCH is used, i.e. P=1, $u_{1k} = s_k$, and $U = S$.

4.2.13.4 Downlink Dedicated Channel (DCH)

The maximum value of the number of TrCHs I in a CCTrCH, the maximum value of the number of transport blocks M_i on each transport channel, and the maximum value of the number of DPDCHs P are given from the UE capability class.

4.2.13.5 Downlink Shared Channel (DSCH) associated with a DCH

- The spreading factor is indicated with the TFCI of the associated DPCH.
- The maximum value of the number of TrCHs I in a CCTrCH, the maximum value of the number of transport blocks M_I on the transport channel and the maximum value of the number of PDSCHs P are given from the UE capability class.

4.2.13.6 Broadcast channel (BCH)

- There can only be one TrCH in the BCH CCTrCH, i.e. I=1, $s_k = f_{1k}$, and $S = V_1$.
- There can only be one transport block in each transmission time interval, i.e. $M_1 = 1$.
- All transport format attributes have predefined values which are provided in [11] apart from the rate matching RM_1.
- The Static rate matching parameter RM_1 is not provided by higher layer signalling neither fixed. Any value may be used as there is one transport channel in the CCTrCH, hence one transport channel per Transport Format Combination and no need to do any balancing between multiple transport channels.
- Only one primary CCPCH is used, i.e. P=1.

4.2.13.7 Forward access and paging channels (FACH and PCH)

- The maximum value of the number of TrCHs I in a CCTrCH and the maximum value of the number of transport blocks M_i on each transport channel are given from the UE capability class.
- The transmission time interval for TrCHs of PCH type is always 10 ms.
- Only one secondary CCPCH is used per CCTrCH, i.e. P=1.

4.2.13.8 High Speed Downlink Shared Channel (HS-DSCH) associated with a DCH

- There can be only one TrCH in the HS-DSCH CCTrCH, i.e. I = 1,
- There can only be one transport block in each transmission time interval, i.e. M_1 = 1.
- The transmission time interval for TrCHs of HS-DSCH type is always 2 ms.
- The maximum value of the number of HS-PDSCHs P are given from the UE capability class.

4.2.13.9 Enhanced Dedicated Channel (E-DCH)

- There can be only one TrCH in the E-DCH CCTrCH, i.e. I = 1.
- There can only be one transport block in each transmission time interval, i.e. M_1 = 1.
- The transmission time interval for TrCHs of E-DCH type is 2 ms or 10 ms.
- The maximum value of the number of E-DPDCHs P are given from the UE capabilities.

4.2.14 Multiplexing of different transport channels into one CCTrCH, and mapping of one CCTrCH onto physical channels

The following rules shall apply to the different transport channels which are part of the same CCTrCH:

1) Transport channels multiplexed into one CCTrCh shall have co-ordinated timings. When the TFCS of a CCTrCH is changed because one or more transport channels are added to the CCTrCH or reconfigured within the CCTrCH, or removed from the CCTrCH, the change may only be made at the start of a radio frame with CFN fulfilling the relation

   CFN mod F_{max} = 0,

   where F_{max} denotes the maximum number of radio frames within the transmission time intervals of all transport channels which are multiplexed into the same CCTrCH, including any transport channels *i* which are added, reconfigured or have been removed, and CFN denotes the connection frame number of the first radio frame of the changed CCTrCH.

   After addition or reconfiguration of a transport channel *i* within a CCTrCH, the TTI of transport channel *i* may only start in radio frames with CFN fulfilling the relation:

   CFN mod F_i = 0.

   For a CCTrCH of DSCH type, a modification of number of bits $N_{data,*}$ allocated on a radio frame is allowed if the CFN verifies CFN mod F_{max} = 0, where F_{max} denotes the maximum number of radio frames within the transmission time intervals of all the transport channels with a non zero transport block transport format multiplexed into the CCTrCH in the previous radio frame.

2) Only transport channels with the same active set can be mapped onto the same CCTrCH.

3) Different CCTrCHs cannot be mapped onto the same PhCH.

4) One CCTrCH shall be mapped onto one or several PhCHs. These physical channels shall all have the same SF.

5) Dedicated Transport channels and common transport channels cannot be multiplexed into the same CCTrCH.

6) For the common transport channels, only the FACH and PCH may belong to the same CCTrCH.

There are hence two types of CCTrCH:

1) CCTrCH of dedicated type, corresponding to the result of coding and multiplexing of one or several DCHs or one E-DCH.

2) CCTrCH of common type, corresponding to the result of the coding and multiplexing of a common channel, RACH in the uplink, DSCH, HS-DSCH, BCH, or FACH/PCH for the downlink.

4.2.14.1 Allowed CCTrCH combinations for one UE

4.2.14.1.1 Allowed CCTrCH combinations on the uplink

~~A maximum of one CCTrCH is allowed for one UE on the uplink. It can be either:~~The following CCTrCH combinations for one UE are allowed:

1) either one CCTrCH of dedicated type~~;~~ or

1a) two CCTrCHs of dedicated type, one being of DCH type and the other one of E-DCH type or

2) one CCTrCH of common type.

4.2.14.1.2 Allowed CCTrCH combinations on the downlink

The following CCTrCH combinations for one UE are allowed:

- x CCTrCH of dedicated type + y CCTrCH of common type. The allowed combination of CCTrCHs of dedicated and common type are given from UE radio access capabilities. There can be a maximum of one CCTrCH of common type for DSCH or HS-DSCH and a maximum of one CCTrCH of common type for FACH. With one CCTrCH of common type for DSCHor HS-DSCH, there shall be only one CCTrCH of dedicated type.

NOTE 1: There is only one DPCCH in the uplink, hence one TPC bits flow on the uplink to control possibly the different DPDCHs on the downlink, part of the same or several CCTrCHs.

NOTE 2: There is only one DPCCH in the downlink, even with multiple CCTrCHs. With multiple CCTrCHs, the DPCCH is transmitted on one of the physical channels of that CCTrCH which has the smallest SF among the multiple CCTrCHs. Thus there is only one TPC command flow and only one TFCI word in downlink even with multiple CCTrCHs.

NOTE 3: in the current release, only 1 CCTrCH of dedicated type is supported.

4.3 Transport format detection

If the transport format set of a TrCH *i* contains more than one transport format, the transport format can be detected according to one of the following methods:

- TFCI based detection: This method is applicable when the transport format combination is signalled using the TFCI field;
- explicit blind detection: This method typically consists of detecting the TF of TrCH *i* by use of channel decoding and CRC check;
- guided detection: This method is applicable when there is at least one other TrCH *i'*, hereafter called guiding TrCH, such that:
  - the guiding TrCH has the same TTI duration as the TrCH under consideration, i.e. $F_{i'} = F_i$;
  - different TFs of the TrCH under consideration correspond to different TFs of the guiding TrCH;
  - explicit blind detection is used on the guiding TrCH.

If the transport format set for a TrCH *i* does not contain more than one transport format with more than zero transport blocks, no explicit blind transport format detection needs to be performed for this TrCH. The UE can use guided detection for this TrCH or single transport format detection, where the UE always assumes the transport format corresponding to more than zero transport blocks for decoding.

For uplink, blind transport format detection is a network controlled option. For downlink, the UE shall be capable of performing blind transport format detection, if certain restrictions on the configured transport channels are fulfilled.

For a DPCH associated with a PDSCH, the DPCCH shall include TFCI.

4.3.1 Blind transport format detection

When no TFCI is available then explicit blind detection or guided detection shall be performed on all TrCHs within the CCTrCH that have more than one transport format and that do not use single transport format detection. The UE shall only be required to support blind transport format detection if all of the following restrictions are fulfilled:

1. either only one CCTrCH is received, or one CCTrCH of dedicated type and one CCTrCH of common type for HS-DSCH are received by the UE;

   If only one CCTrCH is received by the UE, the following conditions apply to that CCTrCH and those TrCHs that are multiplexed on the CCTrCH. If one CCTrCH of dedicated type and one CCTrCH of common type for HS-DSCH are received by the UE, the following conditions apply to the dedicated type CCTrCH and the TrCHs that are multiplexed on the dedicated type CCTrCH.

2. the number of CCTrCH bits received per radio frame is 600 or less;
3. the number of transport format combinations of the CCTrCH is 64 or less;
4. fixed positions of the transport channels is used on the CCTrCH to be detectable;
5. convolutional coding is used on all explicitly detectable TrCHs;
6. CRC with non-zero length is appended to all transport blocks on all explicitly detectable TrCHs;
7. at least one transport block shall be transmitted per TTI on each explicitly detectable TrCH;
8. the number of explicitly detectable TrCHs is 3 or less;

9. for all explicitly detectable TrCHs *i*, the number of code blocks in one TTI (C_i) shall not exceed 1;

10. the sum of the transport format set sizes of all explicitly detectable TrCHs, is 16 or less. The transport format set size is defined as the number of transport formats within the transport format set;

11. there is at least one TrCH that can be used as the guiding transport channel for all transport channels using guided detection.

Examples of blind transport format detection methods are given in annex A.

4.3.1a Single transport format detection

When no TFCI is available, then single transport format detection shall be applied on all TrCHs within the CCTrCH that have a transport format set not containing more than one transport format with more than zero transport blocks and that do not use guided detection. The UE shall only be required to support single transport format detection if the following restrictions are fulfilled:

1. For each transport channel that is single transport format detected, CRC with non-zero length is appended to all transport blocks within the non-zero transport block transport format;

2. fixed positions of the transport channels is used on the CCTrCH to be detectable.

4.3.2 Transport format detection based on TFCI

If a TFCI is available, then TFCI based detection shall be applicable to all TrCHs within the CCTrCH. The TFCI informs the receiver about the transport format combination of the CCTrCHs. As soon as the TFCI is detected, the transport format combination, and hence the transport formats of the individual transport channels are known.

4.3.3 Coding of Transport-Format-Combination Indicator (TFCI)

The TFCI is encoded using a (32, 10) sub-code of the second order Reed-Muller code. The coding procedure is as shown in figure 9.

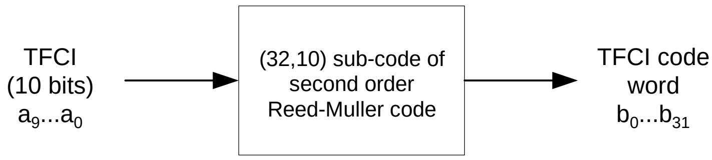


Figure 9: Channel coding of TFCI information bits

If the TFCI consist of less than 10 bits, it is padded with zeros to 10 bits, by setting the most significant bits to zero. The length of the TFCI code word is 32 bits.

The code words of the (32,10) sub-code of second order Reed-Muller code are linear combination of 10 basis sequences. The basis sequences are as in the following table 8.

Table 8: Basis sequences for (32,10) TFCI code

i	$M_{i,0}$	$M_{i,1}$	$M_{i,2}$	$M_{i,3}$	$M_{i,4}$	$M_{i,5}$	$M_{i,6}$	$M_{i,7}$	$M_{i,8}$	$M_{i,9}$
0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
2	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1
3	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	1
4	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1
5	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
6	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0
7	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	0
8	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	0
9	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	1
10	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1
11	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	0
12	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
13	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1
14	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1
15	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0
16	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1
17	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0
18	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1
19	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1
20	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	1
21	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1
22	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0
23	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1
24	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	0
25	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1
26	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	0
27	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0
28	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0
29	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
30	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
31	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0

The TFCI information bits a_0 , a_1 , a_2 , a_3 , a_4 , a_5 , a_6 , a_7 , a_8 , a_9 (where a_0 is LSB and a_9 is MSB) shall correspond to the TFC index (expressed in unsigned binary form) defined by the RRC layer to reference the TFC of the CCTrCH in the associated DPCH radio frame.

The output code word bits b_i are given by:

$$b_i = \sum_{n=0}^{9} (a_n \times M_{i,n}) \bmod 2$$

where i = 0, …, 31.

The output bits are denoted by b_k, k = 0, 1, 2, …, 31.

In downlink, when the SF < 128 the encoded TFCI code words are repeated yielding 8 encoded TFCI bits per slot in normal mode and 16 encoded TFCI bits per slot in compressed mode. Mapping of repeated bits to slots is explained in subclause 4.3.5.

4.3.4 Operation of TFCI in Hard Split Mode

If one of the DCH is associated with a DSCH, the TFCI code word may be split in such a way that the code word relevant for TFCI activity indication is not transmitted from every cell. The use of such a functionality shall be indicated by higher layer signalling.

The TFCI is encoded by using punctured code of (32,10) sub-code of second order Reed-Muller code. The coding procedure is as shown in figure 10.

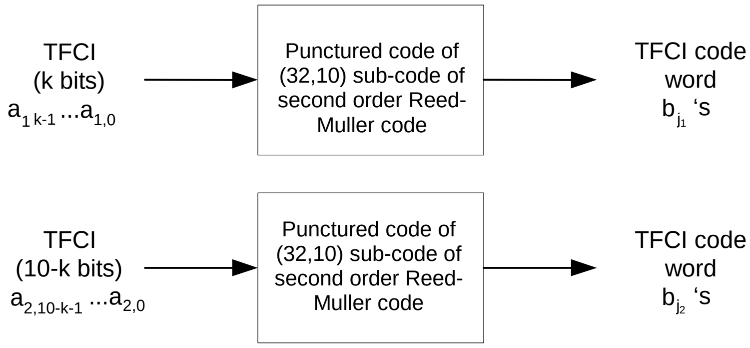


Figure 10: Channel coding of flexible hard split mode TFCI information bits

The code words of the punctured code of (32,10) sub-code of second order Reed-Muller code are linear combinations of basis sequences generated by puncturing 10 basis sequences defined in table 8 in section 4.3.3.

The first set of TFCI information bits ($a_{1,0}$, $a_{1,1}$, $a_{1,2}$, $a_{1,3}$, …, $a_{1,k-1}$ where $a_{1,0}$ is LSB and $a_{1,k-1}$ is MSB) shall correspond to the TFC index (expressed in unsigned binary form) defined by the RRC layer to reference the TFC of the DCH CCTrCH in the associated DPCH radio frame.

The second set of TFCI information bits ($a_{2,0}$, $a_{2,1}$, $a_{2,2}$, $a_{2,3}$, .., $a_{2,10-k-1}$ where $a_{2,0}$ is LSB and $a_{2,10-k-1}$ is MSB) shall correspond to the TFC index (expressed in unsigned binary form) defined by the RRC layer to reference the TFC of the associated DSCH CCTrCH in the corresponding PDSCH radio frame.

The output code word bits are given by :

$$b_{j_1} = \sum_{n=0}^{k-1} (a_{1,n} \times M_{\pi_1(k,i_1),\pi_2(k,n)}) \bmod 2 \,; \qquad b_{j_2} = \sum_{n=0}^{10-k-1} (a_{2,n} \times M_{\pi_1(10-k,i_2),\pi_2(10-k,n)}) \bmod 2$$

where i_1 = 0, …, 3×k and i_2 = 0, …, 30-3×k.

Then, the relation between j_1 (or j_2) and i_1 (or i_2) is as follows:

$$j_1 = \left\lfloor \frac{32}{3\times k+1} \times (i_1 + 1 - \frac{1}{2}\left\lfloor \frac{k}{5} \right\rfloor) + \frac{1}{2} \right\rfloor - 1 \,; \quad j_2 = \left\lfloor \frac{32}{32-(3\times k+1)} \times (i_2 + \frac{1}{2}\left(1 + \left\lfloor \frac{k}{5} \right\rfloor\right)) + \frac{1}{2} \right\rfloor - 1 \,.$$

The functions π_1, π_2 are defined as shown in the following table 9.

Table 9. π_1, π_2 functions

m	$\pi_1(m,i)$ **for i = 0, …, 3×m**	$\pi_2(m,n)$ **for n = 0,…, m-1**
3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 11	0, 1, 2
4	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15	0, 1, 2, 3
5	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 30	0, 1, 2, 3, 5
6	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 12, 15, 18, 21, 23, 25, 27, 28, 29, 30	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
7	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 20, 21, 22, 24, 25, 28, 29	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7

4.3.5 Mapping of TFCI words

4.3.5.1 Mapping of TFCI word in normal mode

The bits of the code word are directly mapped to the slots of the radio frame. Within a slot the bit with lower index is transmitted before the bit with higher index. The coded bits b_k, are mapped to the transmitted TFCI bits d_k, according to the following formula:

$$d_k = b_{k \bmod 32}$$

For uplink physical channels regardless of the SF and downlink physical channels, if SF≥128, k = 0, 1, 2, …, 29. Note that this means that bits b_{30} and b_{31} are not transmitted.

For downlink physical channels whose SF < 128, k = 0, 1, 2, …, 119. Note that this means that bits b_0 to b_{23} are transmitted four times and bits b_{24} to b_{31} are transmitted three times.

4.3.5.2 Mapping of TFCI word in compressed mode

The mapping of the TFCI bits in compressed mode is different for uplink, downlink with SF ≥ 128 and downlink with SF < 128.

4.3.5.2.1 Uplink compressed mode

For uplink compressed mode, the slot format is changed so that no TFCI coded bits are lost. The different slot formats in compressed mode do not match the exact number of TFCI coded bits for all possible TGLs. Repetition of the TFCI bits is therefore used.

Denote the number of bits available in the TFCI fields of one compressed radio frame by D and the number of bits in the TFCI field in a slot by N_{TFCI}. The parameter E is used to determine the number of the first TFCI bit to be repeated.

$E = N_{first} N_{TFCI}$, if the start of the transmission gap is allocated to the current frame.
$E = 0$, if the start of the transmission gap is allocated to the previous frame and the end of the transmission gap is allocated to the current frame.

The TFCI coded bits b_k are mapped to the bits in the TFCI fields d_k. The following relations define the mapping for each compressed frame.

$$d_k = b_k$$

where k = 0, 1, 2, …, min (31, D-1).

If D > 32, the remaining positions are filled by repetition (in reversed order):

$$d_{D-k-1} = b_{(E+k) \bmod 32}$$

where k = 0, …, D-33.

4.3.5.2.2 Downlink compressed mode

For downlink compressed mode, the slot format is changed so that no TFCI coded bits are lost. The different slot formats in compressed mode do not match the exact number of TFCI bits for all possible TGLs. DTX is therefore used if the number of bits available in the TFCI fields in one compressed frame exceeds the number of TFCI bits given from the slot format. The block of bits in the TFCI fields where DTX is used starts on the first TFCI field after the transmission gap. If there are more bits available in the TFCI fields before the transmission gap than TFCI bits, DTX is also used on the bits in the last TFCI fields before the transmission gap.

Denote the number of bits available in the TFCI fields of one compressed radio frame by D and the number of bits in the TFCI field in a slot by N_{TFCI}. The parameter E is used to determine the position of the first bit in the TFCI field on which DTX is used.

$E = N_{first} N_{TFCI}$, if the start of the transmission gap is allocated to the current frame.
E = 0, if the start of the transmission gap is allocated to the previous frame and the end of the transmission gap is allocated to the current frame.

Denote the total number of TFCI bits to be transmitted by F. F = 32 for slot formats nA or nB, where n = 0, 1, …, 11 (see table 11 in [2]). Otherwise, F = 128. The TFCI coded bits b_k are mapped to the bits in the TFCI fields d_k. The following relations define the mapping for each compressed frame.

If $E > 0$,

$$d_k = b_{k \bmod 32}$$

where $k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \min(E, F)-1$.

If $E < F$,

$$d_{k+D-F} = b_{k \bmod 32}$$

where $k = E, \ldots, F-1$.

DTX is used on d_k where $k = \min(E, F), \ldots, \min(E, F) + D - F - 1$.

4.4 Compressed mode

In compressed frames, TGL slots from N_{first} to N_{last} are not used for transmission of data. As illustrated in figure 11, the instantaneous transmit power is increased in the compressed frame in order to keep the quality (BER, FER, etc.) unaffected by the reduced processing gain. The amount of power increase depends on the transmission time reduction method (see subclause 4.4.3). What frames are compressed, are decided by the network. When in compressed mode, compressed frames can occur periodically, as illustrated in figure 11, or requested on demand. The rate and type of compressed frames is variable and depends on the environment and the measurement requirements.

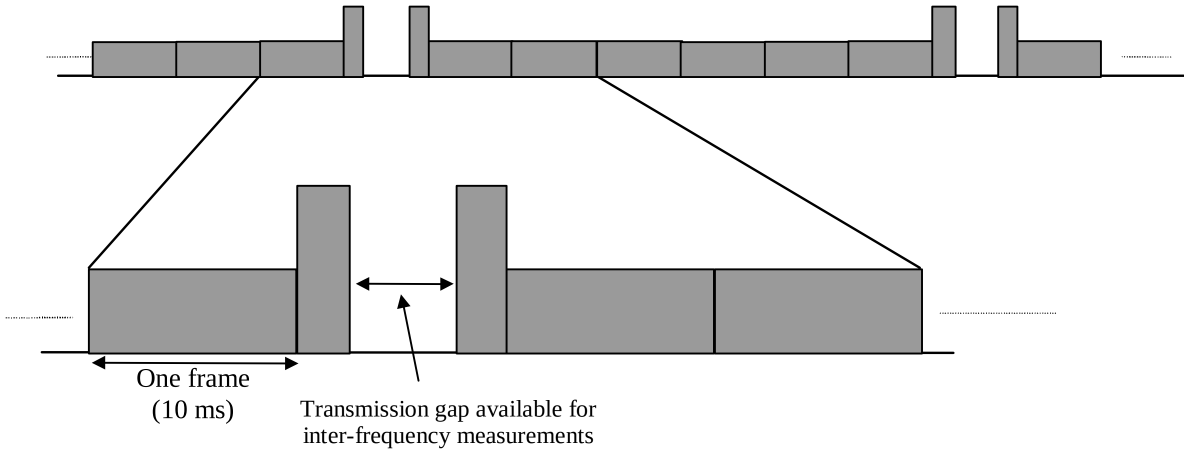


Figure 11: Compressed mode transmission

4.4.1 Frame structure in the uplink

The frame structure for uplink compressed frames is illustrated in figure 12.

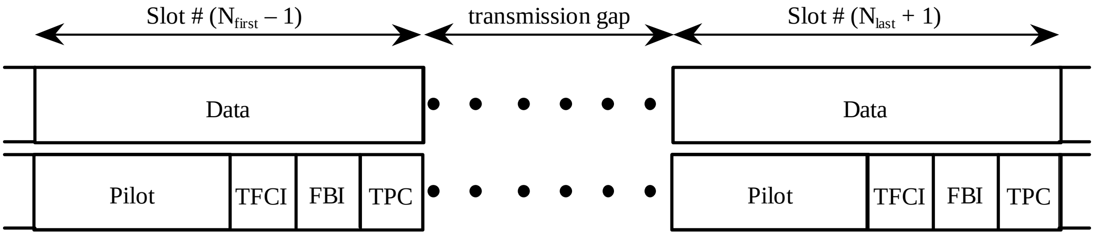


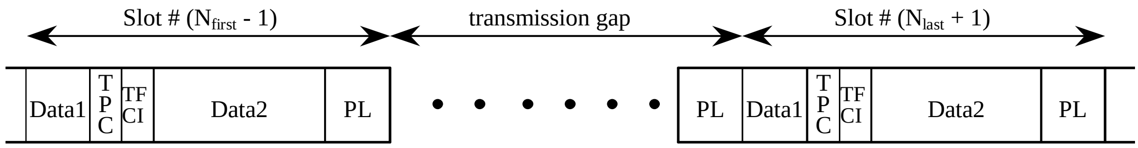
Figure 12: Frame structure in uplink compressed transmission

4.4.2 Frame structure types in the downlink

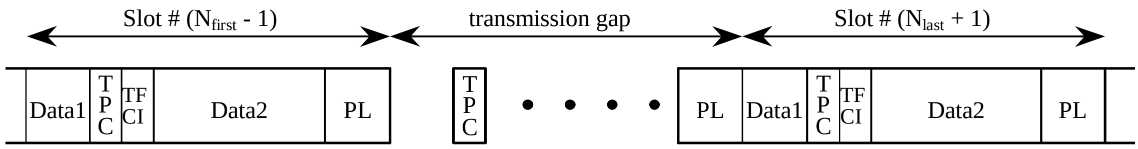
There are two different types of frame structures defined for downlink compressed frames. Type A maximises the transmission gap length and type B is optimised for power control. The frame structure type A or B is set by higher layers independent from the downlink slot format type A or B.

- With frame structure of type A, the pilot field of the last slot in the transmission gap is transmitted. Transmission is turned off during the rest of the transmission gap (figure 13(a)). In case the length of the pilot field is 2 bits and STTD is used on the radio link, the pilot bits in the last slot of the transmission gap shall be STTD encoded assuming DTX indicators as the two last bits in the Data2 field.

- With frame structure of type B, the TPC field of the first slot in the transmission gap and the pilot field of the last slot in the transmission gap is transmitted. Transmission is turned off during the rest of the transmission gap (figure 13(b)). In case the length of the pilot field is 2 bits and STTD is used on the radio link, the pilot bits in the last slot of the transmission gap shall be STTD encoded assuming DTX indicators as the two last bits of the Data2 field. Similarly, the TPC bits in the first slot of the transmission gap shall be STTD encoded assuming DTX indicators as the two last bits in the Data1 field.



(a) Frame structure type A



(b) Frame structure type B

Figure 13: Frame structure types in downlink compressed transmission

4.4.3 Transmission time reduction method

When in compressed mode, the information normally transmitted during a 10 ms frame is compressed in time. The mechanisms provided for achieving this are puncturing, reduction of the spreading factor by a factor of two , and higher layer scheduling. In the downlink, all methods are supported while compressed mode by puncturing is not used in the uplink. The maximum idle length is defined to be 7 slots per one 10 ms frame. The slot formats that are used in compressed frames are listed in [2].

4.4.3.1 Compressed mode by puncturing

Rate matching is applied for creating a transmission gap in one or two frames. The algorithm for rate matching as described in subclause 4.2.7 is used.

4.4.3.2 Compressed mode by reducing the spreading factor by 2

The spreading factor (SF) can be reduced by 2 during one compressed radio frame to enable the transmission of the information bits in the remaining time slots of the compressed frame. This method is not supported for SF=4.

On the downlink, UTRAN can also order the UE to use a different scrambling code in a compressed frame than in a non-compressed frame. If the UE is ordered to use a different scrambling code in a compressed frame, then there is a one-to-one mapping between the scrambling code used in the non-compressed frame and the one used in the compressed frame, as described in [3] subclause 5.2.1.

4.4.3.3 Compressed mode by higher layer scheduling

Compressed frames can be obtained by higher layer scheduling. Higher layers then set restrictions so that only a subset of the allowed TFCs are used in a compressed frame. The maximum number of bits that will be delivered to the physical layer during the compressed radio frame is then known and a transmission gap can be generated. Note that in the downlink, the TFCI field is expanded on the expense of the data fields and this shall be taken into account by higher layers when setting the restrictions on the TFCs. Compressed mode by higher layer scheduling shall not be used with fixed starting positions of the TrCHs in the radio frame.

4.4.4 Transmission gap position

Transmission gaps can be placed at different positions as shown in figures 14 and 15 for each purpose such as interfrequency power measurement, acquisition of control channel of other system/carrier, and actual handover operation.

When using single frame method, the transmission gap is located within the compressed frame depending on the transmission gap length (TGL) as shown in figure 14 (1). When using double frame method, the transmission gap is located on the center of two connected frames as shown in figure 14 (2).

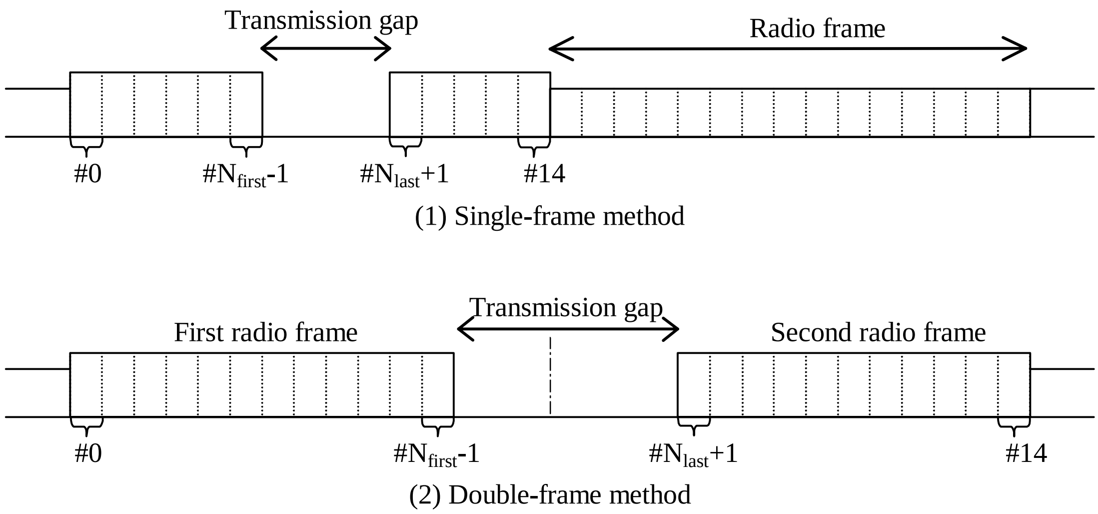


Figure 14: Transmission gap position

Parameters of the transmission gap positions are calculated as follows.

TGL is the number of consecutive idle slots during the compressed mode transmission gap:

TGL = 3, 4, 5, 7, 10, 14

N_{first} specifies the starting slot of the consecutive idle slots,

N_{first} = 0,1,2,3,…,14.

N_{last} shows the number of the final idle slot and is calculated as follows;

If $N_{first} + TGL \leq 15$, then $N_{last} = N_{first} + TGL - 1$ (in the same frame),

If $N_{first} + TGL > 15$, then $N_{last} = (N_{first} + TGL - 1) \bmod 15$ (in the next frame).

When the transmission gap spans two consecutive radio frames, N_{first} and TGL must be chosen so that at least 8 slots in each radio frame are transmitted.

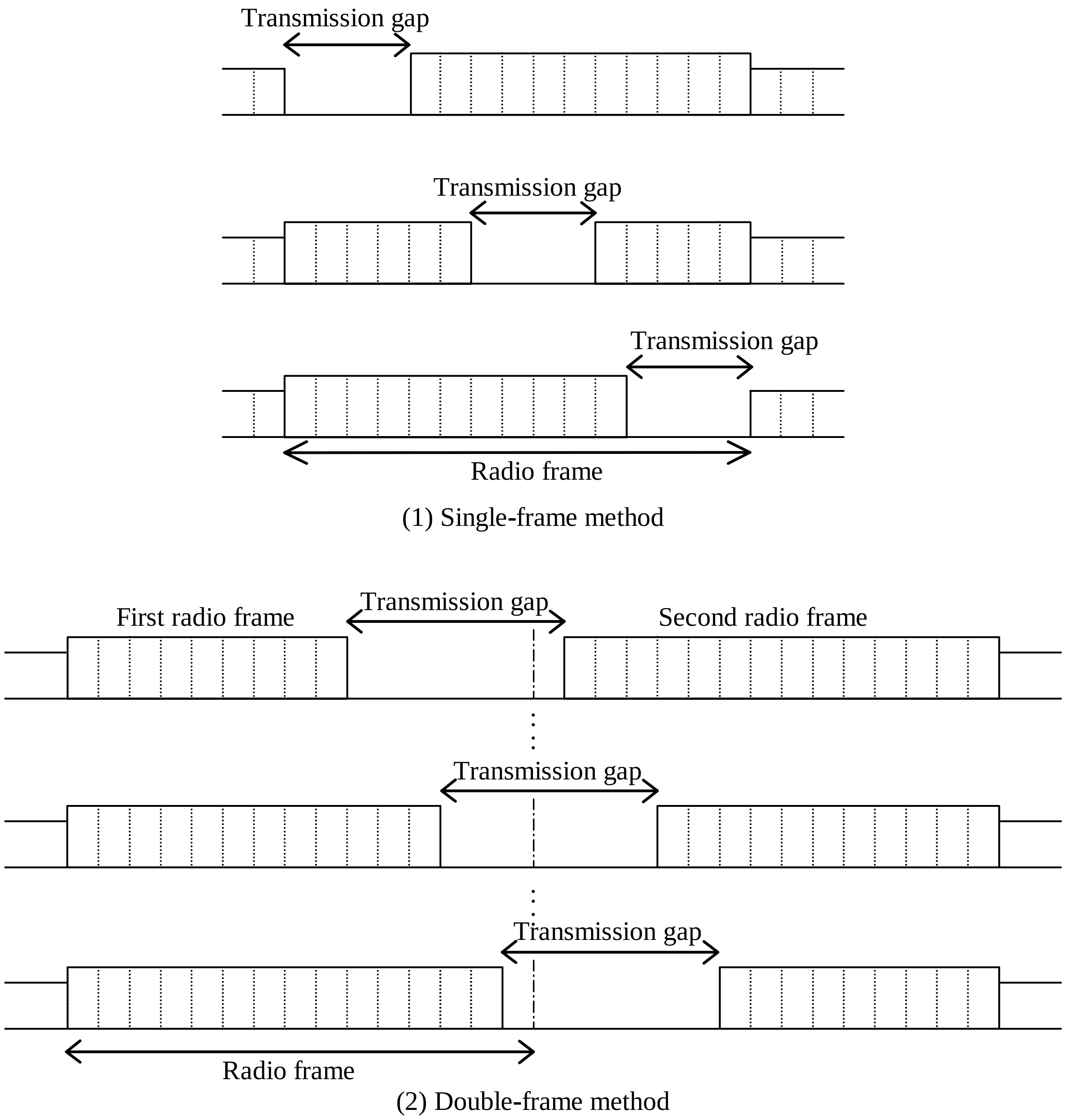


Figure 15: Transmission gap positions with different Nfirst

4.5 Coding for HS-DSCH

Data arrives to the coding unit in form of a maximum of one transport block once every transmission time interval. The transmission time interval is 2 ms which is mapped to a radio sub-frame of 3 slots.

The following coding steps can be identified:

- add CRC to each transport block (see subclause 4.5.1);
- bit scrambling (see subclause 4.5.1a);
- code block segmentation (see subclause 4.5.2);
- channel coding (see subclause 4.5.3);
- hybrid ARQ (see subclause 4.5.4);
- physical channel segmentation (see subclause 4.5.5);
- interleaving for HS-DSCH (see subclause 4.5.6);

- constellation re-arrangement for 16 QAM (see subclause 4.5.7);
- mapping to physical channels (see subclause 4.5.8).

The coding steps for HS-DSCH are shown in the figure below.

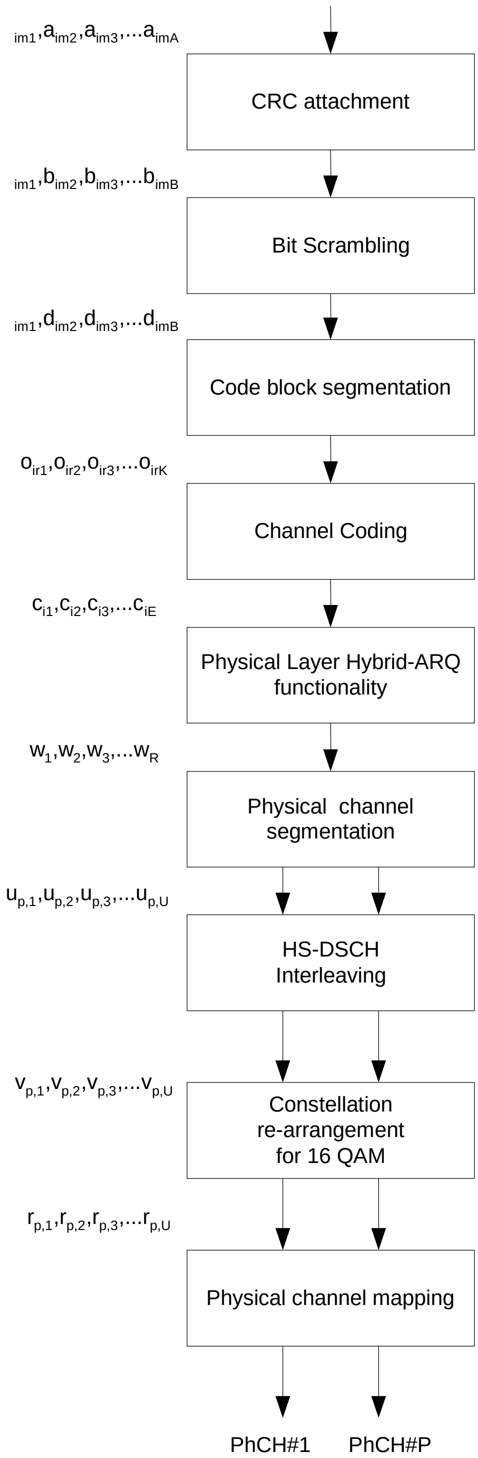


Figure 16: Coding chain for HS-DSCH

In the following the number of transport blocks and the number of transport channels is always one i.e. m=1, i=1. When referencing non HS-DSCH formulae which are used in correspondence with HS-DSCH formulae the convention is used that transport block subscripts may be omitted (e.g. X_1 may be written X).

4.5.1 CRC attachment for HS-DSCH

CRC attachment for the HS-DSCH transport channel shall be done using the general method described in 4.2.1 above with the following specific parameters.

The CRC length shall always be L_1 = 24 bits.

4.5.1a Bit scrambling for HS-DSCH

The bits output from the HS-DSCH CRC attachment are scrambled in the bit scrambler. The bits input to the bit scrambler are denoted by $b_{im,1}, b_{im,2}, b_{im,3}, ..., b_{im,B}$, where B is the number of bits input to the HS-DSCH bit scrambler The bits after bit scrambling are denoted $d_{im,1}, d_{im,2}, d_{im,3}, ..., d_{im,B}$.

Bit scrambling is defined by the following relation:

$$d_{im,k} = \left(b_{im,k} + y_k\right) \bmod 2 \qquad k = 1,2,\ldots,B$$

and y_k results from the following operation:

$$y'_\gamma = 0 \quad -15 < \gamma < 1$$

$$y'_\gamma = 1 \qquad \gamma = 1$$

$$y'_\gamma = \left(\sum_{x=1}^{16} g_x \cdot y'_{\gamma-x}\right) \bmod 2 \quad 1 < \gamma \le B,$$

where $g = \{g_1, g_2, \ldots, g_{16}\} = \{0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,1,0,1,1,0,1\}$,

$$y_k = y'_k \qquad k = 1,2,\ldots,B.$$

4.5.2 Code block segmentation for HS-DSCH

Code block segmentation for the HS-DSCH transport channel shall be done with the general method described in 4.2.2.2 above with the following specific parameters.

There will be a maximum of one transport block, i=1. The bits $d_{im1}, d_{im2}, d_{im3}, \ldots d_{imB}$ input to the block are mapped to the bits $x_{i1}, x_{i2}, x_{i3}, \ldots x_{iXi}$ directly. It follows that X_1 = B. Note that the bits x referenced here refer only to the internals of the code block segmentation function. The output bits from the code block segmentation function are $o_{ir1}, o_{ir2}, o_{ir3}, \ldots o_{irK}$.

The value of Z = 5114 for turbo coding shall be used.

4.5.3 Channel coding for HS-DSCH

Channel coding for the HS-DSCH transport channel shall be done with the general method described in 4.2.3 above with the following specific parameters.

There will be a maximum of one transport block, i=1. The rate 1/3 turbo coding shall be used.

4.5.4 Hybrid ARQ for HS-DSCH

The hybrid ARQ functionality matches the number of bits at the output of the channel coder to the total number of bits of the HS-PDSCH set to which the HS-DSCH is mapped. The hybrid ARQ functionality is controlled by the redundancy version (RV) parameters. The exact set of bits at the output of the hybrid ARQ functionality depends on the number of input bits, the number of output bits, and the RV parameters.

The hybrid ARQ functionality consists of two rate-matching stages and a virtual buffer as shown in the figure below.

The first rate matching stage matches the number of input bits to the virtual IR buffer, information about which is provided by higher layers. Note that, if the number of input bits does not exceed the virtual IR buffering capability, the first rate-matching stage is transparent.

The second rate matching stage matches the number of bits after first rate matching stage to the number of physical channel bits available in the HS-PDSCH set in the TTI.

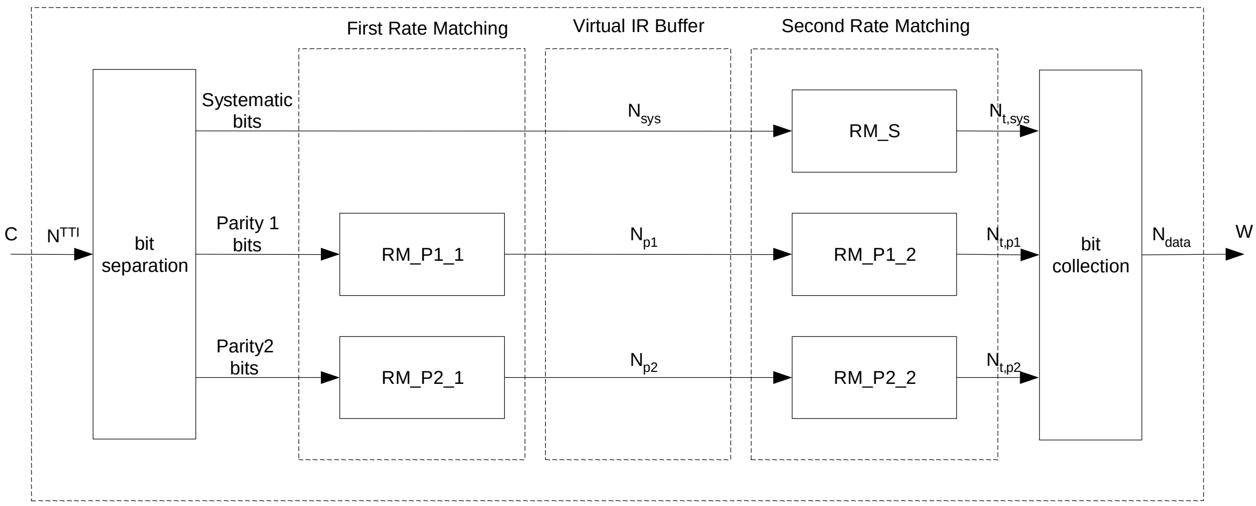


Figure 17: HS-DSCH hybrid ARQ functionality

4.5.4.1 HARQ bit separation

The HARQ bit separation function shall be performed in the same way as bit separation for turbo encoded TrCHs in 4.2.7.4 above.

4.5.4.2 HARQ First Rate Matching Stage

HARQ first stage rate matching for the HS-DSCH transport channel shall be done with the general method described in 4.2.7.2.2.3 above with the following specific parameters.

The maximum number of soft channel bits available in the virtual IR buffer is N_{IR} which is signalled from higher layers for each HARQ process. The number of coded bits in a TTI before rate matching is N^{TTI} this is deduced from information signalled from higher layers and parameters signalled on the HS-SCCH for each TTI. Note that HARQ processing and physical layer storage occurs independently for each HARQ process currently active.

If N_{IR} is greater than or equal to N^{TTI} (i.e. all coded bits of the corresponding TTI can be stored) the first rate matching stage shall be transparent. This can, for example, be achieved by setting e_{minus} = 0. Note that no repetition is performed.

If N_{IR} is smaller than N^{TTI} the parity bit streams are punctured as in 4.2.7.2.2.3 above by setting the rate matching parameter $\Delta N_{il}^{TTI} = N_{IR} - N^{TTI}$ where the subscripts i and l refer to transport channel and transport format in the referenced sub-clause. Note the negative value is expected when the rate matching implements puncturing. Bits selected for puncturing which appear as δ in the algorithm in 4.2.7 above shall be discarded and not counted in the totals for the streams through the virtual IR buffer.

4.5.4.3 HARQ Second Rate Matching Stage

HARQ second stage rate matching for the HS-DSCH transport channel shall be done with the general method described in 4.2.7.5 above with the following specific parameters. Bits selected for puncturing which appear as δ in the algorithm in 4.2.7.5 above shall be discarded and are not counted in the streams towards the bit collection.

The parameters of the second rate matching stage depend on the value of the RV parameters s and r. The parameter s can take the value 0 or 1 to distinguish between transmissions that prioritise systematic bits (s = 1) and non systematic bits (s = 0). The parameter r (range 0 to r_{max}-1) changes the initial error variable e_{ini} in the case of puncturing. In case of repetition both parameters *r* and *s* change the initial error variable e_{ini}. The parameters X_i, e_{plus} and e_{minus} are calculated as per table 10 below.

Denote the number of bits before second rate matching as N_{sys} for the systematic bits, N_{p1} for the parity 1 bits, and N_{p2} for the parity 2 bits, respectively. Denote the number of physical channels used for the HS-DSCH by P. N_{data} is the number of bits available to the HS-DSCH in one TTI and defined as $N_{data}=P\times3\times N_{data1}$, where N_{data1} is defined in [2]. The rate matching parameters are determined as follows.

For $N_{data} \le N_{sys} + N_{p1} + N_{p2}$, puncturing is performed in the second rate matching stage. The number of transmitted systematic bits in a transmission is $N_{t,sys} = \min\{N_{sys}, N_{data}\}$ for a transmission that prioritises systematic bits and $N_{t,sys} = \max\{N_{data} - (N_{p1} + N_{p2}), 0\}$ for a transmission that prioritises non systematic bits.

For $N_{data} > N_{sys} + N_{p1} + N_{p2}$ repetition is performed in the second rate matching stage. A similar repetition rate in all bit streams is achieved by setting the number of transmitted systematic bits to $N_{t,sys} = \left\lfloor N_{sys} \cdot \frac{N_{data}}{N_{sys} + 2N_{p1}} \right\rfloor$.

The number of parity bits in a transmission is: $N_{t,p1} = \left\lfloor \frac{N_{data} - N_{t,sys}}{2} \right\rfloor$ and $N_{t,p2} = \left\lceil \frac{N_{data} - N_{t,sys}}{2} \right\rceil$ for the parity 1 and parity 2 bits, respectively.

Table 10 below summarizes the resulting parameter choice for the second rate matching stage.

Table 10: Parameters for HARQ second rate matching

	X_i	e_{plus}	e_{minus}
Systematic RM S	N_{sys}	N_{sys}	$\lvert N_{sys} - N_{t,sys} \rvert$
Parity 1 RM P1_2	N_{p1}	$2 \cdot N_{p1}$	$2 \cdot \lvert N_{p1} - N_{t,p1} \rvert$
Parity 2 RM P2_2	N_{p2}	N_{p2}	$\lvert N_{p2} - N_{t,p2} \rvert$

The rate matching parameter e_{ini} is calculated for each bit stream according to the RV parameters r and s using

$e_{ini}(r) = \{(X_i - \lfloor r \cdot e_{plus} / r_{\max} \rfloor - 1) \bmod e_{plus}\} + 1$ in the case of puncturing , i.e., $N_{data} \le N_{sys} + N_{p1} + N_{p2}$, and

$e_{ini}(r) = \{(X_i - \lfloor (s + 2 \cdot r) \cdot e_{plus} / (2 \cdot r_{\max}) \rfloor - 1) \bmod e_{plus}\} + 1$ for repetition, i.e., $N_{data} > N_{sys} + N_{p1} + N_{p2}$.

Where $r \in \{0, 1, \ldots, r_{\max} - 1\}$ and $r_{\max}$ is the total number of redundancy versions allowed by varying r as defined in 4.6.2. Note that $r_{\max}$ varies depending on the modulation mode, i.e. for 16QAM r_{max} = 2 and for QPSK r_{max} = 4.

Note: For the modulo operation the following clarification is used: the value of (x mod y) is strictly in the range of 0 to y-1 (i.e. -1 mod 10 = 9).

4.5.4.4 HARQ bit collection

The HARQ bit collection is achieved using a rectangular interleaver of size $N_{row} \times N_{col}$.

The number of rows and columns are determined from:

$$N_{row} = 4 \text{ for 16QAM and } N_{row} = 2 \text{ for QPSK}$$

$$N_{col} = N_{data} / N_{row}$$

where N_{data} is used as defined in 4.5.4.3.

Data is written into the interleaver column by column, and read out of the interleaver column by column starting from the first column.

$N_{t,sys}$ is the number of transmitted systematic bits. Intermediate values N_r and N_c are calculated using:

$$N_r = \left\lfloor \frac{N_{t,sys}}{N_{col}} \right\rfloor \text{ and } N_c = N_{t,sys} - N_r \cdot N_{col}.$$

If N_c=0 and $N_r > 0$, the systematic bits are written into rows $1 \ldots N_r$.

Otherwise systematic bits are written into rows $1 \ldots N_r+1$ in the first N_c columns and, if $N_r > 0$, also into rows $1 \ldots N_r$ in the remaining N_{col}-N_c columns.

The remaining space is filled with parity bits. The parity bits are written column wise into the remaining rows of the respective columns. Parity 1 and 2 bits are written in alternating order, starting with a parity 2 bit in the first available column with the lowest index number.

In the case of 16QAM for each column the bits are read out of the interleaver in the order row 1, row 2, row 3, row 4. In the case of QPSK for each column the bits are read out of the interleaver in the order row1, row2.

4.5.5 Physical channel segmentation for HS-DSCH

When more than one HS-PDSCH is used, physical channel segmentation divides the bits among the different physical channels. The bits input to the physical channel segmentation are denoted by $w_1, w_2, w_3, \ldots w_R$, where R is the number of bits input to the physical channel segmentation block. The number of PhCHs is denoted by *P*.

The bits after physical channel segmentation are denoted $u_{p1}, u_{p2}, u_{p3}, \ldots, u_{pU}$, where *p* is PhCH number and *U* is the number of bits in one radio sub-frame for each HS-PDSCH, i.e. $U = \frac{R}{P}$. The relation between w_k and $u_{p,k}$ is given below.

For all modes, some bits of the input flow are mapped to each code until the number of bits on the code is *U*.

Bits on first PhCH after physical channel segmentation:

$u_{1,k} = w_k \quad k = 1, 2, \ldots, U$

Bits on second PhCH after physical channel segmentation:

$u_{2,k} = w_{k+U} \quad k = 1, 2, \ldots, U$

…

Bits on the P^{th} PhCH after physical channel segmentation:

$u_{P,k} = w_{k+(P-1)\times U} \quad k = 1, 2, \ldots, U$

4.5.6 Interleaving for HS-DSCH

The interleaving for FDD is done as shown in figure 18 below, separately for each physical channel. The bits input to the block interleaver are denoted by $u_{p,1}, u_{p,2}, u_{p,3}, \ldots, u_{p,U}$, where *p* is PhCH number and *U* is the number of bits in one TTI for one PhCH. For QPSK *U* = 960 and for 16QAM *U* = 1920. The basic interleaver is as the 2[nd] interleaver described in Section 4.2.11. The interleaver is of fixed size: R2=32 rows and C2=30 columns.

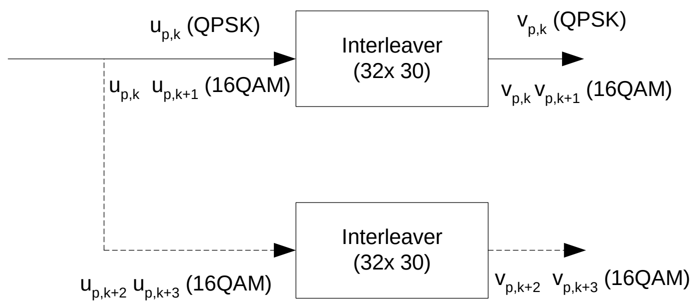


Figure 18: Interleaver structure for HS-DSCH

For 16QAM, there are two identical interleavers of the same fixed size R2×C2 = 32×30. The output bits from the physical channel segmentation are divided two by two between the interleavers: bits $u_{p,k}$ and $u_{p,k+1}$ go to the first interleaver and bits $u_{p,k+2}$ and $u_{p,k+3}$ go to the second interleaver. Bits are collected two by two from the interleavers: bits $v_{p,k}$ and $v_{p,k+1}$are obtained from the first interleaver and bits $v_{p,k+2}$ and $v_{p,k+3}$ are obtained from the second interleaver, where k mod 4=1.

4.5.7 Constellation re-arrangement for 16 QAM

This function only applies to 16 QAM modulated bits. In case of QPSK it is transparent.

The following table describes the operations that produce the different rearrangements.

The bits of the input sequence are mapped in groups of 4 so that $v_{p,k}$, $v_{p,k+1}$, $v_{p,k+2}$, $v_{p,k+3}$ are used, where k mod 4 = 1.

Table 11: Constellation re-arrangement for 16 QAM

constellation version parameter *b*	Output bit sequence	Operation
0	$v_{p,k} v_{p,k+1} v_{p,k+2} v_{p,k+3}$	None
1	$v_{p,k+2} v_{p,k+3} v_{p,k} v_{p,k+1}$	Swapping MSBs with LSBs
2	$v_{p,k} v_{p,k+1} \overline{v}_{p,k+2} \overline{v}_{p,k+3}$	Inversion of the logical values of LSBs
3	$v_{p,k+2} v_{p,k+3} \overline{v}_{p,k} \overline{v}_{p,k+1}$	Swapping MSBs with LSBs and inversion of logical values of LSBs

The output bit sequences from the table above map to the output bits in groups of 4, i.e. $r_{p,k}$, $r_{p,k+1}$, $r_{p,k+2}$, $r_{p,k+3}$, where k mod 4 = 1.

4.5.8 Physical channel mapping for HS-DSCH

The HS-PDSCH is defined in [2]. The bits input to the physical channel mapping are denoted by $r_{p,1}, r_{p,2},...,r_{p,U}$, where p is the physical channel number and U is the number of bits in one radio sub-frame for one HS-PDSCH. The bits $r_{p,k}$ are mapped to the PhCHs so that the bits for each PhCH are transmitted over the air in ascending order with respect to k.

4.6 Coding for HS-SCCH

The following information is transmitted by means of the HS-SCCH physical channel.

- Channelization-code-set information (7 bits): $x_{ccs,1}, x_{ccs,2}, \ldots, x_{ccs,7}$
- Modulation scheme information (1 bit): $x_{ms,1}$
- Transport-block size information (6 bits): $x_{tbs,1}, x_{tbs,2}, \ldots, x_{tbs,6}$
- Hybrid-ARQ process information (3 bits): $x_{hap,1}, x_{hap,2}, x_{hap,3}$

- Redundancy and constellation version (3 bits): $x_{rv,1}, x_{rv,2}, x_{rv,3}$
- New data indicator (1 bit): $x_{nd,1}$
- UE identity (16 bits): $x_{ue,1}, x_{ue,2}, \ldots, x_{ue,16}$

4.6.1 Overview

Figure 19 below illustrates the overall coding chain for HS-SCCH.

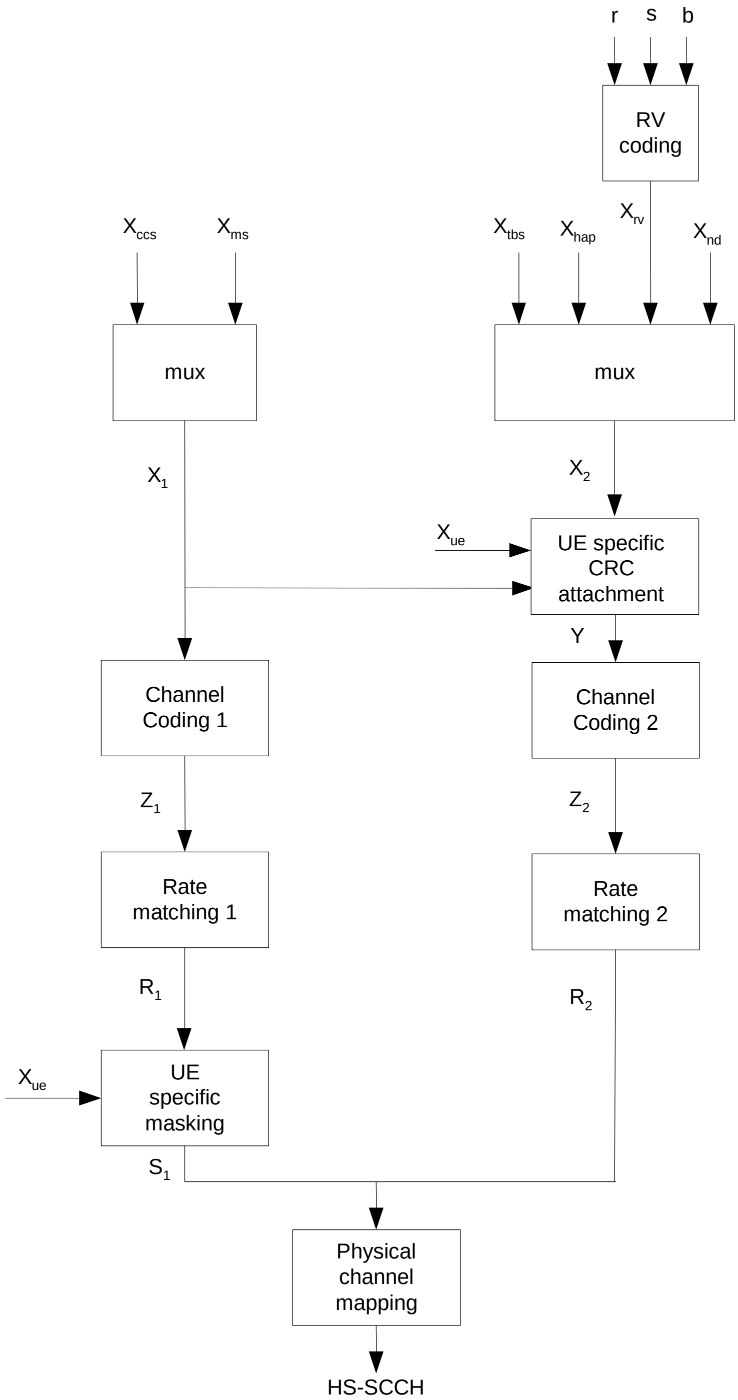


Figure 19: Coding chain for HS-SCCH

4.6.2 HS-SCCH information field mapping

4.6.2.1 Redundancy and constellation version coding

The redundancy version (RV) parameters *r*, *s* and constellation version parameter *b* are coded jointly to produce the value X_{rv}. X_{rv} is alternatively represented as the sequence $x_{rv,1}$, $x_{rv,2}$, $x_{rv,3}$ where $x_{rv,1}$ is the MSB. This is done according to the following tables according to the modulation mode used:

Table 12: RV coding for 16 QAM

X_{rv} (value)	s	r	b
0	1	0	0
1	0	0	0
2	1	1	1
3	0	1	1
4	1	0	1
5	1	0	2
6	1	0	3
7	1	1	0

Table 13: RV coding for QPSK

X_{rv} (value)	s	r
0	1	0
1	0	0
2	1	1
3	0	1
4	1	2
5	0	2
6	1	3
7	0	3

4.6.2.2 Modulation scheme mapping

The value of $x_{ms,1}$ is derived from the modulation and given by the following:

$$x_{ms,1} = \begin{cases} 0 & if \quad QPSK \\ 1 & if \quad 16QAM \end{cases}$$

4.6.2.3 Channelization code-set mapping

The channelization code-set bits $x_{ccs,1}$, $x_{ccs,2}$, …, $x_{ccs,7}$ are coded according to the following:

Given P (multi-)codes starting at code O calculate the information-field using the unsigned binary representation of integers calculated by the expressions,

for the first three bits (code group indicator) of which $x_{ccs,1}$ is the MSB:

$x_{ccs,1}, x_{ccs,2}, x_{ccs,3}$ = min(P-1,15-P)

for the last four bits (code offset indicator) of which $x_{ccs,4}$ is the MSB:

$x_{ccs,4}, x_{ccs,5}, x_{ccs,6}, x_{ccs,7} = |O-1-\lfloor P/8 \rfloor *15|$

The definitions of P and O are given in [3].

4.6.2.4 UE identity mapping

The UE identity is the HS-DSCH Radio Network Identifier (H-RNTI) defined in [13]. This is mapped such that $x_{ue,1}$ corresponds to the MSB and $x_{ue,16}$ to the LSB, cf. [14].

4.6.2.5 HARQ process identifier mapping

Hybrid-ARQ process information (3 bits) $x_{hap,1}$, $x_{hap,2}$, $x_{hap,3}$ is unsigned binary representation of the HARQ process identifier where $x_{hap,1}$ is MSB.

4.6.2.6 Transport block size index mapping

Transport-block size information (6 bits) $x_{tbs,1}$, $x_{tbs,2}$, …, $x_{tbs,6}$ is unsigned binary representation of the Transport block size index where $x_{tbs,1}$ is MSB.

4.6.3 Multiplexing of HS-SCCH information

The channelization-code-set information $x_{ccs,1}$, $x_{ccs,2}$, …, $x_{ccs,7}$ and modulation-scheme information $x_{ms,1}$ are multiplexed together. This gives a sequence of bits $x_{1,1}$, $x_{1,2}$, …, $x_{1,8}$ where

$x_{1,i} = x_{ccs,i}$ $\quad i=1,2,…,7$

$x_{1,i} = x_{ms,i-7}$ $\quad i=8$

The transport-block-size information $x_{tbs,1}$, $x_{tbs,2}$, …, $x_{tbs,6}$, Hybrid-ARQ-process information $x_{hap,1}$,$x_{hap,2}$, $x_{hap,3}$, redundancy-version information $x_{rv,1}$, $x_{rv,2}$, $x_{rv,3}$ and new-data indicator $x_{nd,1}$ are multiplexed together. This gives a sequence of bits $x_{2,1}$, $x_{2,2}$, …, $x_{2,13}$ where

$x_{2,i} = x_{tbs,i}$ $\quad i=1,2,…,6$

$x_{2,i} = x_{hap,i-6}$ $\quad i=7,8,9$

$x_{2,i} = x_{rv,i-9}$ $\quad i=10,11,12$

$x_{2,i} = x_{nd,i-12}$ $\quad i=13$

4.6.4 CRC attachment for HS-SCCH

From the sequence of bits $x_{1,1}$, $x_{1,2}$, …, $x_{1,8,}$ $x_{2,1}$, $x_{2,2}$, …, $x_{2,13}$ a 16 bits CRC is calculated according to Section 4.2.1.1. This gives a sequence of bits c_1, c_2, …, c_{16} where

$$c_k = p_{im(17-k)} \qquad k=1,2,…,16$$

This sequence of bits is then masked with the UE Identity $x_{ue,1}$, $x_{ue,2}$, …, $x_{ue,16}$ and then appended to the sequence of bits $x_{2,1}$, $x_{2,2}$, …, $x_{2,13}$ to form the sequence of bits y_1, y_2, …, y_{29}, where

$y_i = x_{2,i}$ $\quad i=1,2,…,13$

$y_i = (c_{i-13} + x_{ue,i-13}) \bmod 2$ $\quad i=14,15,…,29$

4.6.5 Channel coding for HS-SCCH

Rate 1/3 convolutional coding, as described in Section 4.2.3.1, is applied to the sequence of bits $x_{1,1}$,$x_{1,2}$, …,$x_{1,8}$. This gives a sequence of bits $z_{1,1}$, $z_{1,2}$, …, $z_{1,48}$.

Rate 1/3 convolutional coding, as described in Section 4.2.3.1, is applied to the sequence of bits y_1, y_2, …, y_{29}. This gives a sequence of bits $z_{2,1}$, $z_{2,2}$, …, $z_{2,111}$.

Note that the coded sequence lengths result from the termination of K=9 convolutional coding being fully applied.

4.6.6 Rate matching for HS-SCCH

From the input sequence $z_{1,1}$, $z_{1,2}$, …, $z_{1,48}$ the bits $z_{1,1}$, $z_{1,2}$, $z_{1,4}$, $z_{1,8}$, $z_{1,42}$, $z_{1,45}$, $z_{1,47}$, $z_{1,48}$ are punctured to obtain the output sequence $r_{1,1}$,$r_{1,2}$…$r_{1,40}$.

From the input sequence $z_{2,1}$, $z_{2,2}$, …, $z_{2,111}$ the bits $z_{2,1}$, $z_{2,2}$, $z_{2,3}$, $z_{2,4}$, $z_{2,5}$, $z_{2,6}$, $z_{2,7}$, $z_{2,8}$, $z_{2,12}$, $z_{2,14}$, $z_{2,15}$, $z_{2,24}$, $z_{2,42}$, $z_{2,48}$, $z_{2,54}$, $z_{2,57}$, $z_{2,60}$, $z_{2,66}$, $z_{2,69}$, $z_{2,96}$, $z_{2,99}$, $z_{2,101}$, $z_{2,102}$, $z_{2,104}$, $z_{2,105}$, $z_{2,106}$, $z_{2,107}$, $z_{2,108}$, $z_{2,109}$, $z_{2,110}$, $z_{2,111}$ are punctured to obtain the output sequence $r_{2,1}$,$r_{2,2}$…$r_{2,80}$.

4.6.7 UE specific masking for HS-SCCH

The rate matched bits $r_{1,1}$,$r_{1,2}$…$r_{1,40}$ shall be masked in an UE specific way using the UE identity $x_{ue,1}$, $x_{ue,2}$, …, $x_{ue,16}$, to produce the bits $s_{1,1}$,$s_{1,2}$…$s_{1,40}$.

Intermediate code word bits b_i, i=1,2…,48, are defined by endcoding the UE identity bits using the rate ½ convolutional coding described in Section 4.2.3.1. Eight bits out of the resulting 48 convolutionally encoded bits are punctured using the rate matching rule of Section 4.6.6 for the HS-SCCH part 1 sequence, that is, the intermediate code word bits b_1, b_2, b_4, b_8, b_{42}, b_{45}, b_{47}, $b_{48,}$ are punctured to obtain the 40 bit UE specific scrambling sequence c_1, c_2, ….c_{40}. .

The mask output bits $s_{1,1}$,$s_{1,2}$…$s_{1,40}$ are calculated as follows:

$s_{1,k} = (r_{1,k} + c_k) \bmod 2$ for k = 1,2…40

4.6.8 Physical channel mapping for HS-SCCH

The HS-SCCH sub-frame is described in[2].

The sequence of bits $s_{1,1}$, $s_{1,2}$,, …, $s_{1,40}$ is mapped to the first slot of the HS-SCCH sub frame. The bits $s_{1,k}$ are mapped to the PhCHs so that the bits for each PhCH are transmitted over the air in ascending order with respect to k.

The sequence of bits $r_{2,1}$, $r_{2,2}$,, …,,$r_{2,80}$ is mapped to the second and third slot of the HS-SCCH sub frame. The bits $r_{2,k}$ are mapped to the PhCHs so that the bits for each PhCH are transmitted over the air in ascending order with respect to k.

4.7 Coding for HS-DPCCH

Data arrives to the coding unit in form of indicators for measurement indication and HARQ acknowledgement.

The following coding/multiplexing steps can be identified:

- channel coding (see subclause 4.7.1);
- mapping to physical channels (see subclause 4.7.2).

The general coding flow is shown in the figure below. This is done in parallel for the HARQ-ACK and CQI as the flows are not directly multiplexed but are transmitted at different times.

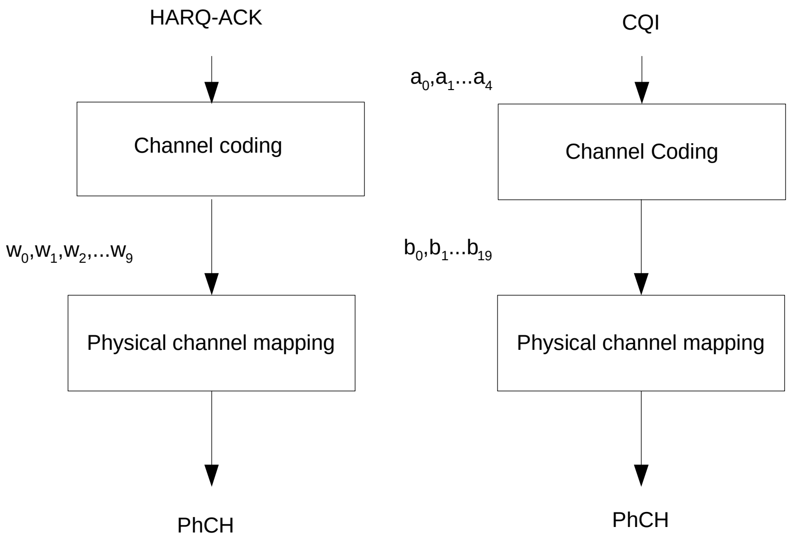


Figure 20: Coding for HS-DPCCH

4.7.1 Channel coding for HS-DPCCH

Two forms of channel coding are used, one for the channel quality information (CQI) and another for HARQ-ACK (acknowledgement).

4.7.1.1 Channel coding for HS-DPCCH HARQ-ACK

The HARQ acknowledgement message to be transmitted, as defined in [4], shall be coded to 10 bits as shown in Table 13A. The output is denoted w_0, w_1,…w_9.

Table 13A: Channel coding of HARQ-ACK

HARQ-ACK message to be transmitted	w_0	w_1	w_2	w_3	w_4	w_5	w_6	w_7	w_8	w_9
ACK	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
NACK	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

4.7.1.2 Channel coding for HS-DPCCH channel quality information

The channel quality information is coded using a (20,5) code. The code words of the (20,5) code are a linear combination of the 5 basis sequences denoted $M_{i,n}$ defined in the table below.

Table 14: Basis sequences for (20,5) code

i	$M_{i,0}$	$M_{i,1}$	$M_{i,2}$	$M_{i,3}$	$M_{i,4}$
0	1	0	0	0	1
1	0	1	0	0	1
2	1	1	0	0	1
3	0	0	1	0	1
4	1	0	1	0	1
5	0	1	1	0	1
6	1	1	1	0	1
7	0	0	0	1	1
8	1	0	0	1	1
9	0	1	0	1	1
10	1	1	0	1	1
11	0	0	1	1	1
12	1	0	1	1	1
13	0	1	1	1	1
14	1	1	1	1	1
15	0	0	0	0	1
16	0	0	0	0	1
17	0	0	0	0	1
18	0	0	0	0	1
19	0	0	0	0	1

The CQI values 0 .. 30 as defined in [4] are converted from decimal to binary to map them to the channel quality information bits (1 0 0 0 0) to (1 1 1 1 1) respectively. The information bit pattern (0 0 0 0 0) shall not be used in this release. The channel quality information bits are a_0 , a_1 , a_2 , a_3 , a_4 (where a_0 is LSB and a_4 is MSB). The output code word bits b_i are given by:

$$b_i = \sum_{n=0}^{4} (a_n \times M_{i,n}) \bmod 2$$

where i = 0, …, 19.

4.7.2 Physical channel mapping for HS-DPCCH

The HS-DPCCH physical channel mapping function shall map the input bits w_k directly to physical channel so that bits are transmitted over the air in ascending order with respect to k.

The HS-DPCCH physical channel mapping function shall map the input bits b_k directly to physical channel so that bits are transmitted over the air in ascending order with respect to k.

4.8 Coding for E-DCH

Figure 21 shows the processing structure for the E-DCH transport channel mapped onto a separate CCTrCH. Data arrives to the coding unit in form of a maximum of one transport block once every transmission time interval (TTI). The following coding steps can be identified:

- Add CRC to the transport block
- Code block segmentation
- Channel coding
- Physical layer hybrid ARQ and rate matching
- Physical channel segmentation
- Interleaving
- Physical channel mapping

The coding steps for E-DCH transport channel are shown in the figure below.

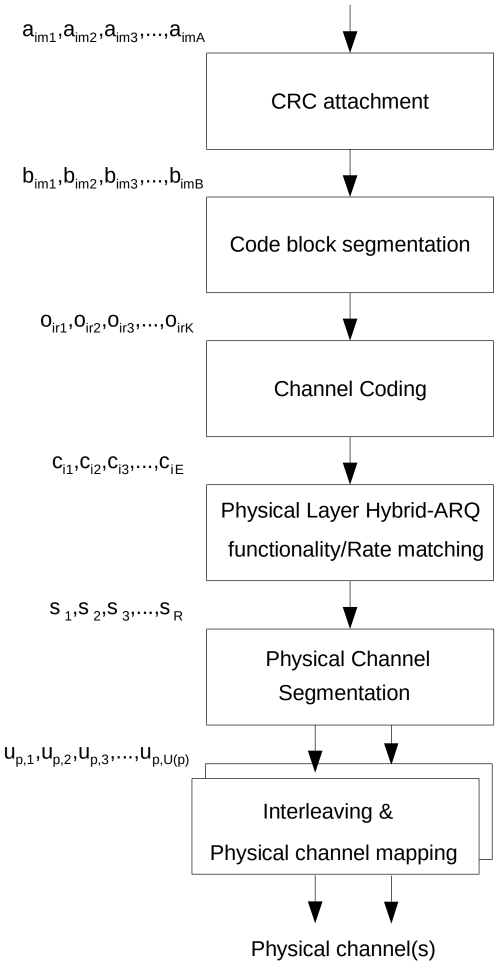


Figure 21: Transport channel processing for E-DCH

In the following the number of transport blocks per TTI and the number of transport channels is always one i.e. m=1 and i=1. When referencing non E-DCH formulae which are used in correspondence with E-DCH formulae the convention is used that transport block subscripts may be omitted (e.g. X_1 may be written X).

4.8.1 CRC attachment for E-DCH

CRC attachment for the E-DCH transport channel shall be performed according to the general method described in 4.2.1 above with the following specific parameters.

The CRC length shall always be L_1=24 bits.

4.8.2 Code block segmentation for E-DCH

Code block segmentation for the E-DCH transport channel shall be performed according to the general method described in 4.2.2.2 with the following specific parameters.

There is a maximum of one transport block. The bits $b_{im1}, b_{im2}, b_{im3}, \ldots, b_{imB_i}$ input to the block are mapped to the bits $x_{i1}, x_{i2}, x_{i3}, \ldots, x_{iX_i}$ directly. It follows that $X_i = B_i$. Note that the bits x referenced here refer only to the internals of the code block segmentation function. The output bits from the code block segmentation function are $o_{ir1}, o_{ir2}, o_{ir3}, \ldots, o_{irK}$.

The value of Z = 5114 for turbo coding shall be used.

4.8.3 Channel coding for E-DCH

Channel coding for the E-DCH transport channel shall be performed according to the general method described in section 4.2.3 above with the following specific parameters.

There is a maximum of one transport block, i=1. The rate 1/3 turbo coding shall be used.

4.8.4 Physical layer HARQ functionality and rate matching for E-DCH

The hybrid ARQ functionality matches the number of bits at the output of the channel coder to the total number of bits of the E-DPDCH set to which the E-DCH transport channel is mapped. The hybrid ARQ functionality is controlled by the redundancy version (RV) parameters.

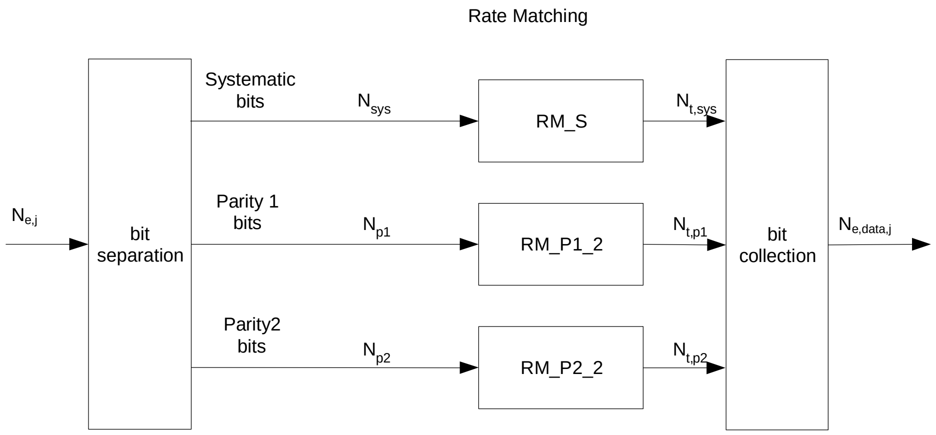


Figure 22: E-DCH hybrid ARQ functionality

4.8.4.1 Determination of SF and number of PhCHs needed

The maximum amount of puncturing that can be applied is

- 1-$PL_{non\text{-}max}$ if the number of code channels is less than the maximum allowed by the UE capability and restrictions imposed by UTRAN.
- 1-PL_{max} if the number of code channels equals to the maximum allowed by the UE capability and restrictions imposed by UTRAN.

The number of available bits per TTI of one E-DPDCH for all possible spreading factors is denoted by N_{64}, N_{32}, N_{16}, N_8, N_4 and N_2, where the index refers to the spreading factor.

The possible number of bits available to the CCTrCH of E-DCH type on all PhCHs, $N_{e,data}$, then are {N_{64}, N_{32}, N_{16}, N_8, N_4, $2\times N_4$, $2\times N_2$, $2\times N_2+2\times N_4$}.

SET0 denotes the set of $N_{e,data}$ values allowed by the UTRAN and supported by the UE, as part of the UE's capability. SET0 can be a subset of {N_{64}, N_{32}, N_{16}, N_8, N_4, $2\times N_4$, $2\times N_2$, $2\times N_2+2\times N_4$}.

The total number of bits in a TTI before rate matching with transport format j is $N_{e,j}$. The total number of bits available for the E-DCH transmission per TTI with transport format j, $N_{e,data,j}$, is determined by executing the following algorithm:

SET1 = { $N_{e,data}$ in SET0 such that $N_{e,data} - N_{e,j}$ is non negative }

If SET1 is not empty and the smallest element of SET1 requires just one E-DPDCH then

$N_{e,data,j}$ = min SET1

Else

SET2 = { $N_{e,data}$ in SET0 such that $N_{e,data} - PL_{non\text{-}max} \times N_{e,j}$ is non negative }

If SET2 is not empty then

Sort SET2 in ascending order

$N_{e,data}$ = min SET2

While $N_{e,data}$ is not the max of SET2 and the follower of $N_{e,data}$ requires no additional E-DPDCH do

$N_{e,data}$ = follower of $N_{e,data}$ in SET2

End while

$N_{e,data,j} = N_{,e,data}$

Else

$N_{e,data,j}$ = max SET0 provided that $N_{e,data,j} - PL_{max} \times N_{e,j}$ is non negative

End if

End if

4.8.4.2 HARQ bit separation

The HARQ bit separation function shall be performed in the same way as bit separation for turbo encoded TrCHs in 4.2.7.4.1 above.

4.8.4.3 HARQ Rate Matching Stage

The hybrid ARQ rate matching for the E-DCH transport channel shall be done with the general method described in 4.2.7.5 with the following specific parameters. Bits selected for puncturing which appear as δ in the algorithm in 4.2.7.5 shall be discarded and are not counted in the streams towards the bit collection.

The parameters of the rate matching stage depend on the value of the RV parameters *s* and *r*. The *s* and *r* combinations corresponding to each RV allowed for the E-DCH are listed in the table below.

Table 15: RV for E-DCH

E-DCH RV Index	*s*	*r*
0	1	0
1	0	0
2	1	1
3	0	1

The parameter e_{plus}, e_{minus} and e_{ini} are calculated with the general method for QPSK as described in 4.5.4.3 above. The following parameters are used as input:

- $N_{sys} = N_{p1} = N_{p2} = N_{e,j}/3$

- $N_{data} = N_{e,data,j}$

- $r_{max} = 2$

4.8.4.4 HARQ bit collection

The HARQ bit collection shall be performed according to the general method specified in 4.5.4.4 above using the specific parameter N_{row}=2 as input.

4.8.5 Physical channel segmentation for E-DCH

When more than one E-DPDCH is used, physical channel segmentation distributes the bits among the different physical channels. The bits input to the physical channel segmentation are denoted by $s_1, s_2, s_3, \ldots, s_R$, where R is the number of bits input to the physical channel segmentation block. The number of PhCHs is denoted by P.

The bits after physical channel segmentation are denoted $u_{p,k}$ where p is the PhCH number. $U(p)$ is the number of physical channel bits in one E-DCH TTI for the p[th] E-DPDCH. The relation between s_k and $u_{p,k}$ is given below.

Bits on first PhCH after physical channel segmentation:

$$u_{1,k} = s_k \quad k = 1, 2, \ldots, U(1)$$

Bits on p[th] PhCH after physical channel segmentation:

$$u_{p,k} = s_{k+\sum_{q=1}^{p-1} U(q)} \quad k = 1, 2, \ldots, U(p)$$

4.8.6 Interleaving for E-DCH

Interleaving for the E-DCH transport channel shall be done according to the general method described in section 4.2.11 with the specific parameter $U=U(p)$.

4.8.7 Physical channel mapping for E-DCH

The E-DCH structure is described in [2]. The bits input to the physical channel mapping are denoted $v_{p,1}, v_{p,2}, \ldots, v_{p,U(p)}$. The bits $v_{p,k}$ are mapped to the PhCHs such that the bits for each PhCH are transmitted over the air in ascending order with respect to k.

4.9 Coding for E-DPCCH

The following information is transmitted by means of the E-DPCCH:

- Retransmission sequence number (RSN)
- E-TFCI information

4.9.1 Overview

The figure below illustrates the overall coding chain for E-DPCCH.

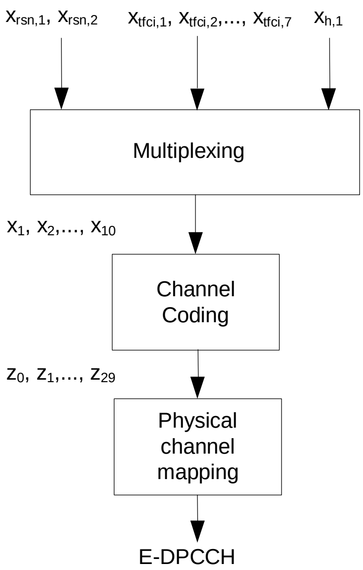


Figure 23: Coding chain for E-DPCCH

4.9.2 E-DPCCH information field mapping

4.9.2.1 Information field mapping of E-TFCI

The E-TFCI is mapped such that $x_{tfci,1}$ corresponds to the MSB.

4.9.2.2 Information field mapping of retransmission sequence number

To indicate the redundancy version (RV) of each HARQ transmission and to assist the Node B soft buffer management a two bit retransmission sequence number (RSN) is signalled from the UE to the Node B. The Node B can avoid soft buffer corruption by flushing the soft buffer associated to one HARQ process in case more than 3 consecutive E-DPCCH transmissions on that HARQ process can not be decoded or the last received RSN is incompatible with the current one.

The RSN value for each initial transmission of an E-DCH transport block is 0. For the first retransmission the RSN value is 1, for the second retransmission the RSN value is 2 and for each further retransmission the RSN value is 3. The RSN is mapped such that $x_{rsn,1}$ corresponds to the MSB.

The applied E-DCH RV index specifying the used RV (*s* and *r* parameter) depends on the RSN, the used coding rate and if RSN=3 also from the TTIN (TTI number). For 10 ms TTI the TTI number is equal to the CFN, for 2 ms TTI

$$TTIN = 5*CFN + \text{subframe number}$$

where the subframe number counts the five TTIs which are within a given CFN, starting from 0 for the first TTI to 4 for the last TTI. N_{ARQ} is the number of Hybrid ARQ processes.

Table 16: Relation between RSN value and E-DCH RV Index

RSN Value	Coding Rate <1/2	1/2 ≤ Coding Rate
	E-DCH RV Index	E-DCH RV Index
0	0	0
1	2	3
2	0	2
3	$\lceil \lfloor TTIN/N_{ARQ} \rfloor \bmod 2 \rceil \times 2$	$\lfloor TTIN/N_{ARQ} \rfloor \bmod 4$

The UE shall use either

- an RV index as indicated in Table 16 and according to the RSN
- or, if signalled by higher layers only E-DCH RV index 0 independently of the RSN.

4.9.3 Multiplexing of E-DPCCH information

The E-TFCI information $x_{tfci,1}, x_{tfci,2}, \ldots, x_{tfci,7}$, the retransmission sequence number $x_{rsn,1}, x_{rsn,2}$ and $x_{h,1}$ are multiplexed together. This gives a sequence of bits $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{10}$ where

$x_k = x_{rsn,k}$ $k=1,2$

$x_k = x_{tfci,k-2}$ $k=3,4,\ldots,9$

$x_k = x_{h,1}$ $k=10$

4.9.4 Channel coding for E-DPCCH

Channel coding of the E-DPCCH is done using a sub-code of the second order Reed-Muller code. Coding is applied to the output $x_1, x_2, ..., x_{10}$ from the E-DPCCH multiplexing, resulting in:

$$z_i = \sum_{n=0}^{9} (x_{n+1} \times M_{i,n}) \bmod 2 \qquad i=0, 1, ..., 29$$

The basis sequences are as described in 4.3.3 for i=0, 1, ..., 29.

4.9.5 Physical channel mapping for E-DPCCH

The E-DPCCH is described in [2]. The sequence of bits $z_0, z_1, ..., z_{29}$ output from the E-DPCCH channel coding is mapped to the corresponding E-DPCCH sub frame. The bits are mapped so that they are transmitted over the air in ascending order with respect to k. If the E-DCH TTI is equal to 10 ms the sequence of bits is transmitted in all the E-DPCCH sub frames of the E-DPCCH radio frame.

4.10 Coding for E-AGCH

The absolute grant $x_{ag,1}, x_{ag,2}, ..., x_{ag,w}$ is transmitted by means of the absolute grant channel (E-AGCH).

4.10.1 Overview

Figure 24 below illustrates the overall coding chain for the E-AGCH.

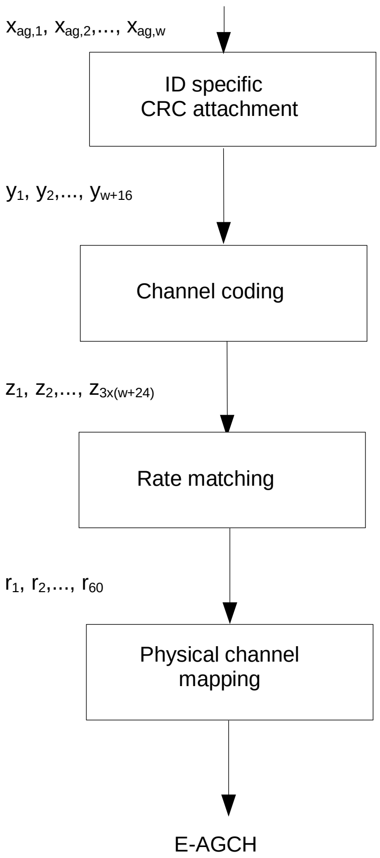


Figure 24: Coding for E-AGCH

4.10.2 CRC attachment for E-AGCH

The E-RNTI is the E-DCH Radio Network Identifier defined in [13]. It is mapped such that $x_{id,1}$ corresponds to the MSB.

From the sequence of bits $x_{ag,1}, x_{ag,2}, \ldots, x_{ag,w}$ a 16 bit CRC is calculated according to section 4.2.1.1. That gives the sequence of bits $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_{16}$ where

$$c_k = p_{im(17-k)} \qquad k=1,2,\ldots,16$$

This sequence of bits is then masked with $x_{id,1}, x_{id,2}, \ldots, x_{id,16}$ and appended to the sequence of bits $x_{ag,1}, x_{ag,2}, \ldots, x_{ag,w}$ to form the sequence of bits $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_{w+16}$ where

$y_i = x_{ag,i} \qquad i=1,2, \ldots,w$

$y_i = (c_{i-w} + x_{id,i-w}) \bmod 2 \qquad i=w+1, \ldots, w+16$

4.10.3 Channel coding for E-AGCH

Rate 1/3 convolutional coding, as described in Section 4.2.3.1 is applied to the sequence of bits $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_{w+16}$, resulting in the sequence of bits $z_1, z_2, \ldots, z_{3x(w+24)}$.

4.10.4 Rate matching for E-AGCH

Rate matching is applied to obtain the output sequence $r_1, r_2, \ldots, r_{60}$. from the input sequence $z_1, z_2, \ldots, z_{3x(w+24)}$.

4.10.5 Physical channel mapping for E-AGCH

The E-AGCH sub frame is described in [2]. The sequence of bits $r_1, r_2, \ldots, r_{60}$ is mapped to the corresponding E-AGCH sub frame. The bits r_k are mapped so that they are transmitted over the air in ascending order with respect to k. If the E-DCH TTI is equal to 10 ms the sequence of bits is transmitted in only one or in all the E-AGCH sub frames of the E-AGCH radio frame.

4.11 Mapping for E-RGCH Relative Grant

4.11.1 Overview

The relative grant is transmitted on the E-RGCH as described in [2].

4.11.2 Relative Grant mapping

The relative grant (RG) command is mapped to the relative grant value as described in the table below.

Table 17: Mapping of RG value

Command	RG Value (serving)	RG Value (non serving)
UP	+1	not allowed
HOLD	0	0
DOWN	-1	-1

4.12 Mapping for E-HICH ACK/NACK

4.12.1 Overview

The ACK/NACK is transmitted on the E-HICH as described in [2].

4.12.2 ACK/NACK mapping

The ACK/NACK command is mapped to the HARQ acknowledgement indicator as described in the table below.

Table 18: Mapping of HARQ Acknowledgement

Command	HARQ acknowledgement indicator
ACK	+1
NACK (non serving)	0
NACK (serving)	-1

Annex A (informative): Blind transport format detection

A.1 Blind transport format detection using fixed positions

A.1.1 Blind transport format detection using received power ratio

For the dual transport format case (the possible data rates are 0 and full rate, and CRC is only transmitted for full rate), blind transport format detection using received power ratio can be used.

The transport format detection is then done using average received power ratio of DPDCH to DPCCH. Define the following:

- *Pc:* Received power per bit of DPCCH calculated from all pilot and TPC bits per slot over a radio frame;
- *Pd:* Received power per bit of DPDCH calculated from *X* bits per slot over a radio frame;
- *X:* the number of DPDCH bits per slot when transport format corresponds to full rate;
- *T:* Threshold of average received power ratio of DPDCH to DPCCH for transport format detection.

The decision rule can then be formulated as:

If *Pd/Pc >T* then:

- full rate transport format detected;

else

- zero rate transport format detected.

A.1.2 Blind transport format detection using CRC

For the multiple transport format case (the possible data rates are 0, …, (full rate)/r, …, full rate, and CRC is transmitted for all transport formats), blind transport format detection using CRC can be used.

At the transmitter, the data stream with variable number of bits from higher layers is block-encoded using a cyclic redundancy check (CRC) and then convolutionally encoded. CRC parity bits are attached just after the data stream with variable number of bits as shown in figure A.1.

The receiver knows only the possible transport formats (or the possible end bit position $\{n_{end}\}$) by Layer-3 negotiation. The receiver performs Viterbi-decoding on the soft decision sample sequence. The correct trellis path of the Viterbi-decoder ends at the zero state at the correct end bit position.

The blind transport format detection method using CRC traces back the surviving trellis path ending at the zero state (hypothetical trellis path) at each possible end bit position to recover the data sequence. For each recovered data sequence error-detection is performed by checking the CRC, and if there is no error, the recovered sequence is declared to be correct.

The following variable is defined:

$$s(n_{end}) = -10 \log \left((a_0(n_{end}) - a_{min}(n_{end})) / (a_{max}(n_{end}) - a_{min}(n_{end})) \right) \text{ [dB]} \quad \text{(Eq. 1)}$$

where $a_{max}(n_{end})$ and $a_{min}(n_{end})$ are the maximum and minimum path-metric values among all survivors at end bit position n_{end}, and $a_0(n_{end})$ is the path-metric value at zero state.

In order to reduce the probability of false detection (this happens if the selected path is wrong but the CRC misses the error detection), a path selection threshold D is introduced. The threshold D determines whether the hypothetical trellis path connected to the zero state should be traced back or not at each end bit position n_{end}. If the hypothetical trellis path connected to the zero state that satisfies:

$$s(n_{end}) \leq D \qquad \text{(Eq. 2)}$$

is found, the path is traced back to recover the frame data, where D is the path selection threshold and a design parameter.

If more than one end bit positions satisfying Eq. 2 is found, the end bit position which has minimum value of $s(n_{end})$ is declared to be correct. If no path satisfying Eq. 2 is found even after all possible end bit positions have been exhausted, the received frame data is declared to be in error.

Figure A-2 shows the procedure of blind transport format detection using CRC.

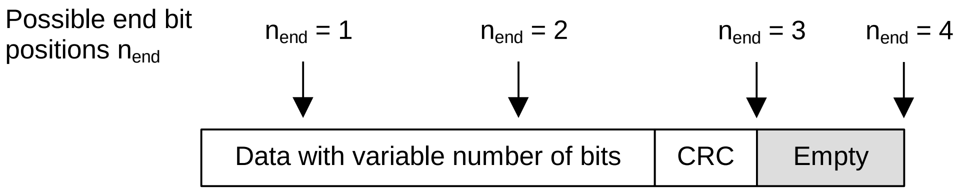


Figure A.1: An example of data with variable number of bits.
Four possible transport formats, and transmitted end bit position nend = 3

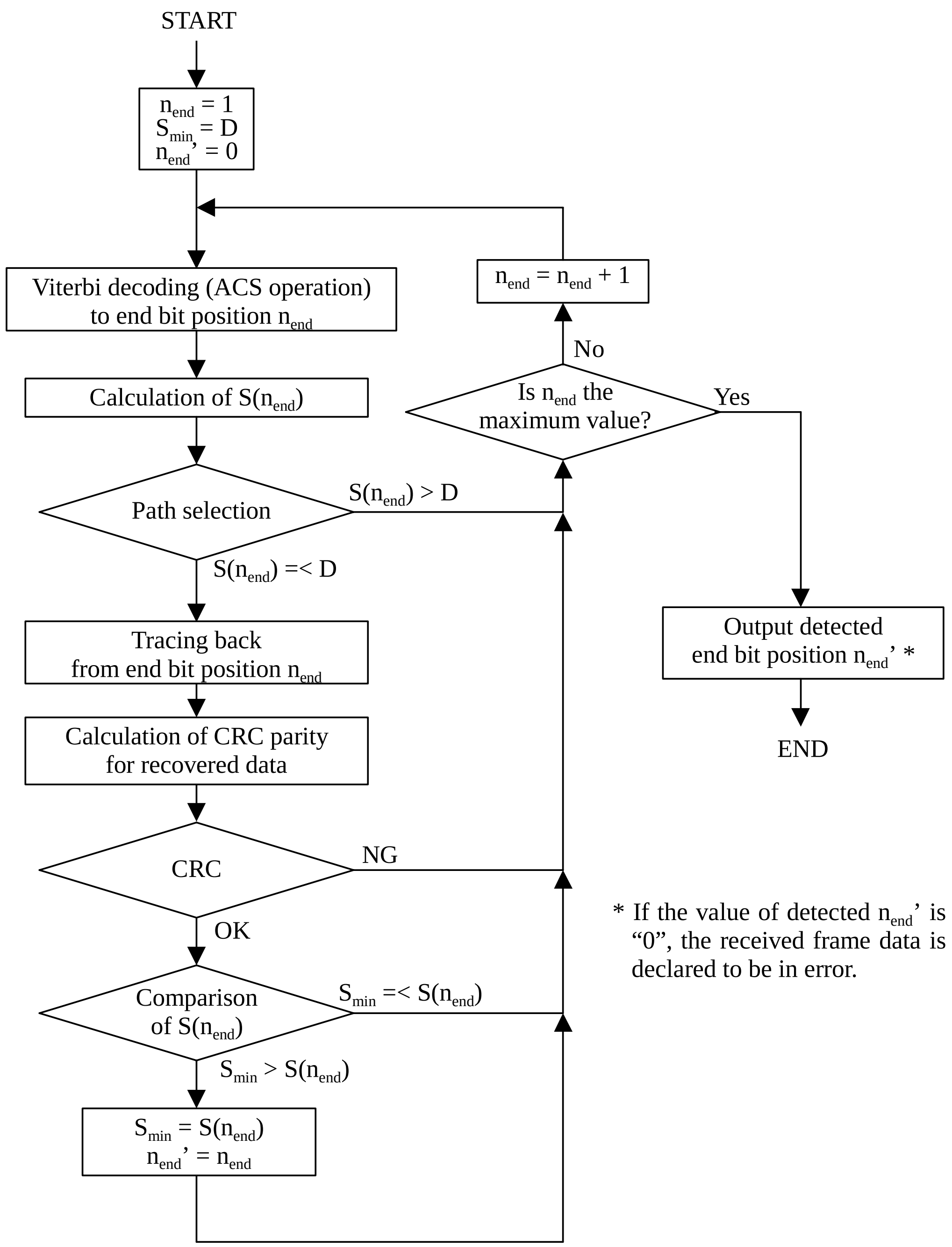


Figure A.2: Basic processing flow of blind transport format detection

Annex B (informative): Compressed mode idle lengths

The tables B.1-B.3 show the resulting idle lengths for different transmission gap lengths, UL/DL modes and DL frame types. The idle lengths given are calculated purely from the slot and frame structures and the UL/DL offset. They do not contain margins for e.g. synthesizer switching.

B.1 Idle lengths for DL, UL and DL+UL compressed mode

Table B.1: Parameters for DL compressed mode

<table>
<tr><th>TGL</th><th>DL Frame Type</th><th>Spreading Factor</th><th>Idle length [ms]</th><th>Transmission time Reduction method</th><th>Idle frame Combining</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3</td><td>A</td><td rowspan="12">512 – 4</td><td>1.73 – 1.99</td><td rowspan="12">Puncturing, Spreading factor division by 2 or Higher layer scheduling</td><td rowspan="2">(S)
(D) =(1,2) or (2,1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>B</td><td>1.60 – 1.86</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">4</td><td>A</td><td>2.40 – 2.66</td><td rowspan="2">(S)
(D) =(1,3), (2,2) or (3,1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>B</td><td>2.27 – 2.53</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">5</td><td>A</td><td>3.07 – 3.33</td><td rowspan="2">(S)
(D) = (1,4), (2,3), (3, 2) or (4,1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>B</td><td>2.93 – 3.19</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">7</td><td>A</td><td>4.40 – 4.66</td><td rowspan="2">(S)
(D)=(1,6), (2,5), (3,4), (4,3), (5,2) or (6,1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>B</td><td>4.27 – 4.53</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">10</td><td>A</td><td>6.40 – 6.66</td><td rowspan="2">(D)=(3,7), (4,6), (5,5), (6,4) or (7,3)</td></tr>
<tr><td>B</td><td>6.27 – 6.53</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">14</td><td>A</td><td>9.07 – 9.33</td><td rowspan="2">(D) =(7,7)</td></tr>
<tr><td>B</td><td>8.93 – 9.19</td></tr>
</table>

Table B.2: Parameters for UL compressed mode

<table>
<tr><th>TGL</th><th>Spreading Factor</th><th>Idle length [ms]</th><th>Transmission time Reduction method</th><th>Idle frame Combining</th></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td rowspan="6">256 – 4</td><td>2.00</td><td rowspan="6">Spreading factor division by 2 or Higher layer scheduling</td><td>(S)
(D) =(1,2) or (2,1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>2.67</td><td>(S)
(D) =(1,3), (2,2) or (3,1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>3.33</td><td>(S)
(D) = (1,4), (2,3), (3, 2) or (4,1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>4.67</td><td>(S)
(D)=(1,6), (2,5), (3,4), (4,3), (5,2) or (6,1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>6.67</td><td>(D)=(3,7), (4,6), (5,5), (6,4) or (7,3)</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td>9.33</td><td>(D) =(7,7)</td></tr>
</table>

Table B.3: Parameters for combined UL/DL compressed mode

TGL	DL Frame Type	Spreading Factor	Idle length [ms]	Transmission time Reduction method	Idle frame Combining
3	A or B	DL: 512 – 4 UL: 256 – 4	1.47 – 1.73	DL: Puncturing, Spreading factor division by 2 or Higher layer scheduling UL: Spreading factor division by 2 or Higher layer scheduling	(S) (D) =(1,2) or (2,1)
4			2.13 – 2.39		(S) (D) =(1,3), (2,2) or (3,1)
5			2.80 – 3.06		(S) (D) = (1,4), (2,3), (3, 2) or (4,1)
7			4.13 – 4.39		(S) (D)=(1,6), (2,5), (3,4), (4,3), (5,2) or (6,1)
10			6.13 – 6.39		(D)=(3,7), (4,6), (5,5), (6,4) or (7,3)
14			8.80 – 9.06		(D) =(7,7)

(S): Single-frame method as shown in figure 14 (1).

(D): Double-frame method as shown in figure 14 (2). (x,y) indicates x: the number of idle slots in the first frame, y: the number of idle slots in the second frame.

NOTE: Compressed mode by spreading factor reduction is not supported when SF=4 is used in normal mode

Annex C (informative): Change history

Change history							
Date	TSG #	TSG Doc.	CR	Rev	Subject/Comment	Old	New
	RAN_05	RP-99588	-		Approved at TSG RAN #5 and placed under Change Control	-	3.0.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99680	001	3	Correction of rate matching parameters for repetition after 1st unterleaving in 25.212	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99680	004	-	Changing the initial offset value for convolutional code rate matching	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99681	005	1	Introduction of compressed mode by higher layer scheduling	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99679	008	-	Editorial corrections to TS 25.212	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99680	009	-	Removal of SFN multiplexing	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99680	010	1	Clarification of bit separation and collection	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99680	011	2	Connection between TTI and CFN	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99680	012	2	Zero length transport blocks	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99679	014	-	Update of channel coding sections	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99680	016	-	Removal of TrCH restriction in DSCH CCTrCH	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99681	017	-	20 ms RACH message length	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99680	018	-	Minimum SF in UL	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99680	024	-	Rate matching parameter determination in DL and fixed positions	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99680	026	1	Corrections to TS 25.212	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99679	027	-	Modification of BTFD description in 25.212 Annex	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99681	028	-	TFCI coding and mapping including compressed mode	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	-	-	-		Change history was added by the editor	3.1.0	3.1.1
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	025	2	CR for parity bit attachment to 0 bit transport block	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	029	1	Limitations of blind transport format detection	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	034	1	Clarification of fixed position rate matching	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	035	1	Clarification of DL compressed mode	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	036	-	Reconfiguration of TFCS	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	037	1	Removal of fixed gap position in 25.212	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	038	2	Definition clarification for TS 25.212	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	039	1	Clarification on TFCI coding input	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	041	2	Correction of UL compressed mode by higher layer scheduling	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	042	5	Downlink Compressed Mode by puncturing	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	044	-	Modification of Turbo code internal interleaver	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	045	-	Editorial corrections	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	046	-	SF/2 method: DTX insertion after 2nd interleaver	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	047	1	TFCI coding for FDD	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	048	-	Mapping of TFCI in downlink compressed mode	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	049	-	Editorial changes to Annex A	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	050	-	Removal of rate matching attribute setting for RACH	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	052	-	Padding Function for Turbo coding of small blocks	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	055	2	Clarifications relating to DSCH	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000061	056	-	Editorial modification of uplink shifting parameter calculation for turbo code puncturing	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000062	059	1	Revision: Editorial correction to the calculation of Rate Matching parameters	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000062	060	1	Editorial changes of channel coding section	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000062	061	-	Removal of DL compressed mode by higher layer scheduling with fixed positions	3.1.1	3.2.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	066	1	Section 4.4.5 and table 9 is moved to informative annex	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	068	-	Editorial modifications of 25.212	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	069	-	Removal of BTFD for flexible positions in Release 99	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	070	1	Editorial modifications	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	071	1	Corrections and editorial modifications of 25.212 for 2nd insertion of DTX bits for CM	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	072	4	Corrections to 25.212 (Rate Matching, p-bit insertion, PhCH segmentation)	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	073	-	Editorial correction in 25.212 coding/multiplexing	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	074	2	Bit separation of the Turbo encoded data	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	076	1	Revision of code block segmentation description	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	077	-	Clarifications for TFCI coding	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	078	2	Clarifying the rate matching parameter setting for the RACH and BCH	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	080	-	Clarification on BTFD utilisation (single CCTrCH)	3.2.0	3.3.0

Change history							
Date	**TSG #**	**TSG Doc.**	**CR**	**Rev**	**Subject/Comment**	**Old**	**New**
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	081	-	Correction of order of checking TFC during flexible position RM parameter determination	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	082	-	Editorial corrections in channel coding section	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	083	-	Correction for bit separation and bit collection	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000266	084	1	Correction on the spreading factor selection for the RACH	3.2.0	3.3.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000341	079	-	Clarification of compressed mode terminology	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000341	085	1	Editorial corrections in Turbo code internal interleaver section	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000341	086	1	Clarification on DL slot format for compressed mode by SF/2	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000341	087	-	Corrections	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000341	088	1	Clarifications to TS 25.212	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000341	089	-	Correction regarding DSCH	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000341	090	-	Correction regarding CPCH	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000341	092	1	Bit separation and collection for rate matching	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000341	093	-	Puncturing Limit definition in WG1 specification	3.3.0	3.4.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000538	094	2	Correction of BTFD limitations	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000538	096	-	Compressed mode by puncturing	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000538	097	-	Clarification on the Ci formula	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000538	099	-	Editorial modification in RM section	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000538	100	1	Editorial corrections in TS 25.212	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000538	101	-	Correction to code block segmentation	3.4.0	3.5.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	-	-	-	Approved as Release 4 specification (v4.0.0) at TSG RAN #11	3.5.0	4.0.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010332	106	-	Correction of compressed mode by puncturing	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010332	108	1	Dual transport format detection	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010332	112	1	Correction for downlink rate matching for the DSCH	4.0.0	4.1.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010519	115	-	Correction of PDSCH spreading factor signalling	4.1.0	4.2.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010737	118	-	Clarification of compressed mode	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010737	122	-	Support of multiple CCTrChs of dedicated type	4.2.0	4.3.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020231	128	2	Removal of channel coding option “no coding” for FDD	4.3.0	4.4.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020054	123	4	Inclusion of flexible hard split mode TFCI operation	4.3.0	5.0.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020058	126	1	Changes to 25.212 for HSDPA work item	4.3.0	5.0.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020308	136	-	Downlink bit mapping	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	130	5	Correction of Errata noted by RAN1 delegates	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	131	2	Removal of inconsistencies and ambiguities in the HARQ description	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	132	-	Rate Matching and Channel Coding for HS-SCCH	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	137	-	Basis sequences for HS-DPCCH Channel Quality information code	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	145	5	UE specific masking for HS-SCCH part1	5.0.0	5.1.0
14/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020582	141	1	Bit scrambling for HS-DSCH	5.1.0	5.2.0
15/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020582	148		Physical channel mapping for HS-DPCCH	5.1.0	5.2.0
15/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020582	149		HARQ bit collection	5.1.0	5.2.0
15/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020582	150	1	Coding for HS-SCCH	5.1.0	5.2.0
15/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020582	151		Correction to UE specific masking for HS-SCCH part1	5.1.0	5.2.0
15/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020568	155	2	Clarification of the definition of layer 1 transport channel numbers	5.1.0	5.2.0
15/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020573	157		Numbering Corrections	5.1.0	5.2.0
15/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020645	158	1	Specification of H-RNTI to UE identity mapping	5.1.0	5.2.0
20/12/02	RAN_18	RP-020846	163	-	Correction of CQI index to bit mapping	5.2.0	5.3.0
20/12/02	RAN_18	RP-020846	164	-	Correction of mapping of HARQ-ACK	5.2.0	5.3.0
26/03/03	RAN_19	RP-030134	165	1	Correction of CQI index to bit mapping	5.3.0	5.4.0
26/03/03	RAN_19	RP-030134	166	3	Correction of bit scrambling of HS-DSCH	5.3.0	5.4.0
26/03/03	RAN_19	RP-030134			Correction of subscript for modulation scheme information	5.3.0	5.4.0
23/06/03	RAN_20	RP-030272	172	1	Clarification of TPC and Pilot transmission with STTD in compressed mode	5.4.0	5.5.0
23/06/03	RAN_20	RP-030272	173	2	Correction on the flexible TFCI coding in the DSCH hard split mode for Rel5	5.4.0	5.5.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030456	178	4	Clarification on Single Transport Format Detection	5.5.0	5.6.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030456	179	-	Correction on table number in first interleave description	5.5.0	5.6.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030456	180	3	Broadening the conditions that require UEs to perform BTFD for the case of HS-DSCH reception	5.5.0	5.6.0
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030647	183	-	Clarification of the CRC attachment procedure for HS-SCCH	5.6.0	5.7.0
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030647	184	1	Correction of UE identity notation	5.6.0	5.7.0
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030644	185	-	HARQ process identifier mapping	5.6.0	5.7.0
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030712	186		Alignment of terminology across 3GPP documentation	5.6.0	5.7.0
13/01/04	RAN_22	-	-	-	Created for M.1457 update	5.7.0	6.0.0
23/03/04	RAN_23	RP-040085	187	1	CCTrCH definition extension to HS-DSCH	6.0.0	6.1.0
09/06/04	RAN_24	RP-040230	191	1	Clarification of Channelization Code-Set Mapping	6.1.0	6.2.0

3GPP TSG-RAN WG1 Meeting #39 **Tdoc ⌘ R1-041516**
Yokohama, Japan, November 15-19, 2004

CR-Form-v7.1

CHANGE REQUEST

⌘	**25.213**	**CR**	**071**	⌘ **rev**	**2**	⌘ Current version:	**6.0.0** ⌘

*For **HELP** on using this form, see bottom of this page or look at the pop-up text over the ⌘ symbols.*

Proposed change affects: UICC apps⌘ [ ] ME [X] Radio Access Network [X] Core Network [ ]

Title:	⌘	Introduction of E-DCH		
Source:	⌘	RAN WG1		
Work item code:	⌘	EDCH-Phys	***Date:*** ⌘	25/11/2004
Category:	⌘	**B**	***Release:*** ⌘	Rel-6
		Use one of the following categories: ***F*** *(correction)* ***A*** *(corresponds to a correction in an earlier release)* ***B*** *(addition of feature),* ***C*** *(functional modification of feature)* ***D*** *(editorial modification)* Detailed explanations of the above categories can be found in 3GPP TR 21.900.		*Use one of the following releases:* *Ph2 (GSM Phase 2)* *R96 (Release 1996)* *R97 (Release 1997)* *R98 (Release 1998)* *R99 (Release 1999)* *Rel-4 (Release 4)* *Rel-5 (Release 5)* *Rel-6 (Release 6)* *Rel-7 (Release 7)*

Reason for change:	⌘	Introduction of E-DCH in Rel-6.
Summary of change:	⌘	
Consequences if not approved:	⌘	E-DCH will not be completely specified in Rel-6.

Clauses affected:	⌘	2, 3, 4, 5				
		Y	**N**			
Other specs affected:	⌘	X		Other core specifications	⌘	25.201, 25.211, 25.212, 25.214, 25.215
				Test specifications		
				O&M Specifications		
Other comments:	⌘					

How to create CRs using this form:

Comprehensive information and tips about how to create CRs can be found at http://www.3gpp.org/specs/CR.htm. Below is a brief summary:

1) Fill out the above form. The symbols above marked ⌘ contain pop-up help information about the field that they are closest to.

2) Obtain the latest version for the release of the specification to which the change is proposed. Use the MS Word "revision marks" feature (also known as "track changes") when making the changes. All 3GPP specifications can be downloaded from the 3GPP server under ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/specs/ For the latest version, look for the directory name with the latest date e.g. 2001-03 contains the specifications resulting from the March 2001 TSG meetings.

3) With "track changes" disabled, paste the entire CR form (use CTRL-A to select it) into the specification just in front of the clause containing the first piece of changed text. Delete those parts of the specification which are not relevant to the change request.

2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies. In the case of a reference to a 3GPP document (including a GSM document), a non-specific reference implicitly refers to the latest version of that document *in the same Release as the present document*.

[1] 3GPP TS 25.201: "Physical layer - general description".

[2] 3GPP TS 25.211: "Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (FDD)."

[3] 3GPP TS 25.101: "UE Radio transmission and Reception (FDD)".

[4] 3GPP TS 25.104: "UTRA (BS) FDD; Radio transmission and Reception".

[5] 3GPP TS 25.308: "UTRA High Speed Downlink Packet Access (HSDPA); Overall description".

[6] 3GPP TS 25.214: "Physical layer procedures (FDD)".

[7] 3GPP TS 25.212: "Multiplexing and channel coding (FDD)".

3 Symbols and abbreviations

3.1 Symbols

For the purposes of the present document, the following symbols apply:

$C_{ch,SF,n}$: n:th channelisation code with spreading factor SF
$C_{pre,n,s}$: PRACH preamble code for *n*:th preamble scrambling code and signature *s*
$C_{c\text{-}acc,n,s}$: PCPCH access preamble code for *n*:th preamble scrambling code and signature *s*
$C_{c\text{-}cd,n,s}$: PCPCH CD preamble code for *n*:th preamble scrambling code and signature *s*
$C_{sig,s}$: PRACH/PCPCH signature code for signature *s*
$S_{dpch,n}$: *n*:th DPCCH/DPDCH uplink scrambling code
$S_{r\text{-}pre,n}$: *n*:th PRACH preamble scrambling code
$S_{r\text{-}msg,n}$: *n*:th PRACH message scrambling code
$S_{c\text{-}acc}$: *n*:th PCPCH access preamble scrambling code
$S_{c\text{-}cd}$: *n*:th PCPCH CD preamble scrambling code
$S_{c\text{-}msg,n}$: *n*:th PCPCH message scrambling code
$S_{dl,n}$: DL scrambling code
C_{psc}: PSC code
$C_{ssc,n}$: n:th SSC code

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the following abbreviations apply:

16QAM 16 Quadrature Amplitude Modulation

AICH	Acquisition Indicator Channel
AP	Access Preamble
BCH	Broadcast Control Channel
CCPCH	Common Control Physical Channel
CD	Collision Detection
CPCH	Common Packet Channel
CPICH	Common Pilot Channel
DCH	Dedicated Channel
DPCH	Dedicated Physical Channel
DPCCH	Dedicated Physical Control Channel
DPDCH	Dedicated Physical Data Channel
E-AGCH	E-DCH Absolute Grant Channel
E-DPCCH	E-DCH Dedicated Physical Control Channel
E-DPDCH	E-DCH Dedicated Physical Data Channel
E-HICH	E-DCH Hybrid ARQ Indicator Channel
E-RGCH	E-DCH Relative Grant Channel
FDD	Frequency Division Duplex
HS-DPCCH	Dedicated Physical Control Channel (uplink) for HS-DSCH
HS-DSCH	High Speed Downlink Shared Channel
HS-PDSCH	High Speed Physical Downlink Shared Channel
HS-SCCH	Shared Control Physical Channel for HS-DSCH
Mcps	Mega Chip Per Second
OVSF	Orthogonal Variable Spreading Factor (codes)
PDSCH	Physical Dedicated Shared Channel
PICH	Page Indication Channel
PRACH	Physical Random Access Channel
PSC	Primary Synchronisation Code
RACH	Random Access Channel
SCH	Synchronisation Channel
SSC	Secondary Synchronisation Code
SF	Spreading Factor
UE	User Equipment

4 Uplink spreading and modulation

4.1 Overview

Spreading is applied to the physical channels. It consists of two operations. The first is the channelisation operation, which transforms every data symbol into a number of chips, thus increasing the bandwidth of the signal. The number of chips per data symbol is called the Spreading Factor (SF). The second operation is the scrambling operation, where a scrambling code is applied to the spread signal.

With the channelisation, data symbols on so-called I- and Q-branches are independently multiplied with an OVSF code. With the scrambling operation, the resultant signals on the I- and Q-branches are further multiplied by complex-valued scrambling code, where I and Q denote real and imaginary parts, respectively.

4.2 Spreading

4.2.1 ~~DPCCH/DPDCH/HS-DPCCH~~Dedicated physical channels

The possible combinations of maximum number of the respective dedicated physical channels which a UE may support simultaneously in addition to the DPCCH are specified in table 0. The actual UE capability may be lower than the values specified in table 0; the actual dedicated physical channel configuration is indicated by higher layer signalling.

Table 0: Maximum number of simultaneous uplink dedicated channels

Configuration #	DPDCH	HS-DPCCH	E-DPDCH	E-DPCCH
1	6	1	-	-
2	1	1	2	1
3	-	1	4	1

Figure 1 illustrates the principle of the uplink spreading of uplink dedicated physical channels (of DPCCH, DPDCHs, - and HS-DPCCH, E-DPCCH, E-DPDCHs).

The binary input sequences of all physical channels are converted to real valued sequencesDPCCH, DPDCHs and HS-DPCCH to be spread are represented by real-valued sequences, i.e. the binary value "0" is mapped to the real value +1, the binary value "1" is mapped to the real value –1, and the value "DTX" (HS-DPCCH only) is mapped to the real value –0.

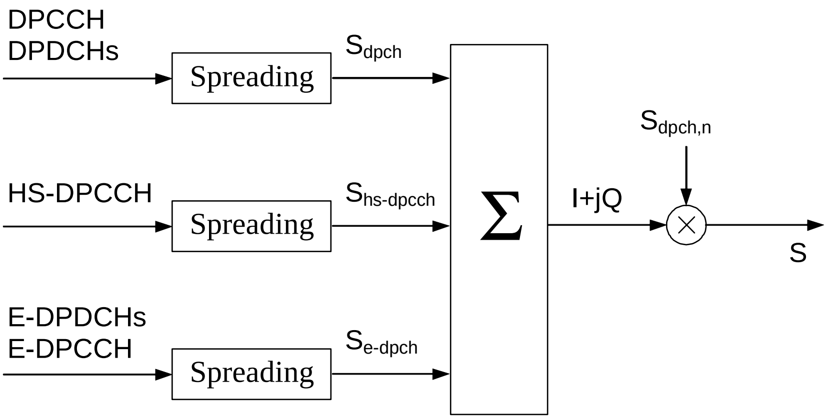


Figure 1: Spreading for uplink dedicated channels

The spreading operation is specified in subclauses 4.2.1.1 to 4.2.1.3 for each of the dedicated physical channels; it includes a spreading stage, a weighting stage, and an IQ mapping stage. In the process, the streams of real-valued chips on the I and Q branches are summed; this results in a complex-valued stream of chips for each set of channels.

As described in figure 1, the resulting complex-valued streams S_{dpch}, $S_{hs\text{-}dpcch}$ and $S_{e\text{-}dpch}$ are summed into a single complex-valued stream which is then scrambled by the complex-valued scrambling code $S_{dpch,n}$. The scrambling code shall be applied aligned with the radio frames, i.e. the first scrambling chip corresponds to the beginning of a radio frame.

NOTE: Although subclause 4.2.1 has been reorganized in this release, the spreading operation for the DPCCH, DPDCH remains unchanged as compared to the previous release.

4.2.1.1 DPCCH/DPDCH

Figure 1a illustrates the spreading operation for the uplink DPCCH and DPDCHs.

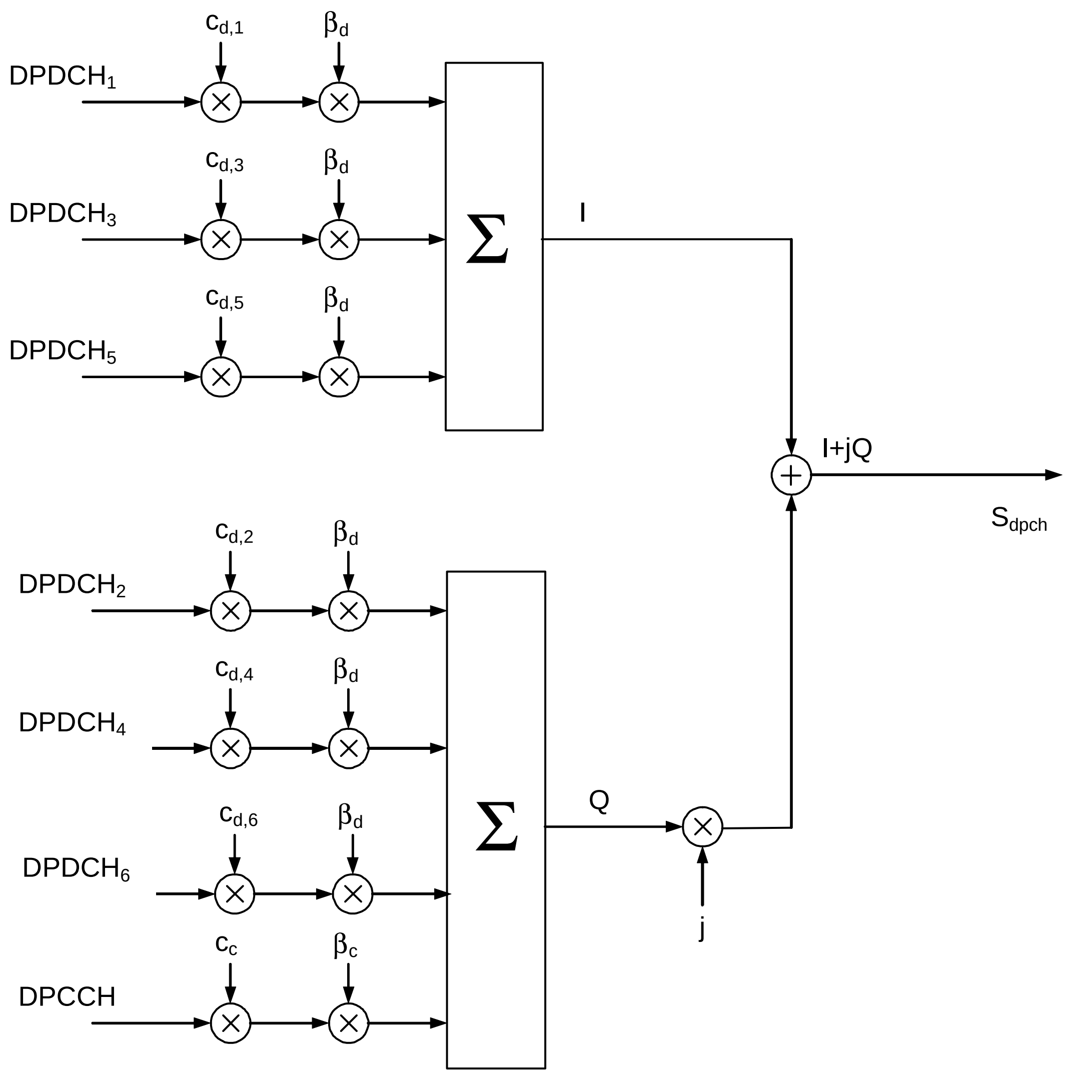


Figure 1A: Spreading for uplink DPCCH/DPDCHs

The DPCCH is spread to the chip rate by the channelisation code c_c. The *n*:th DPDCH called $DPDCH_n$ is spread to the chip rate by the channelisation code $c_{d,n}$.

After channelisation, the real-valued spread signals are weighted by gain factors, β_c for DPCCH, β_d for all DPDCHs.

The β_c and β_d values are signalled by higher layers or calculated as described in [6] 5.1.2.5. At every instant in time, at least one of the values β_c and β_d has the amplitude 1.0. The β_c and β_d values are quantized into 4 bit words. The quantization steps are given in table 1.

Table 1: The quantization of the gain parameters

Signalling values for β_c and β_d	Quantized amplitude ratios β_c and β_d
15	1.0
14	14/15
13	13/15
12	12/15
11	11/15
10	10/15
9	9/15
8	8/15
7	7/15
6	6/15
5	5/15
4	4/15
3	3/15
2	2/15
1	1/15
0	Switch off

4.2.1.2 HS-DPCCH

Figure 1b illustrates the spreading operation for the HS-DPCCH.

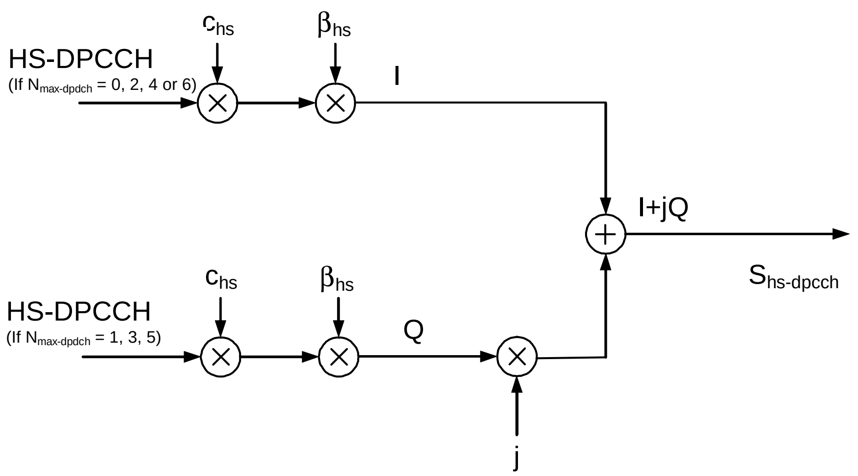


Figure 1B: Spreading for uplink HS-DPCCH

The HS-DPCCH ~~is~~ shall be spread to the chip rate by the channelisation code c_{hs}.

After channelisation, the real-valued spread signals are weighted by gain factor β_{hs}

The β_{hs} value is derived from the power offset Δ_{ACK}, Δ_{NACK} and Δ_{CQI}, which are signalled by higher layers as described in [6] 5.1.2.5A.

The relative power offsets Δ_{ACK}, Δ_{NACK} and Δ_{CQI} are quantized into amplitude ratios as shown in Table 1A.

Table 1A: The quantization of the power offset

Signalling values for Δ_{ACK}, Δ_{NACK} and Δ_{CQI}	Quantized amplitude ratios for $10^{\left(\frac{\Delta_{HS-DPCCH}}{20}\right)}$
8	30/15
7	24/15
6	19/15
5	15/15
4	12/15
3	9/15
2	8/15
1	6/15
0	5/15

HS-DPCCH shall be mapped to the I branch in case that the maximum number of DPDCH over all the TFCs in the TFCS (defined as $N_{max-dpdch}$) is 0, 2, 4 or 6, and to the Q branch otherwise ($N_{max-dpdch}$ =1, 3 or 5). The I/Q mapping of HS-DPCCH is not changed due to frame-by-frame TFCI change or temporary TFC restrictions.

4.2.1.3 E-DPDCH/E-DPCCH

Figure 1c illustrates the spreading operation for the E-DPDCHs and the E-DPCCH.

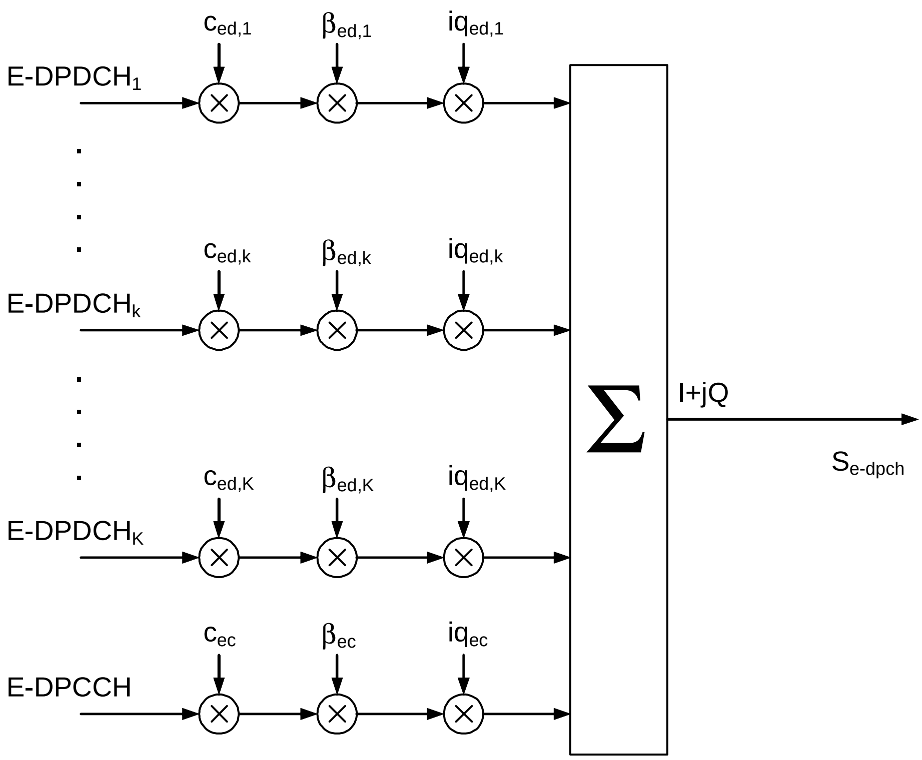


Figure 1c: Spreading for E-DPDCH/E-DPCCH

The E-DPCCH shall be spread to the chip rate by the channelisation code c_{ec}. The *k*:th E-DPDCH, denominated $E\text{-}DPDCH_k$, shall be spread to the chip rate using channelisation code $c_{ed,k}$.

After channelisation, the real-valued spread E-DPCCH and $E\text{-}DPDCH_k$ signals shall respectively be weighted by gain factor β_{ec} and $\beta_{ed,k}$.

The value of β_{ec} shall be derived as specified in [6] based on the power offset Δ_{E-TFCI} signalled by higher layers. The relative power offsets Δ_{E-TFCI} are quantized into amplitude ratios as specified in Table 1B.

Table 1B: Quantization for $\Delta_{E\text{-}TFCI}$

Signalling values for $\Delta_{E\text{-}TFCI}$	Quantized amplitude ratios for $10^{\left(\frac{\Delta_{E-DPCCH}}{20}\right)}$
blank	blank

The value of β_{ed} shall be computed as specified in [6].

The value for $\beta_{ed,k}$ shall be set to $\sqrt{2}\times\beta_{ed}$ if the spreading factor for E-DPDCH$_k$ is 2 and to β_{ed} otherwise.

After weighting, the real-valued spread signals shall be mapped to the I branch or the Q branch according to the iq_{ec} value for the E-DPCCH and to $iq_{ed,k}$ for E-DPDCH$_k$ and summed together.

The E-DPCCH shall always be mapped to the I branch, i.e. $iq_{ec} = 1$.

The IQ branch mapping for the E-DPDCHs depends on $N_{max\text{-}dpdch}$ and on whether an HS-DSCH is configured for the UE; the IQ branch mapping shall be as specified in table 1C.

Table 1C: IQ branch mapping for E-DPDCH

$N_{max\text{-}dpdch}$	HS-DSCH configured	E-DPDCH$_k$	$iq_{ed,k}$
0	No/Yes	E-DPDCH$_1$	j
		E-DPDCH$_2$	1
		E-DPDCH$_3$	j
		E-DPDCH$_4$	1
1	No	E-DPDCH$_1$	j
		E-DPDCH$_2$	1
1	Yes	E-DPDCH$_1$	1
		E-DPDCH$_2$	j

NOTE: In case the UE transmits more than 2 E-DPDCHs, the UE then always transmits E-DPDCH$_3$ and E-DPDCH$_4$ simultaneously

One DPCCH, up to six parallel DPDCHs, and one HS-DPCCH can be transmitted simultaneously, i.e. $1 \le n \le 6$.

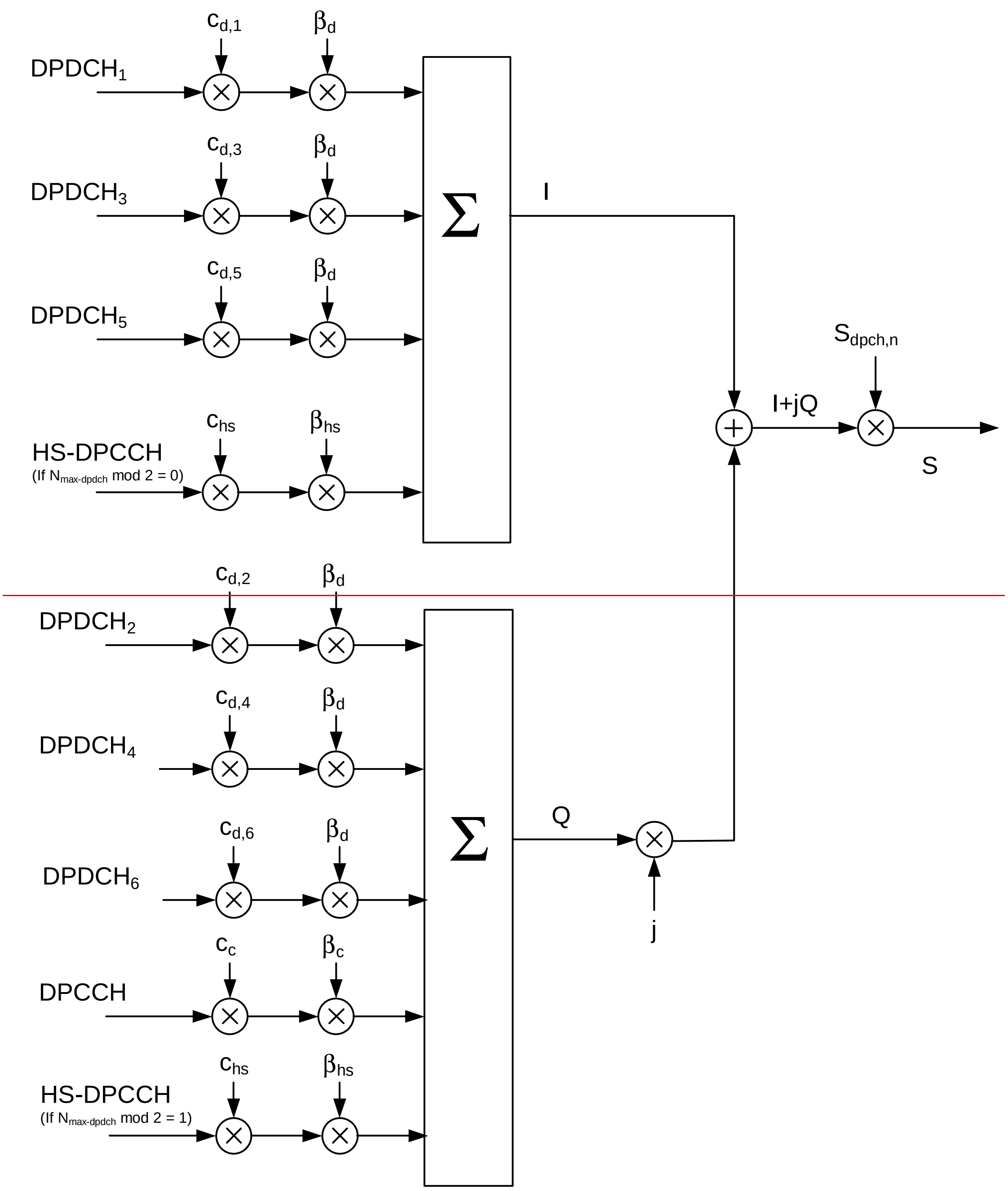


Figure 1: Spreading for uplink DPCCH, DPDCHs and HS-DPCCH

After channelisation, the real-valued spread signals are weighted by gain factors, β_c for DPCCH, β_d for all DPDCHs and β_{hs} for HS-DPCCH (if one is active).

The β_c and β_d values are signalled by higher layers or calculated as described in [6] 5.1.2.5. At every instant in time, at least one of the values β_c and β_d has the amplitude 1.0. The β_c and β_d values are quantized into 4 bit words. The quantization steps are given in table 1.

Table 1: The quantization of the gain parameters

Signalling values for β_c and β_d	Quantized amplitude ratios β_c and β_d
15	1.0
14	14/15
13	13/15
12	12/15
11	11/15
10	10/15
9	9/15
8	8/15
7	7/15
6	6/15
5	5/15
4	4/15
3	3/15
2	2/15
1	1/15
0	Switch off

The β_{hs} value is derived from the power offset Δ_{ACK}, Δ_{NACK} and Δ_{CQI}, which are signalled by higher layers as described in [6] 5.1.2.5A.

The relative power offsets Δ_{ACK}, Δ_{NACK} and Δ_{CQI} are quantized into amplitude ratios as shown in Table 1A.

Table 1A: The quantization of the power offset

Signalling values for Δ_{ACK}, Δ_{NACK} and Δ_{CQI}	Quantized amplitude ratios for $10^{\left(\frac{\Delta_{HS-DPCCH}}{20}\right)}$
8	30/15
7	24/15
6	19/15
5	15/15
4	12/15
3	9/15
2	8/15
1	6/15
0	5/15

After the weighting, the stream of real-valued chips on the I- and Q-branches are then summed and treated as a complex-valued stream of chips. This complex-valued signal is then scrambled by the complex-valued scrambling code $S_{dpch,n}$. The scrambling code is applied aligned with the radio frames, i.e. the first scrambling chip corresponds to the beginning of a radio frame. HS-DPCCH is mapped to the I branch in case that the maximum number of DPDCH over all the TFCs in the TFCS (defined as $N_{max-dpdch}$) is even, and mapped to the Q branch otherwise. The I/Q mapping of HS-DPCCH is not changed due to frame-by-frame TFCI change or temporary TFC restrictions.

4.2.2 PRACH

4.2.2.1 PRACH preamble part

The PRACH preamble part consists of a complex-valued code, described in sectionsubclause 4.3.3.

4.2.2.2 PRACH message part

Figure 2 illustrates the principle of the spreading and scrambling of the PRACH message part, consisting of data and control parts. The binary control and data parts to be spread are represented by real-valued sequences, i.e. the binary value "0" is mapped to the real value +1, while the binary value "1" is mapped to the real value –1. The control part is spread to the chip rate by the channelisation code c_c, while the data part is spread to the chip rate by the channelisation code c_d.

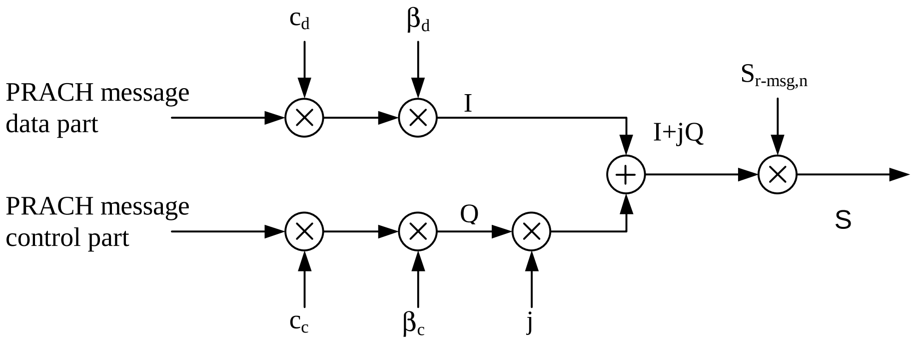


Figure 2: Spreading of PRACH message part

After channelisation, the real-valued spread signals are weighted by gain factors, β_c for the control part and β_d for the data part. At every instant in time, at least one of the values β_c and β_d has the amplitude 1.0. The β-values are quantized into 4 bit words. The quantization steps are given in ~~section~~subclause 4.2.1.

After the weighting, the stream of real-valued chips on the I- and Q-branches are treated as a complex-valued stream of chips. This complex-valued signal is then scrambled by the complex-valued scrambling code $S_{r\text{-}msg,n}$. The 10 ms scrambling code is applied aligned with the 10 ms message part radio frames, i.e. the first scrambling chip corresponds to the beginning of a message part radio frame.

4.2.3 PCPCH

4.2.3.1 PCPCH preamble part

The PCPCH preamble part consists of a complex-valued code, described in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.4.

4.2.3.2 PCPCH message part

Figure 3 illustrates the principle of the spreading of the PCPCH message part, consisting of data and control parts. The binary control and data parts to be spread are represented by real-valued sequences, i.e. the binary value "0" is mapped to the real value +1, while the binary value "1" is mapped to the real value –1. The control part is spread to the chip rate by the channelisation code c_c, while the data part is spread to the chip rate by the channelisation code c_d.

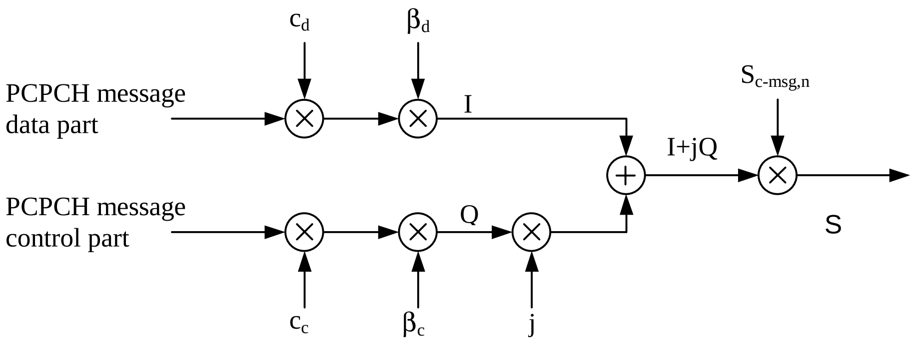


Figure 3: Spreading of PCPCH message part

After channelisation, the real-valued spread signals are weighted by gain factors, β_c for the control part and β_d for the data part. At every instant in time, at least one of the values β_c and β_d has the amplitude 1.0. The β-values are quantized into 4 bit words. The quantization steps are given in ~~section~~subclause 4.2.1.

After the weighting, the stream of real-valued chips on the I- and Q-branches are treated as a complex-valued stream of chips. This complex-valued signal is then scrambled by the complex-valued scrambling code $S_{c\text{-}msg,n}$. The 10 ms scrambling code is applied aligned with the 10 ms message part radio frames, i.e. the first scrambling chip corresponds to the beginning of a message part radio frame.

4.3 Code generation and allocation

4.3.1 Channelisation codes

4.3.1.1 Code definition

The channelisation codes of figure 1 are Orthogonal Variable Spreading Factor (OVSF) codes that preserve the orthogonality between a user's different physical channels. The OVSF codes can be defined using the code tree of figure 4.

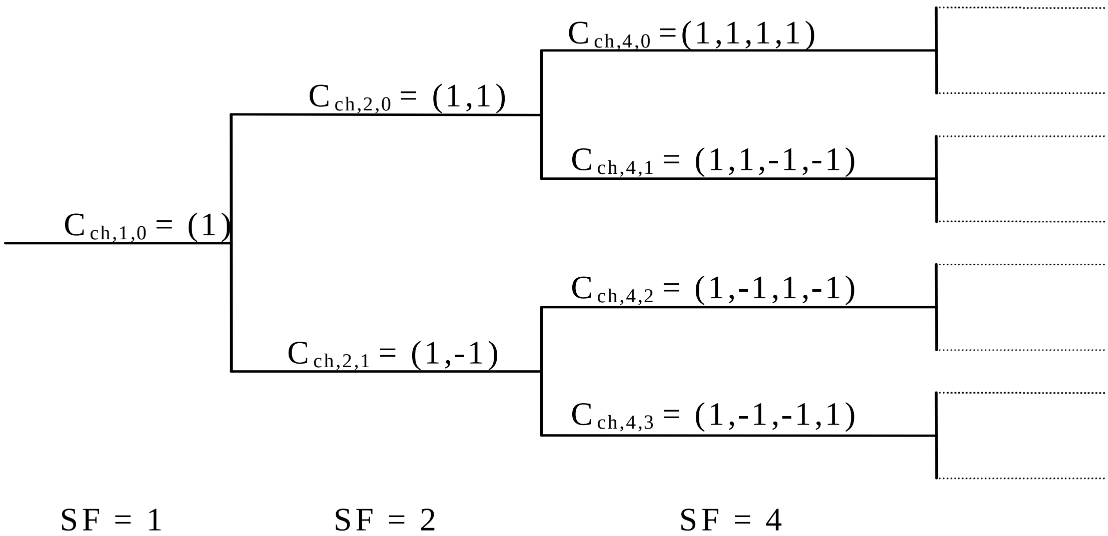


Figure 4: Code-tree for generation of Orthogonal Variable Spreading Factor (OVSF) codes

In figure 4, the channelisation codes are uniquely described as $C_{ch,SF,k}$, where SF is the spreading factor of the code and k is the code number, $0 \le k \le SF-1$.

Each level in the code tree defines channelisation codes of length SF, corresponding to a spreading factor of SF in figure 4.

The generation method for the channelisation code is defined as:

$$C_{ch,1,0} = 1,$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} C_{ch,2,0} \\ C_{ch,2,1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} C_{ch,1,0} & C_{ch,1,0} \\ C_{ch,1,0} & -C_{ch,1,0} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} C_{ch,2^{(n+1)},0} \\ C_{ch,2^{(n+1)},1} \\ C_{ch,2^{(n+1)},2} \\ C_{ch,2^{(n+1)},3} \\ \vdots \\ C_{ch,2^{(n+1)},2^{(n+1)}-2} \\ C_{ch,2^{(n+1)},2^{(n+1)}-1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} C_{ch,2^n,0} & C_{ch,2^n,0} \\ C_{ch,2^n,0} & -C_{ch,2^n,0} \\ C_{ch,2^n,1} & C_{ch,2^n,1} \\ C_{ch,2^n,1} & -C_{ch,2^n,1} \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ C_{ch,2^n,2^n-1} & C_{ch,2^n,2^n-1} \\ C_{ch,2^n,2^n-1} & -C_{ch,2^n,2^n-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

The leftmost value in each channelisation code word corresponds to the chip transmitted first in time.

4.3.1.2 Code allocation for dedicated physical channels

NOTE: Although subclause 4.3.1.2 has been reorganized in this release, the spreading operation for DPCCH and DPDCH remains unchanged as compared to the previous release.

4.3.1.2.1 Code allocation for DPCCH/DPDCH/HS-DPCCH

For the DPCCH , and DPDCHs and HS-DPCCH the following applies:

- The DPCCH is shall always be spread by code $c_c = C_{ch,256,0}$.

The HS-DPCCH is spread by code C_{ch} written in table 1A.

Table 1A: channelization code of HS-DPCCH

Nmax-dpdch (as defined in subclause 4.2.1)	Channelization code C_{ch}
1	$C_{ch,256,64}$
2,4,6	$C_{ch,256,1}$
3,5	$C_{ch,256,32}$

- When only one DPDCH is to be transmitted, $DPDCH_1$ is shall be spread by code $c_{d,1} = C_{ch,SF,k}$ where SF is the spreading factor of $DPDCH_1$ and k= SF / 4.

- When more than one DPDCH is to be transmitted, all DPDCHs have spreading factors equal to 4. $DPDCH_n$ is shall be spread by the the code $c_{d,n} = C_{ch,4,k}$, where $k = 1$ if $n \in \{1, 2\}$, $k = 3$ if $n \in \{3, 4\}$, and $k = 2$ if $n \in \{5, 6\}$.

If a power control preamble is used to initialise a DCH, the channelisation code for the DPCCH during the power control preamble shall be the same as that to be used afterwards.

4.3.1.2.2 Code allocation for HS-DPCCH

The HS-DPCCH shall be spread with code c_{hs} as specified in table 1D.

Table 1D: channelization code of HS-DPCCH

$N_{max-dpdch}$ (as defined in subclause 4.2.1)	Channelization code c_{hs}
0	$C_{ch,256,33}$
1	$C_{ch,256,64}$
2,4,6	$C_{ch,256,1}$
3,5	$C_{ch,256,32}$

4.3.1.2.3 Code allocation for E-DPCCH/E-DPDCH

The E-DPCCH shall be spread with channelization code $c_{ec} = C_{ch,256,1}$.

$E\text{-}DPDCH_k$ shall be spread with channelization code $c_{ed,k}$. The sequence $c_{ed,k}$ depends on $N_{max-dpdch}$ and the spreading factor selected for the corresponding frame or sub-frame as specified in [7]; it shall be selected according to table 1E.

Table 1E: Channelization code for E-DPDCH

$N_{max-dpdch}$	$E\text{-}DPDCH_k$	Channelization code $C_{ed,k}$
0	$E\text{-}DPDCH_1$	$C_{ch,SF,SF/4}$ if $SF \geq 4$ $C_{ch,2,1}$ if $SF = 2$
	$E\text{-}DPDCH_2$	$C_{ch,4,1}$ if $SF = 4$ $C_{ch,2,1}$ if $SF = 2$
	$E\text{-}DPDCH_3$ $E\text{-}DPDCH_4$	$C_{ch,4,1}$
1	$E\text{-}DPDCH_1$	$C_{ch,SF,SF/2}$
	$E\text{-}DPDCH_2$	$C_{ch,4,2}$ if $SF = 4$ $C_{ch,2,1}$ if $SF = 2$

NOTE: When more than one E-DPDCH is transmitted, the respective channelization codes used for $E\text{-}DPDCH_1$ and $E\text{-}DPDCH_2$ are always the same.

4.3.1.3 Code allocation for PRACH message part

The preamble signature s, $0 \leq s \leq 15$, points to one of the 16 nodes in the code-tree that corresponds to channelisation codes of length 16. The sub-tree below the specified node is used for spreading of the message part. The control part is spread with the channelisation code c_c (as shown in ~~section~~subclause 4.2.2.2) of spreading factor 256 in the lowest branch of the sub-tree, i.e. $c_c = C_{ch,256,m}$ where m = 16×s + 15. The data part uses any of the channelisation codes from spreading factor 32 to 256 in the upper-most branch of the sub-tree. To be exact, the data part is spread by channelisation code $c_d = C_{ch,SF,m}$ and SF is the spreading factor used for the data part and m = SF×s/16.

4.3.1.4 Code allocation for PCPCH message part

For the control part and data part the following applies:

- The control part is always spread by code $c_c=C_{ch,256,0}$.
- The data part is spread by code $c_d=C_{ch,SF,k}$ where SF is the spreading factor of the data part and k=SF/4.

The data part may use the code from spreading factor 4 to 256. A UE is allowed to increase SF during the message transmission on a frame by frame basis.

4.3.1.5 Channelisation code for PCPCH power control preamble

The channelisation code for the PCPCH power control preamble is the same as that used for the control part of the message part, as described in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.1.4 above.

4.3.2 Scrambling codes

4.3.2.1 General

All uplink physical channels ~~are~~ shall be scrambled ~~subjected to scrambling~~ with a complex-valued scrambling code. The dedicated physical channels ~~DPCCH/DPDCH/HS-DPCCH~~ may be scrambled by either a long or a short scrambling code~~s~~, defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.4. The PRACH message part ~~is~~ shall be scrambled with a long scrambling code, defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.5. ~~Also t~~ The PCPCH message part ~~is~~ shall be scrambled with a long scrambling code, defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.6.

There are 2^{24} long and 2^{24} short uplink scrambling codes. Uplink scrambling codes are assigned by higher layers.

The long scrambling code is built from constituent long sequences defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.2, while the constituent short sequences used to build the short scrambling code are defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.3.

4.3.2.2 Long scrambling sequence

The long scrambling sequences $c_{long,1,n}$ and $c_{long,2,n}$ are constructed from position wise modulo 2 sum of 38400 chip segments of two binary *m*-sequences generated by means of two generator polynomials of degree 25. Let *x*, and *y* be the two *m*-sequences respectively. The *x* sequence is constructed using the primitive (over GF(2)) polynomial $X^{25}+X^3+1$. The *y* sequence is constructed using the polynomial $X^{25}+X^3+X^2+X+1$. The resulting sequences thus constitute segments of a set of Gold sequences.

The sequence $c_{long,2,n}$ is a 16777232 chip shifted version of the sequence $c_{long,1,n}$.

Let $n_{23} \dots n_0$ be the 24 bit binary representation of the scrambling sequence number *n* with n_0 being the least significant bit. The *x* sequence depends on the chosen scrambling sequence number *n* and is denoted x_n, in the sequel. Furthermore, let $x_n(i)$ and $y(i)$ denote the *i*:th symbol of the sequence x_n and *y*, respectively.

The *m*-sequences x_n and *y* are constructed as:

Initial conditions:

- $x_n(0)=n_0$, $x_n(1)= n_1$, … $=x_n(22)= n_{22}$,$x_n(23)= n_{23}$, $x_n(24)=1$.
- y(0)=y(1)= … =y(23)= y(24)=1.

Recursive definition of subsequent symbols:

- $x_n(i+25) =x_n(i+3) + x_n(i)$ modulo 2, i=0,…, 2^{25}-27.
- y(i+25) = y(i+3)+y(i+2) +y(i+1) +y(i) modulo 2, i=0,…, 2^{25}-27.

Define the binary Gold sequence z_n by:

- $z_n(i) = x_n(i) + y(i)$ modulo 2, $i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 2^{25}-2$.

The real valued Gold sequence Z_n is defined by:

$$Z_n(i) = \begin{cases} +1 & if \ \ z_n(i) = 0 \\ -1 & if \ \ z_n(i) = 1 \end{cases} \quad for \ \ i = 0,1,\ldots,2^{25}-2.$$

Now, the real-valued long scrambling sequences $c_{long,1,n}$ and $c_{long,2,n}$ are defined as follows:

$$c_{long,1,n}(i) = Z_n(i), \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 2^{25} - 2 \text{ and}$$

$$c_{long,2,n}(i) = Z_n((i + 16777232) \text{ modulo } (2^{25} - 1)), \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 2^{25} - 2.$$

Finally, the complex-valued long scrambling sequence $C_{long,\ n}$, is defined as:

$$C_{long,n}(i) = c_{long,1,n}(i)\left(1 + j(-1)^i c_{long,2,n}(2\lfloor i/2 \rfloor)\right)$$

where $i = 0, 1, \dots, 2^{25} - 2$ and $\lfloor\ \rfloor$ denotes rounding to nearest lower integer.

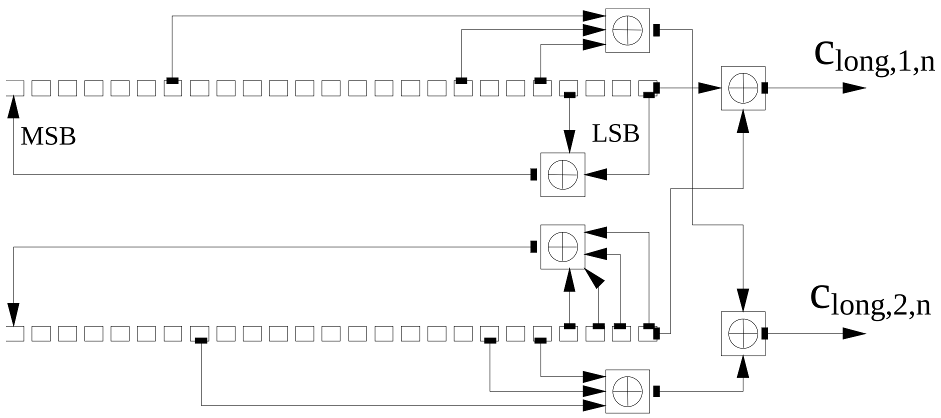


Figure 5: Configuration of uplink scrambling sequence generator

4.3.2.3 Short scrambling sequence

The short scrambling sequences $c_{\text{short},1,n}(i)$ and $c_{\text{short},2,n}(i)$ are defined from a sequence from the family of periodically extended S(2) codes.

Let $n_{23}n_{22}\ldots n_0$ be the 24 bit binary representation of the code number n.

The n:th quaternary S(2) sequence $z_n(i)$, $0 \le n \le 16777215$, is obtained by modulo 4 addition of three sequences, a quaternary sequence $a(i)$ and two binary sequences $b(i)$ and $d(i)$, where the initial loading of the three sequences is determined from the code number n. The sequence $z_n(i)$ of length 255 is generated according to the following relation:

- $z_n(i) = a(i) + 2b(i) + 2d(i)$ modulo 4, $i = 0, 1, \ldots, 254$;

where the quaternary sequence $a(i)$ is generated recursively by the polynomial $g_0(x)= x^8+x^5+3x^3+x^2+2x+1$ as:

- $a(0) = 2n_0 + 1$ modulo 4;
- $a(i) = 2n_i$ modulo 4, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, 7$;
- $a(i) = 3a(i\text{-}3) + a(i\text{-}5) + 3a(i\text{-}6) + 2a(i\text{-}7) + 3a(i\text{-}8)$ modulo 4, $i = 8, 9, \ldots, 254$;

and the binary sequence $b(i)$ is generated recursively by the polynomial $g_1(x)= x^8+x^7+x^5+x+1$ as

$b(i) = n_{8+i}$ modulo 2, $i = 0, 1, \ldots, 7$,

$b(i) = b(i\text{-}1) + b(i\text{-}3) + b(i\text{-}7) + b(i\text{-}8)$ modulo 2, $i = 8, 9, \ldots, 254$,

and the binary sequence $d(i)$ is generated recursively by the polynomial $g_2(x)= x^8+x^7+x^5+x^4+1$ as:

$d(i) = n_{16+i}$ modulo 2, $i = 0, 1, \ldots, 7$;

$d(i) = d(i\text{-}1) + d(i\text{-}3) + d(i\text{-}4) + d(i\text{-}8)$ modulo 2, $i = 8, 9, \ldots, 254$.

The sequence $z_n(i)$ is extended to length 256 chips by setting $z_n(255) = z_n(0)$.

The mapping from $z_n(i)$ to the real-valued binary sequences $c_{\text{short},1,n}(i)$ and $c_{\text{short},2,n}(i)$, , $i = 0, 1, \ldots, 255$ is defined in Table 2.

Table 2: Mapping from $z_n(i)$ to $c_{short,1,n}(i)$ and $c_{short,2,n}(i)$, $i = 0, 1, \ldots, 255$

$z_n(i)$	$c_{short,1,n}(i)$	$c_{short,2,n}(i)$
0	+1	+1
1	-1	+1
2	-1	-1
3	+1	-1

Finally, the complex-valued short scrambling sequence $C_{\text{short, n}}$, is defined as:

$$C_{short,n}(i) = c_{short,1,n}(i \bmod 256)\left(1 + j(-1)^i c_{short,2,n}\left(2\lfloor (i \bmod 256)/2 \rfloor\right)\right)$$

where i = 0, 1, 2, … and $\lfloor\,\rfloor$ denotes rounding to nearest lower integer.

An implementation of the short scrambling sequence generator for the 255 chip sequence to be extended by one chip is shown in Figure 6.

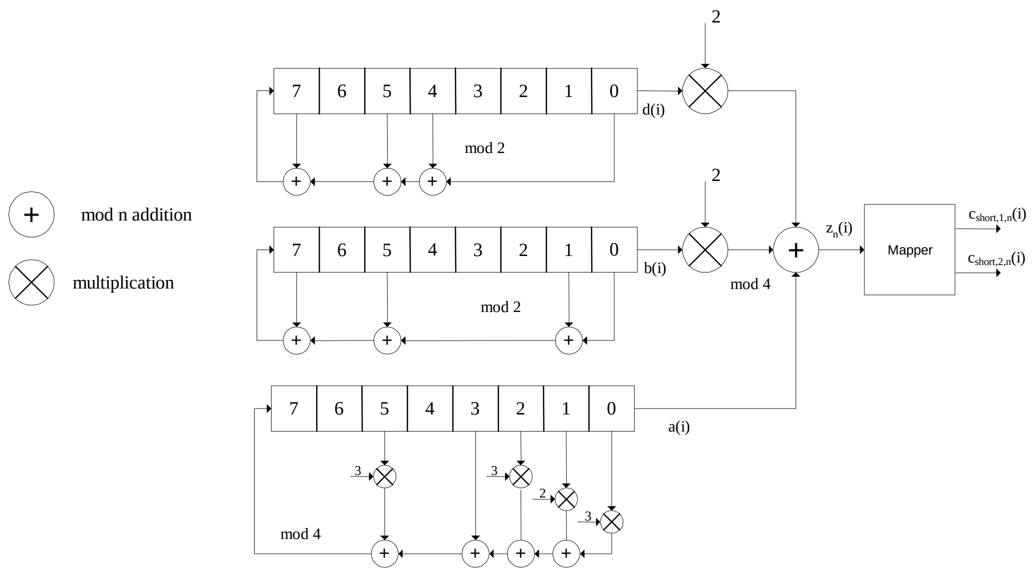


Figure 6: Uplink short scrambling sequence generator for 255 chip sequence

4.3.2.4 Dedicated physical channels ~~DPCCH/DPDCH/HS-DPCCH~~ scrambling code

The code used for scrambling of the uplink ~~DPCCH/DPDCH/HS-DPCCH~~dedicated physical channels may be of either long or short type. ~~When the scrambling code is formed, different consituent codes are used for the long and short type as defined below.~~

The n:th uplink scrambling code~~ for DPCCH/DPDCH/HS-DPCCH~~, denoted $S_{dpch,\,n}$, is defined as:

$S_{dpch,n}(i) = C_{long,n}(i)$, i = 0, 1, …, 38399, when using long scrambling codes;

where the lowest index corresponds to the chip transmitted first in time and $C_{long,n}$ is defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.2.

The n:th uplink scrambling code~~ for DPCCH/DPDCH/HS-DPCCH~~, denoted $S_{dpch,\,n}$, is defined as:

$S_{dpch,n}(i) = C_{short,n}(i)$, i = 0, 1, …, 38399, when using short scrambling codes;

where the lowest index corresponds to the chip transmitted first in time and $C_{short,n}$ is defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.3.

4.3.2.5 PRACH message part scrambling code

The scrambling code used for the PRACH message part is 10 ms long, and there are 8192 different PRACH scrambling codes defined.

The n:th PRACH message part scrambling code, denoted $S_{r\text{-}msg,n}$, where n = 0, 1, …, 8191, is based on the long scrambling sequence and is defined as:

$S_{r\text{-}msg,n}(i) = C_{long,n}(i + 4096)$, i = 0, 1, …, 38399

where the lowest index corresponds to the chip transmitted first in time and $C_{long,n}$ is defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.2.

The message part scrambling code has a one-to-one correspondence to the scrambling code used for the preamble part. For one PRACH, the same code number is used for both scrambling codes, i.e. if the PRACH preamble scrambling code used is $S_{r\text{-}pre,m}$ then the PRACH message part scrambling code is $S_{r\text{-}msg,m}$, where the number *m* is the same for both codes.

4.3.2.6 PCPCH message part scrambling code

The set of scrambling codes used for the PCPCH message part are 10 ms long, cell-specific, and each scrambling code has a one-to-one correspondence to the signature sequence and the access sub-channel used by the access preamble part. Both long or short scrambling codes can be used to scramble the CPCH message part. There are 64 uplink scrambling codes defined per cell and 32768 different PCPCH scrambling codes defined in the system.

The *n*:th PCPCH message part scrambling code, denoted $S_{c\text{-}msg,,n}$, where $n = 8192, 8193, \ldots, 40959$ is based on the scrambling sequence and is defined as:

In the case when the long scrambling codes are used:

$$S_{c\text{-}msg,n}(i) = C_{long,n}(i), \quad i = 0, 1, \ldots, 38399$$

where the lowest index corresponds to the chip transmitted first in time and $C_{long,n}$ is defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.2.

In the case the short scrambling codes are used:

$$S_{c\text{-}msg,n}(i) = C_{short,n}(i), \quad i = 0, 1, \ldots, 38399$$

The 32768 PCPCH scrambling codes are divided into 512 groups with 64 codes in each group. There is a one-to-one correspondence between the group of PCPCH preamble scrambling codes in a cell and the primary scrambling code used in the downlink of the cell. The *k*:th PCPCH scrambling code within the cell with downlink primary scrambling code *m*, $k = 16, 17, \ldots, 79$ and $m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, 511$, is $S_{c\text{-}msg,\,n}$ as defined above with $n = 64 \times m + k + 8176$.

4.3.2.7 PCPCH power control preamble scrambling code

The scrambling code for the PCPCH power control preamble is the same as for the PCPCH message part, as described in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.6 above. The phase of the scrambling code shall be such that the end of the code is aligned with the frame boundary at the end of the power control preamble.

4.3.3 PRACH preamble codes

4.3.3.1 Preamble code construction

The random access preamble code $C_{pre,n,}$ is a complex valued sequence. It is built from a preamble scrambling code $S_{r\text{-}pre,n}$ and a preamble signature $C_{sig,s}$ as follows:

- $C_{pre,n,s}(k) = S_{r\text{-}pre,n}(k) \times C_{sig,s}(k) \times e^{j(\frac{\pi}{4}+\frac{\pi}{2}k)}$, $k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots, 4095$;

where k=0 corresponds to the chip transmitted first in time and $S_{r\text{-}pre,n}$ and $C_{sig,s}$ are defined in 4.3.3.2 and 4.3.3.3 below respectively.

4.3.3.2 Preamble scrambling code

The scrambling code for the PRACH preamble part is constructed from the long scrambling sequences. There are 8192 PRACH preamble scrambling codes in total.

The *n*:th preamble scrambling code, $n = 0, 1, \ldots, 8191$, is defined as:

$$S_{r\text{-}pre,n}(i) = c_{long,1,n}(i), \; i = 0, 1, \ldots, 4095;$$

where the sequence $c_{long,1,n}$ is defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.2.

The 8192 PRACH preamble scrambling codes are divided into 512 groups with 16 codes in each group. There is a one-to-one correspondence between the group of PRACH preamble scrambling codes in a cell and the primary scrambling code used in the downlink of the cell. The *k*:th PRACH preamble scrambling code within the cell with downlink primary scrambling code *m*, *k* = 0, 1, 2, …, 15 and *m* = 0, 1, 2, …, 511, is $S_{r\text{-}pre,n}(i)$ as defined above with $n = 16 \times m + k$.

4.3.3.3 Preamble signature

The preamble signature corresponding to a signature s consists of 256 repetitions of a length 16 signature $P_s(n)$, n=0…15. This is defined as follows:

- $C_{sig,s}(i) = P_s(i \text{ modulo } 16)$, $i = 0, 1, …, 4095$.

The signature $P_s(n)$ is from the set of 16 Hadamard codes of length 16. These are listed in table 3.

Table 3: Preamble signatures

Preamble signature	Value of *n*															
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
$P_0(n)$	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
$P_1(n)$	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1
$P_2(n)$	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1
$P_3(n)$	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1
$P_4(n)$	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1
$P_5(n)$	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1
$P_6(n)$	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1
$P_7(n)$	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1
$P_8(n)$	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
$P_9(n)$	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1
$P_{10}(n)$	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1
$P_{11}(n)$	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1
$P_{12}(n)$	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1
$P_{13}(n)$	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	1	-1
$P_{14}(n)$	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1
$P_{15}(n)$	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1

4.3.4 PCPCH preamble codes

4.3.4.1 Access preamble

4.3.4.1.1 Access preamble code construction

Similar to PRACH access preamble codes, the PCPCH access preamble codes $C_{c\text{-}acc,n,s}$, are complex valued sequences. The PCPCH access preamble codes are built from the preamble scrambling codes $S_{c\text{-}acc,n}$ and a preamble signature $C_{sig,s}$ as follows:

- $C_{c\text{-}acc,n,s}(k) = S_{c\text{-}acc,n}(k) \times C_{sig,s}(k) \times e^{j(\frac{\pi}{4}+\frac{\pi}{2}k)}$, k = 0, 1, 2, 3, …, 4095;

- where $S_{c\text{-}acc,n}$ and $C_{sig,s}$ are defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.4.1.2 and 4.3.4.1.3 below respectively.

4.3.4.1.2 Access preamble scrambling code

The scrambling code for the PCPCH preamble part is constructed from the long scrambling sequences. There are 40960 PCPCH access preamble scrambling codes in total.

The *n*:th PCPCH access preamble scrambling code, where *n = 0, ..., 40959* is defined as:

- $S_{c\text{-}acc,n}(i) = c_{long,1,n}(i)$, $i = 0, 1, …, 4095$;

where the sequence $c_{long,1,n}$ is defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.2.

The 40960 PCPCH access preamble scrambling codes are divided into 512 groups with 80 codes in each group. There is a one-to-one correspondence between the group of PCPCH access preamble scrambling codes in a cell and the primary scrambling code used in the downlink of the cell. The *k*:th PCPCH scrambling code within the cell with downlink primary scrambling code *m*, for $k = 0,..., 79$ and $m = 0, 1, 2, …, 511$, is $S_{c\text{-}acc,\,n}$ as defined above with $n=16\times m+k$ for $k=0,...,15$ and $n = 64\times m + (k-16)+8192$ for k=16,..., 79.

The index k = 0,...,15 may only be used as a PCPCH access preamble part scrambling code if the same code is also used for a PRACH.

The index k=16,..., 79 correspond to PCPCH access preamble scrambling codes which are not shared together with a PRACH. This leads to 32768 PCPCH specific preamble scrambling codes divided into 512 groups with 64 elements.

4.3.4.1.3 Access preamble signature

The access preamble part of the CPCH-access burst carries one of the sixteen different orthogonal complex signatures identical to the ones used by the preamble part of the random-access burst.

4.3.4.2 CD preamble

4.3.4.2.1 CD preamble code construction

Similar to PRACH access preamble codes, the PCPCH CD preamble codes $C_{c\text{-}cd,n,s}$ are complex valued sequences. The PCPCH CD preamble codes are built from the preamble scrambling codes Sc-cd,n and a preamble signature $C_{sig,s}$ as follows:

- $C_{c\text{-}cd,n,s}(k) = S_{c\text{-}cd,n}(k) \times C_{sig,s}(k) \times e^{j(\frac{\pi}{4}+\frac{\pi}{2}k)}$, k = 0, 1, 2, 3, …, 4095;

where $S_{c\text{-}cd,n}$ and $C_{sig,s}$ are defined in ~~section~~subclauses 4.3.4.2.2 and 4.3.4.2.3 below respectively.

4.3.4.2.2 CD preamble scrambling code

There are 40960 PCPCH-CD preamble scrambling codes in total.

The *n*:th PCPCH CD access preamble scrambling code, where $n = 0 ,..., 40959$, is defined as:

- $S_{c\text{-}cd,n}(i) = c_{long,1,n}(i)$, $i = 0, 1, …, 4095$;

where the sequence $c_{long,1,n}$ is defined in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.2.2.

The 40960 PCPCH scrambling codes are divided into 512 groups with 80 codes in each group. There is a one-to-one correspondence between the group of PCPCH CD preamble scrambling codes in a cell and the primary scrambling code used in the downlink of the cell. The *k*:th PCPCH scrambling code within the cell with downlink primary scrambling code *m*, $k = 0,1, …, 79$ and $m = 0, 1, 2, …, 511$, is $S_{c\text{-}cd,\,n}$ as defined above with $n=16\times m+k$ for $k = 0,...,15$ and $n = 64\times m + (k-16)+8192$ *for k=16,...,79*.

The index k=0,...,15 may only be used as a PCPCH CD preamble part scrambling code if the same code is also used for a PRACH.

The index k=16,..., 79 correspond to PCPCH CD preamble scrambling codes which are not shared together with a PRACH. This leads to 32768 PCPCH specific preamble scrambling codes divided into 512 groups with 64 elements.

4.3.4.2.3 CD preamble signature

The CD-preamble part of the CPCH-access burst carries one of sixteen different orthogonal complex signatures identical to the ones used by the preamble part of the random-access burst.

4.4 Modulation

4.4.1 Modulating chip rate

The modulating chip rate is 3.84 Mcps.

4.4.2 Modulation

Modulation of the complex-valued chip sequence generated by the spreading process is shown in Figure 7 below:

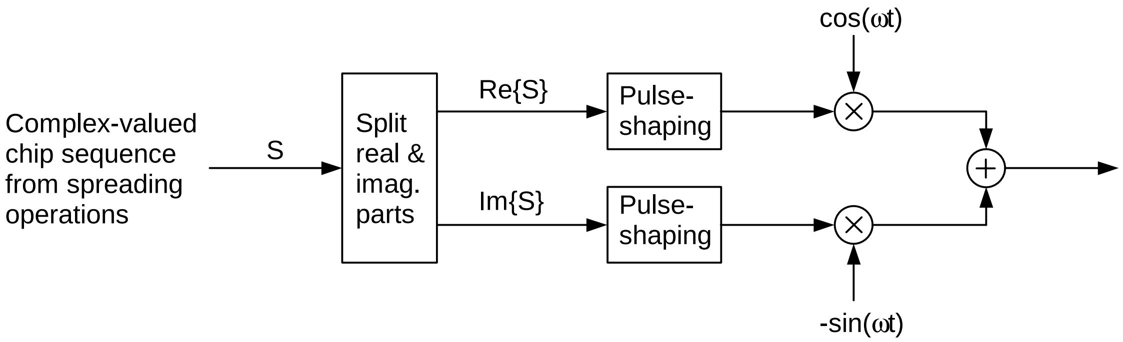


Figure 7: Uplink modulation

The pulse-shaping characteristics are described in [3].

5 Downlink spreading and modulation

5.1 Spreading

Figure 8 illustrates the spreading operation for ~~the~~ all physical channel except SCH. The spreading operation includes a modulation mapper stage successively followed by a channelization stage, an IQ combining stage and a scrambling stage. All the downlink physical channels are then combined as specified in sub subclause 5.1.5.

~~The behaviour of the modulation mapper is different between QPSK and 16QAM. The downlink physical channels using QPSK are P-CCPCH, S-CCPCH, CPICH, AICH, AP-AICH, CSICH, CD/CA-ICH, PICH, PDSCH, HS-SCCH and downlink DPCH. The downlink physical channel using either QPSK or 16 QAM is HS-PDSCH.~~ The non-spread downlink physical channels, except SCH, AICH, AP-ICH, ~~and~~ CD/CA-ICH, E-HICH and E-RGCH, consist of a sequence of 3-valued digits taking the values 0, 1 and "DTX". Note that "DTX" is only applicable to those downlink physical channels that support DTX transmission. ~~In case of QPSK, these digits are mapped to real-valued symbols as follows: the binary value "0" is mapped to the real value +1, the binary value "1" is mapped to the real value –1 and "DTX" is mapped to the real value 0. For the indicator channels using signatures (AICH, AP-AICH and CD/CA-ICH), the real-valued symbols depend on the exact combination of the indicators to be transmitted, compare [2] sections 5.3.3.7, 5.3.3.8 and 5.3.3.9.~~

~~In case of QPSK, each pair of two consecutive real-valued symbols is first serial-to-parallel converted and mapped to an I and Q branch. The definition of the modulation mapper is such that even and odd numbered symbols are mapped to the I and Q branch respectively. In case of QPSK, for all channels except the indicator channels using signatures, symbol number zero is defined as the first symbol in each frame. For the indicator channels using signatures, symbol number zero is defined as the first symbol in each access slot. The I and Q branches are then both spread to the chip rate by the same real-valued channelisation code~~ ~~$C_{ch,SF,m}$~~~~. The channelisation code sequence shall be aligned in time with the symbol boundary. The sequences of real-valued chips on the I and Q branch are then treated as a single complex-valued sequence of chips. This sequence of chips is scrambled (complex chip-wise multiplication) by a complex-valued scrambling code~~ ~~$S_{dl,n}$~~~~. In case of P-CCPCH, the scrambling code is applied aligned with the P-CCPCH frame boundary, i.e. the first complex chip of the spread P-CCPCH frame is multiplied with chip number zero of the scrambling code. In case of other downlink channels, the scrambling code is applied aligned with the scrambling code applied to the P-~~

CCPCH. In this case, the scrambling code is thus not necessarily applied aligned with the frame boundary of the physical channel to be scrambled.

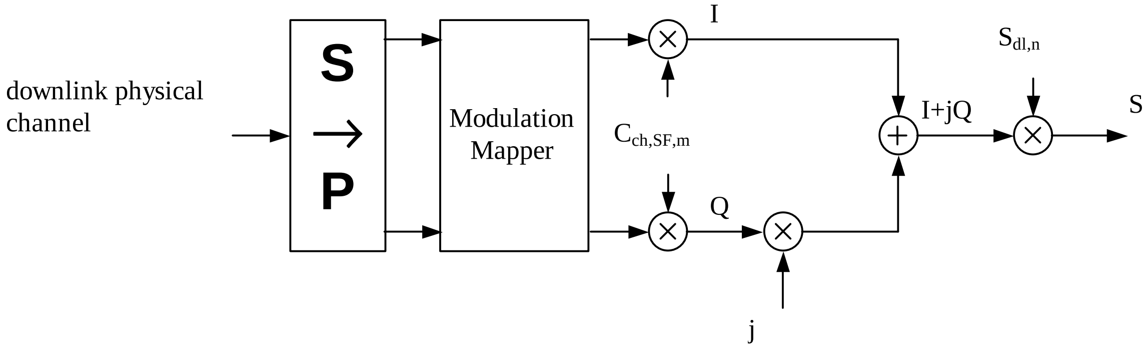


Figure 8: Spreading for all downlink physical channels except SCH

NOTE: Although subclause 5.1 has been reorganized in this release, the spreading operation as specified for the DL channels in the previous release remains unchanged.

5.1.1 Modulation mapper

Table 3B defines which of the IQ mapping specified in subclauses 5.1.1.1 and 5.1.1.2 may be used for the physical channel being processed.

Table 3B: IQ mapping

Physical channel	IQ mapping
HS-PDSCH	QPSK or 16QAM
All other channels (except the SCH)	QPSK

5.1.1.1 QPSK

For all channels, except AICH, AP-AICH, CD/CA-ICH, E-HICH and E-RGCH, the input digits shall be mapped to real-valued symbols as follows: the binary value "0" is mapped to the real value +1, the binary value "1" is mapped to the real value –1 and "DTX" is mapped to the real value 0.

For the indicator channels using signatures (AICH, AP-AICH, CD/CA-ICH), the real-valued input symbols depend on the exact combination of the indicators to be transmitted as specified in [2] subclauses 5.3.3.7, 5.3.3.8 and 5.3.3.9.For the E-HICH and the E-RGCH the input is a real valued symbol sequence as specified in [2]

Each pair of two consecutive real-valued symbols is first converted from serial to parallel and mapped to an I and Q branch. The definition of the modulation mapper is such that even and odd numbered symbols are mapped to the I and Q branch respectively. For all QPSK channels except the indicator channels using signatures, symbol number zero is defined as the first symbol in each frame or sub-frame. For the indicator channels using signatures, symbol number zero is defined as the first symbol in each access slot.

5.1.1.2 16QAM

In case of 16QAM, a set of four consecutive binary symbols n_k, n_{k+1}, n_{k+2}, n_{k+3} (with k mod 4 = 0) is serial-to-parallel converted to two consecutive binary symbols ($i_1= n_k$, $i_2= n_{k+2}$) on the I branch and two consecutive binary symbols ($q_1= n_{k+1}$, $q_2= n_{k+3}$) on the Q branch and then mapped to 16QAM by the modulation mapper as defined in table 3A.

The I and Q branches are then both spread to the chip rate by the same real-valued channelisation code $C_{ch,16,m}$. The channelisation code sequence shall be aligned in time with the symbol boundary. The sequences of real-valued chips on the I and Q branch are then treated as a single complex-valued sequence of chips. This sequence of chips from all multi-codes is summed and then scrambled (complex chip-wise multiplication) by a complex-valued scrambling code $S_{dl,n}$. The scrambling code is applied aligned with the scrambling code applied to the P-CCPCH.

Table 3A: 16 QAM modulation mapping

$i_1q_1i_2q_2$	I branch	Q branch
0000	0.4472	0.4472
0001	0.4472	1.3416
0010	1.3416	0.4472
0011	1.3416	1.3416
0100	0.4472	-0.4472
0101	0.4472	-1.3416
0110	1.3416	-0.4472
0111	1.3416	-1.3416
1000	-0.4472	0.4472
1001	-0.4472	1.3416
1010	-1.3416	0.4472
1011	-1.3416	1.3416
1100	-0.4472	-0.4472
1101	-0.4472	-1.3416
1110	-1.3416	-0.4472
1111	-1.3416	-1.3416

5.1.2 Channelization

For all physical channels (except SCH) the I and Q branches shall be spread to the chip rate by the same real-valued channelisation code $C_{ch,SF,m}$, i.e. the output for each input symbol on the I and the Q branches shall be a sequence of SF chips corresponding to the channelization code chip sequence multiplied by the real-valued symbol. The channelisation code sequence shall be aligned in time with the symbol boundary.

5.1.3 IQ combining

The real valued chip sequence on the Q branch shall be complex multiplied with j and summed with the corresponding real valued chip sequence on the I branch, thus resulting in a single complex valued chip sequence.

5.1.4 Scrambling

The sequence of complex valued chips shall be scrambled (complex chip-wise multiplication) by a complex-valued scrambling code $S_{dl,n}$. In case of P-CCPCH, the scrambling code shall be applied aligned with the P-CCPCH frame boundary, i.e. the first complex chip of the spread P-CCPCH frame is multiplied with chip number zero of the scrambling code. In case of other downlink channels, the scrambling code shall be applied aligned with the scrambling code applied to the P-CCPCH. In this case, the scrambling code is thus not necessarily applied aligned with the frame boundary of the physical channel to be scrambled.

5.1.5 Channel combining

Figure 9 illustrates how different downlink channels are combined. Each complex-valued spread channel, corresponding to point S in Figure 8, ~~is~~ may be separately weighted by a weight factor G_i. The complex-valued P-SCH and S-SCH, as described in [2], ~~section~~subclause 5.3.3.5, ~~are~~ may be separately weighted by weight factors G_p and G_s. All downlink physical channels ~~are~~ shall then be combined using complex addition.

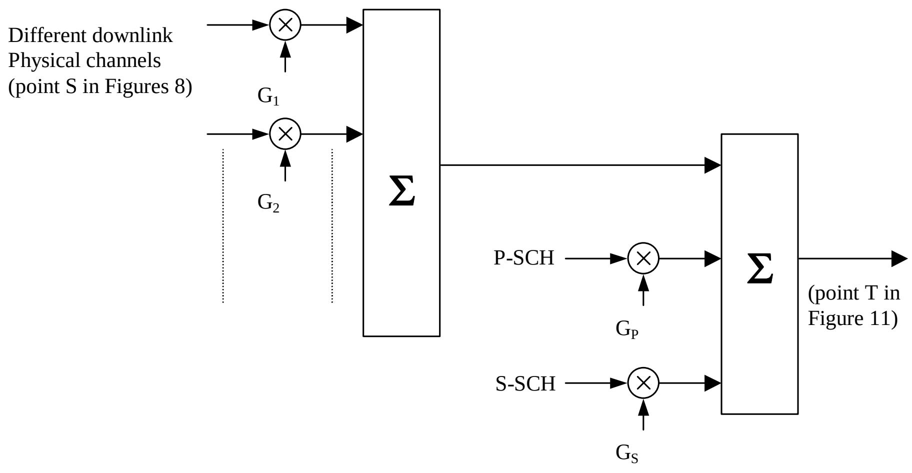


Figure 9: Combining of downlink physical channels

5.2 Code generation and allocation

5.2.1 Channelisation codes

The channelisation codes of figure 8 are the same codes as used in the uplink, namely Orthogonal Variable Spreading Factor (OVSF) codes that preserve the orthogonality between downlink channels of different rates and spreading factors. The OVSF codes are defined in figure 4 in ~~section~~subclause 4.3.1.

The channelisation code for the Primary CPICH is fixed to $C_{ch,256,0}$ and the channelisation code for the Primary CCPCH is fixed to $C_{ch,256,1}$.The channelisation codes for all other physical channels are assigned by UTRAN.

With the spreading factor 512 a specific restriction is applied. When the code word $C_{ch,512,n}$, with n=0,2,4….510, is used in soft handover, then the code word $C_{ch,512,n+1}$ is not allocated in the cells where timing adjustment is to be used. Respectively if $C_{ch,512,n}$, with n=1,3,5….511 is used, then the code word $C_{ch,512,n-1}$ is not allocated in the cells where timing adjustment is to be used. This restriction shall not apply in cases where timing adjustments in soft handover are not used with spreading factor 512.

When compressed mode is implemented by reducing the spreading factor by 2, the OVSF code used for compressed frames is:

- $C_{ch,SF/2,\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}$ if ordinary scrambling code is used.
- $C_{ch,SF/2,n \bmod SF/2}$ if alternative scrambling code is used (see ~~section~~subclause 5.2.2);

where $C_{ch,SF,n}$ is the channelisation code used for non-compressed frames.

In case the OVSF code on the PDSCH varies from frame to frame, the OVSF codes shall be allocated in such a way that the OVSF code(s) below the smallest spreading factor will be from the branch of the code tree pointed by the code with smallest spreading factor used for the connection which is called PDSCH root channelisation code. This means that all the codes for this UE for the PDSCH connection can be generated according to the OVSF code generation principle from the PDSCH root channelisation code i.e. the code with smallest spreading factor used by the UE on PDSCH.

In case of mapping the DSCH to multiple parallel PDSCHs, the same rule applies, but all of the branches identified by the multiple codes, corresponding to the smallest spreading factor, may be used for higher spreading factor allocation i.e. the multiple codes with smallest spreading factor can be considered as PDSCH root channelisation codes.

For HS-PDSCH, the spreading factor is always 16.

For HS-SCCH, the spreading factor is always 128.

Channelisation-code-set information over HS-SCCH is mapped in following manner: the OVSF codes shall be allocated in such a way that they are positioned in sequence in the code tree. That is, for P multicodes at offset O the following codes are allocated:

$C_{ch,16,O} \ldots C_{ch,16,O+P-1}$

The number of multicodes and the corresponding offset for HS-PDSCHs mapped from a given HS-DSCH is signalled by HS-SCCH.

For E-HICH and for E-RGCH, the spreading factor shall always be 128. In each cell, the E-RGCH and E-HICH assigned to a UE shall be configured with the same channelization code.

For E-AGCH, the spreading factor shall always be 256.

5.2.2 Scrambling code

A total of $2^{18}-1$ = 262,143 scrambling codes, numbered 0…262,142 can be generated. However not all the scrambling codes are used. The scrambling codes are divided into 512 sets each of a primary scrambling code and 15 secondary scrambling codes.

The primary scrambling codes consist of scrambling codes n=16*i where i=0…511. The i:th set of secondary scrambling codes consists of scrambling codes 16*i+k, where k=1…15.

There is a one-to-one mapping between each primary scrambling code and 15 secondary scrambling codes in a set such that i:th primary scrambling code corresponds to i:th set of secondary scrambling codes.

Hence, according to the above, scrambling codes k = 0, 1, …, 8191 are used. Each of these codes are associated with a left alternative scrambling code and a right alternative scrambling code, that may be used for compressed frames. The left alternative scrambling code corresponding to scrambling code k is scrambling code number k + 8192, while the right alternative scrambling code corresponding to scrambling code k is scrambling code number k + 16384. The alternative scrambling codes can be used for compressed frames. In this case, the left alternative scrambling code is used if n<SF/2 and the right alternative scrambling code is used if n≥SF/2, where $c_{ch,SF,n}$ is the channelisation code used for non-compressed frames. The usage of alternative scrambling code for compressed frames is signalled by higher layers for each physical channel respectively.

The set of primary scrambling codes is further divided into 64 scrambling code groups, each consisting of 8 primary scrambling codes. The j:th scrambling code group consists of primary scrambling codes 16*8*j+16*k, where j=0..63 and k=0..7.

Each cell is allocated one and only one primary scrambling code. The primary CCPCH, primary CPICH, PICH, AICH, AP-AICH, CD/CA-ICH, CSICH and S-CCPCH carrying PCH ~~are~~ shall always be transmitted using the primary scrambling code. The other downlink physical channels ~~can~~ may be transmitted with either the primary scrambling code or a secondary scrambling code from the set associated with the primary scrambling code of the cell.

The mixture of primary scrambling code and no more than one secondary scrambling code for one CCTrCH is allowable. In compressed mode during compressed frames, these can be changed to the associated left or right scrambling codes as described above, i.e. in these frames, the total number of different scrambling codes may exceed two.

In the case of the CCTrCH of type DSCH, all the PDSCH channelisation codes that a single UE may receive shall be under a single scrambling code (either the primary or a secondary scrambling code). In the case of CCTrCH of type of HS-DSCH then all the HS-PDSCH channelisation codes and HS-SCCH that a single UE may receive shall be under a single scrambling code (either the primary or a secondary scrambling code).

In each cell, the E-RGCH, E-HICH and E-AGCH assigned to a UE shall be configured with same scrambling code.

The scrambling code sequences are constructed by combining two real sequences into a complex sequence. Each of the two real sequences are constructed as the position wise modulo 2 sum of 38400 chip segments of two binary *m*-sequences generated by means of two generator polynomials of degree 18. The resulting sequences thus constitute segments of a set of Gold sequences. The scrambling codes are repeated for every 10 ms radio frame. Let *x* and *y* be the two sequences respectively. The *x* sequence is constructed using the primitive (over GF(2)) polynomial $1+X^7+X^{18}$. The y sequence is constructed using the polynomial $1+X^5+X^7+X^{10}+X^{18}$.

The sequence depending on the chosen scrambling code number *n* is denoted z_n, in the sequel. Furthermore, let $x(i)$, $y(i)$ and $z_n(i)$ denote the *i*:th symbol of the sequence *x*, *y*, and z_n, respectively.

The *m*-sequences *x*and *y* are constructed as:

Initial conditions:

- x is constructed with x (0)=1, x(1)= x(2)=...= x (16)= x (17)=0.
- y(0)=y(1)= … =y(16)= y(17)=1.

Recursive definition of subsequent symbols:

- x(i+18) =x(i+7) + x(i) modulo 2, i=0,…,2^{18}-20.
- y(i+18) = y(i+10)+y(i+7)+y(i+5)+y(i) modulo 2, i=0,…, 2^{18}-20.

The n:th Gold code sequence z_n, $n=0,1,2,\ldots,2^{18}-2$, is then defined as:

- $z_n(i)$ = x((i+n) modulo (2^{18} - 1)) + y(i) modulo 2, i=0,…, 2^{18}-2.

These binary sequences are converted to real valued sequences Z_n by the following transformation:

$$Z_n(i) = \begin{cases} +1 & if \ z_n(i) = 0 \\ -1 & if \ z_n(i) = 1 \end{cases} \quad for \quad i = 0,1,\ldots,2^{18}-2.$$

Finally, the n:th complex scrambling code sequence $S_{dl,n}$ is defined as:

- $S_{dl,n}(i) = Z_n(i) + j\,Z_n((i+131072) \text{ modulo } (2^{18}-1))$, i=0,1,…,38399.

Note that the pattern from phase 0 up to the phase of 38399 is repeated.

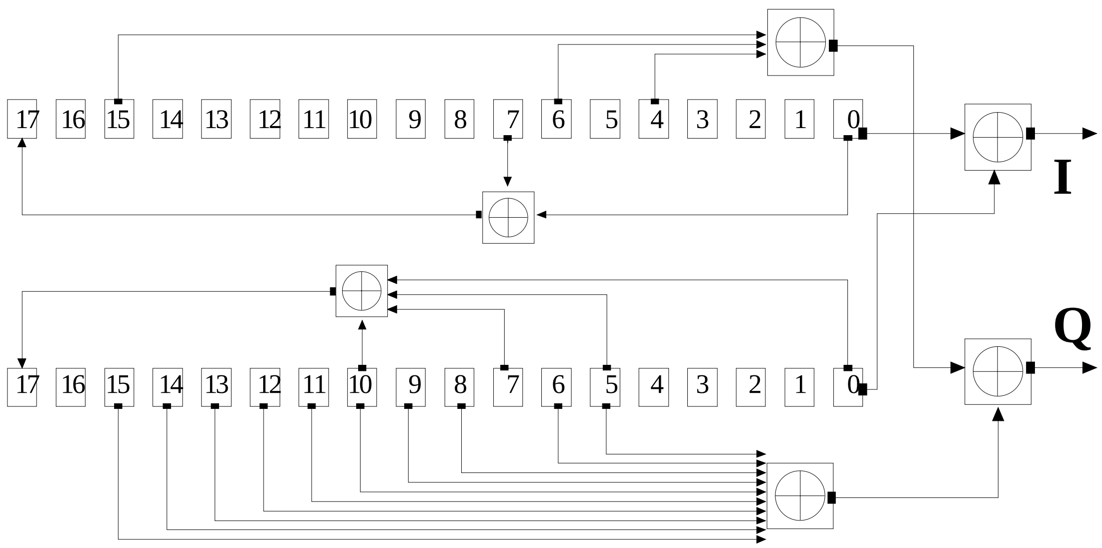


Figure 10: Configuration of downlink scrambling code generator

5.2.3 Synchronisation codes

5.2.3.1 Code generation

The primary synchronisation code (PSC), C_{psc} is constructed as a so-called generalised hierarchical Golay sequence. The PSC is furthermore chosen to have good aperiodic auto correlation properties.

Define:

- a = <x_1, x_2, x_3, …, x_{16}> = <1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, -1, -1, 1, -1, 1, -1, 1, -1, -1, 1>

The PSC is generated by repeating the sequence *a* modulated by a Golay complementary sequence, and creating a complex-valued sequence with identical real and imaginary components. The PSC C_{psc} is defined as:

- $C_{psc} = (1 + j) \times$ <a, a, a, -a, -a, a, -a, -a, a, a, a, -a, a, -a, a, a>;

where the leftmost chip in the sequence corresponds to the chip transmitted first in time.

The 16 secondary synchronization codes (SSCs), $\{C_{ssc,1},\dots,C_{ssc,16}\}$, are complex-valued with identical real and imaginary components, and are constructed from position wise multiplicationof a Hadamard sequence and a sequence *z*, defined as:

- z = <b, b, b, -b, b, b, -b, -b, b, -b, b, -b, -b, -b, -b, -b>, where
- $b = \langle x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5, x_6, x_7, x_8, -x_9, -x_{10}, -x_{11}, -x_{12}, -x_{13}, -x_{14}, -x_{15}, -x_{16}\rangle$ and $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{15}, x_{16}$ are same as in the definition of the sequence *a* above.

The Hadamard sequences are obtained as the rows in a matrix H_8 constructed recursively by:

$$H_0 = (1)$$
$$H_k = \begin{pmatrix} H_{k-1} & H_{k-1} \\ H_{k-1} & -H_{k-1} \end{pmatrix}, \quad k \geq 1$$

The rows are numbered from the top starting with row *0* (the all ones sequence).

Denote the *n*:th Hadamard sequence as a row of H_8 numbered from the top, n = 0, 1, 2, …, 255, in the sequel.

Furthermore, let $h_n(i)$ and $z(i)$ denote the *i*:th symbol of the sequence h_n and *z*, respectively where $i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 255$ and $i = 0$ corresponds to the leftmost symbol.

The *k*:th SSC, $C_{ssc,k}$, $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots, 16$ is then defined as:

- $C_{ssc,k} = (1 + j) \times \langle h_m(0) \times z(0), h_m(1) \times z(1), h_m(2) \times z(2), \dots, h_m(255) \times z(255)\rangle$;

  where $m = 16\times(k - 1)$ and the leftmost chip in the sequence corresponds to the chip transmitted first in time.

5.2.3.2 Code allocation of SSC

The 64 secondary SCH sequences are constructed such that their cyclic-shifts are unique, i.e., a non-zero cyclic shift less than 15 of any of the 64 sequences is not equivalent to some cyclic shift of any other of the 64 sequences. Also, a non-zero cyclic shift less than 15 of any of the sequences is not equivalent to itself with any other cyclic shift less than 15. Table 4 describes the sequences of SSCs used to encode the 64 different scrambling code groups. The entries in table 4 denote what SSC to use in the different slots for the different scrambling code groups, e.g. the entry "7" means that SSC $C_{ssc,7}$ shall be used for the corresponding scrambling code group and slot.

Table 4: Allocation of SSCs for secondary SCH

Scrambling Code Group	slot number														
	#0	#1	#2	#3	#4	#5	#6	#7	#8	#9	#10	#11	#12	#13	#14
Group 0	1	1	2	8	9	10	15	8	10	16	2	7	15	7	16
Group 1	1	1	5	16	7	3	14	16	3	10	5	12	14	12	10
Group 2	1	2	1	15	5	5	12	16	6	11	2	16	11	15	12
Group 3	1	2	3	1	8	6	5	2	5	8	4	4	6	3	7
Group 4	1	2	16	6	6	11	15	5	12	1	15	12	16	11	2
Group 5	1	3	4	7	4	1	5	5	3	6	2	8	7	6	8
Group 6	1	4	11	3	4	10	9	2	11	2	10	12	12	9	3
Group 7	1	5	6	6	14	9	10	2	13	9	2	5	14	1	13
Group 8	1	6	10	10	4	11	7	13	16	11	13	6	4	1	16
Group 9	1	6	13	2	14	2	6	5	5	13	10	9	1	14	10
Group 10	1	7	8	5	7	2	4	3	8	3	2	6	6	4	5
Group 11	1	7	10	9	16	7	9	15	1	8	16	8	15	2	2
Group 12	1	8	12	9	9	4	13	16	5	1	13	5	12	4	8
Group 13	1	8	14	10	14	1	15	15	8	5	11	4	10	5	4
Group 14	1	9	2	15	15	16	10	7	8	1	10	8	2	16	9
Group 15	1	9	15	6	16	2	13	14	10	11	7	4	5	12	3
Group 16	1	10	9	11	15	7	6	4	16	5	2	12	13	3	14
Group 17	1	11	14	4	13	2	9	10	12	16	8	5	3	15	6
Group 18	1	12	12	13	14	7	2	8	14	2	1	13	11	8	11
Group 19	1	12	15	5	4	14	3	16	7	8	6	2	10	11	13
Group 20	1	15	4	3	7	6	10	13	12	5	14	16	8	2	11
Group 21	1	16	3	12	11	9	13	5	8	2	14	7	4	10	15
Group 22	2	2	5	10	16	11	3	10	11	8	5	13	3	13	8
Group 23	2	2	12	3	15	5	8	3	5	14	12	9	8	9	14
Group 24	2	3	6	16	12	16	3	13	13	6	7	9	2	12	7
Group 25	2	3	8	2	9	15	14	3	14	9	5	5	15	8	12
Group 26	2	4	7	9	5	4	9	11	2	14	5	14	11	16	16
Group 27	2	4	13	12	12	7	15	10	5	2	15	5	13	7	4
Group 28	2	5	9	9	3	12	8	14	15	12	14	5	3	2	15
Group 29	2	5	11	7	2	11	9	4	16	7	16	9	14	14	4
Group 30	2	6	2	13	3	3	12	9	7	16	6	9	16	13	12
Group 31	2	6	9	7	7	16	13	3	12	2	13	12	9	16	6
Group 32	2	7	12	15	2	12	4	10	13	15	13	4	5	5	10
Group 33	2	7	14	16	5	9	2	9	16	11	11	5	7	4	14
Group 34	2	8	5	12	5	2	14	14	8	15	3	9	12	15	9
Group 35	2	9	13	4	2	13	8	11	6	4	6	8	15	15	11
Group 36	2	10	3	2	13	16	8	10	8	13	11	11	16	3	5
Group 37	2	11	15	3	11	6	14	10	15	10	6	7	7	14	3
Group 38	2	16	4	5	16	14	7	11	4	11	14	9	9	7	5
Group 39	3	3	4	6	11	12	13	6	12	14	4	5	13	5	14
Group 40	3	3	6	5	16	9	15	5	9	10	6	4	15	4	10
Group 41	3	4	5	14	4	6	12	13	5	13	6	11	11	12	14
Group 42	3	4	9	16	10	4	16	15	3	5	10	5	15	6	6
Group 43	3	4	16	10	5	10	4	9	9	16	15	6	3	5	15
Group 44	3	5	12	11	14	5	11	13	3	6	14	6	13	4	4
Group 45	3	6	4	10	6	5	9	15	4	15	5	16	16	9	10
Group 46	3	7	8	8	16	11	12	4	15	11	4	7	16	3	15
Group 47	3	7	16	11	4	15	3	15	11	12	12	4	7	8	16
Group 48	3	8	7	15	4	8	15	12	3	16	4	16	12	11	11
Group 49	3	8	15	4	16	4	8	7	7	15	12	11	3	16	12

Scrambling Code Group	slot number														
	#0	#1	#2	#3	#4	#5	#6	#7	#8	#9	#10	#11	#12	#13	#14
Group 50	3	10	10	15	16	5	4	6	16	4	3	15	9	6	9
Group 51	3	13	11	5	4	12	4	11	6	6	5	3	14	13	12
Group 52	3	14	7	9	14	10	13	8	7	8	10	4	4	13	9
Group 53	5	5	8	14	16	13	6	14	13	7	8	15	6	15	7
Group 54	5	6	11	7	10	8	5	8	7	12	12	10	6	9	11
Group 55	5	6	13	8	13	5	7	7	6	16	14	15	8	16	15
Group 56	5	7	9	10	7	11	6	12	9	12	11	8	8	6	10
Group 57	5	9	6	8	10	9	8	12	5	11	10	11	12	7	7
Group 58	5	10	10	12	8	11	9	7	8	9	5	12	6	7	6
Group 59	5	10	12	6	5	12	8	9	7	6	7	8	11	11	9
Group 60	5	13	15	15	14	8	6	7	16	8	7	13	14	5	16
Group 61	9	10	13	10	11	15	15	9	16	12	14	13	16	14	11
Group 62	9	11	12	15	12	9	13	13	11	14	10	16	15	14	16
Group 63	9	12	10	15	13	14	9	14	15	11	11	13	12	16	10

5.3 Modulation

5.3.1 Modulating chip rate

The modulating chip rate is 3.84 Mcps.

5.3.2 Modulation

Modulation of the complex-valued chip sequence generated by the spreading process is shown in Figure 11 below.

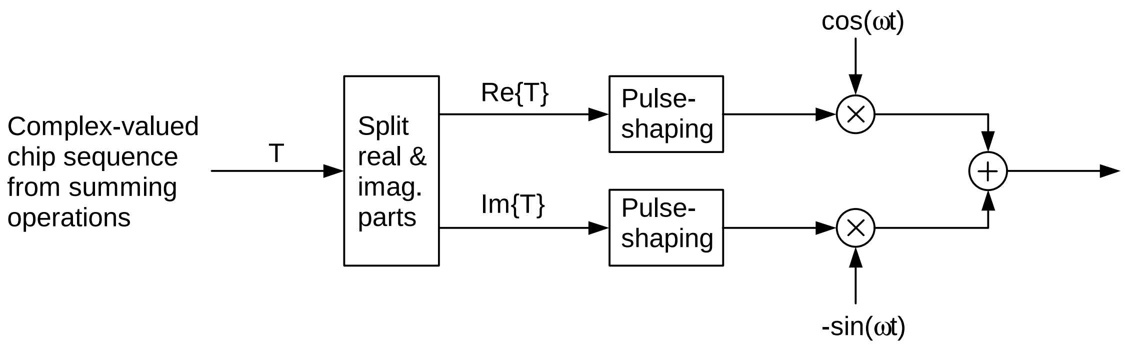


Figure 11: Downlink modulation

The pulse-shaping characteristics are described in [4].

Annex A (informative): Generalised Hierarchical Golay Sequences

A.1 Alternative generation

The generalised hierarchical Golay sequences for the PSC described in 5.2.3.1 may be also viewed as generated (in real valued representation) by the following methods:

Method 1.

The sequence y is constructed from two constituent sequences x_1 and x_2 of length n_1 and n_2 respectively using the following formula:

- $y(i) = x_2(i \bmod n_2) * x_1(i \operatorname{div} n_2)$, $i = 0 \ldots (n_1 * n_2) - 1$.

The constituent sequences x_1 and x_2 are chosen to be the following length 16 (i.e. $n_1 = n_2 = 16$) sequences:

- x_1 is defined to be the length 16 ($N^{(1)}=4$) Golay complementary sequence obtained by the delay matrix $D^{(1)} = [8, 4, 1, 2]$ and weight matrix $W^{(1)} = [1, -1, 1, 1]$.
- x_2 is a generalised hierarchical sequence using the following formula, selecting s=2 and using the two Golay complementary sequences x_3 and x_4 as constituent sequences. The length of the sequence x_3 and x_4 is called n_3 respectively n_4.
- $x_2(i) = x_4(i \bmod s + s*(i \operatorname{div} sn_3)) * x_3((i \operatorname{div} s) \bmod n_3)$, $i = 0 \ldots (n_3 * n_4) - 1$.
- x_3 and x_4 are defined to be identical and the length 4 ($N^{(3)} = N^{(4)}=2$) Golay complementary sequence obtained by the delay matrix $D^{(3)} = D^{(4)} = [1, 2]$ and weight matrix $W^{(3)} = W^{(4)} = [1, 1]$.

The Golay complementary sequences x_1,x_3 and x_4 are defined using the following recursive relation:

$a_0(k) = \delta(k)$ and $b_0(k) = \delta(k)$;

$a_n(k) = a_{n-1}(k) + W^{(j)}_n \cdot b_{n-1}(k-D^{(j)}_n)$;

$b_n(k) = a_{n-1}(k) - W^{(j)}_n \cdot b_{n-1}(k-D^{(j)}_n)$;

$k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, 2**N^{(j)} -1$;

$n = 1, 2, \ldots, N^{(j)}$.

The wanted Golay complementary sequence x_j is defined by a_n assuming $n=N^{(j)}$. The Kronecker delta function is described by δ, k,j and n are integers.

Method 2

The sequence y can be viewed as a pruned Golay complementary sequence and generated using the following parameters which apply to the generator equations for a and b above:

(a) Let j = 0, $N^{(0)} = 8$.

(b) $[D_1^0,D_2^0,D_3^0,D_4^0,D_5^0,D_6^0,D_7^0,D_8^0] = [128, 64, 16, 32, 8, 1, 4, 2]$.

(c) $[W_1^0,W_2^0,W_3^0,W_4^0,W_5^0,W_6^0,W_7^0,W_8^0] = [1, -1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1]$.

(d) For n = 4, 6, set $b_4(k) = a_4(k)$, $b_6(k) = a_6(k)$.

Annex B (informative): Change history

Change history							
Date	TSG #	TSG Doc.	CR	Rev	Subject/Comment	Old	New
14/01/00	RAN_05	RP-99589	-		Approved at TSG RAN #5 and placed under Change Control	-	3.0.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99682	005	1	Harmonization of notations for downlink scrambling codes	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99683	006	-	Update of downlink spreading description	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99682	007	1	Update of TS 25.213 uplink parts	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99683	008	-	Updated modulation description	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99683	009	-	Restriction for spreading factor 512 allocation in the UTRA FDD Downlink	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99683	011	1	CPCH codes in power control preamble	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99683	012	2	Support of short codes for CPCH	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99682	014	1	Editorial Change	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99683	016	-	Channelization Code Allocation for USTS	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99683	017	1	Correction (Editorial Change)	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99683	019	-	Correction to code allocation for compressed mode	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	-	-	-		Change history was added by the editor	3.1.0	3.1.1
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000063	020	1	Consistent numbering of scrambling code groups	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000063	021	-	Downlink signal flow corrections	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000063	022	-	Uplink signal flow corrections	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000063	023	1	Number of RACH scrambling codes	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000063	024	1	Editorial changes to 25.213	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000063	025	3	Number of PCPCH scrambling codes per cell	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000063	027	-	A typo correction for 5.2.2 and clarification for 5.2.3.1 of TS 25.213V3.1.1	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000063	028	2	Channelization code allocation method for PCPCH message part	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000063	029	-	Clarifications to DSCH scrambling and modulation in 25.213	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000063	032	-	Clean up of USTS related specifications	3.1.1	3.2.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000267	033	-	Clarifications to power control preamble sections	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000267	034	2	Numbering of the PCPCH access preamble and collision detection preamble scrambling codes	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000267	035	-	DPDCH/DPCCH gain factors	3.2.0	3.3.0
16/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000539	037	1	Proposed removal of the option of secondary scrambling code for some downlink common channels	3.3.0	3.4.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	-	-	-	Approved as Release 4 specification (v4.0.0) at TSG RAN #11	3.4.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010059	038	-	Clarification of channelization codes when SF=512	3.4.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010059	039	1	Clarification of the scrambling code of a power control preamble	3.4.0	4.0.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010333	041	1	Clarification of DL channelization code alignment	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010333	043	1	Clarification of PDSCH root channelisation code definition	4.0.0	4.1.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010738	047	-	Correction of section number reference	4.1.0	4.2.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020058	049	-	The inclusion of HSDPA into 25.213	4.2.0	5.0.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020309	053	1	Downlink bit mapping	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	050	-	Consistency of Signal Point Constellation for QPSK and 16QAM	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	054	-	Clarification of uplink DTX handling and modulation	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	055	-	Removal of code mapping description over HS-SCCH	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	056	3	I/Q mapping of HS-DPCCH	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	057	-	Definition of the amplitude gain factor for HS-DPCCH	5.0.0	5.1.0
16/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020583	058	1	Numbering corrections	5.1.0	5.2.0
16/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020583	059		Correction on the maximum DPDCH in Figure1	5.1.0	5.2.0
16/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020592	060		Power offset values for HS-DPCCH	5.1.0	5.2.0
26/03/03	RAN_19	RP-030135	061	1	Removal of the tiny text in Figure 1 and minor corrections to 4.2.1	5.2.0	5.3.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030457	062	-	Clarification of 16QAM modulation description	5.3.0	5.4.0
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030648	064	1	Correction of figure in combining of downlink physical channels	5.4.0	5.5.0
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030648	065	1	Correction of reference to calculation of HS-DPCCH gain factor	5.4.0	5.5.0
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030727	067	2	Restriction of DL secondary scrambling codes per CCTrCH	5.4.0	5.5.0
13/01/04	RAN_22	-	-	-	Created for M.1457 update	5.5.0	6.0.0
??	RAN_26	??	071	??	Inclusion of physical channels in support of E-DCH operation	6.0.0	6.1.0

3GPP TSG-RAN WG1 Meeting #39
Shin Yokohama, Japan, November 15th- 19th

Tdoc ⌘ R1-041521

CR-Form-v7

CHANGE REQUEST

⌘	**25.214**	**CR**	**361**	⌘ **rev**	**1**	⌘	Current version:	**6.3.0**	⌘

For ***HELP*** *on using this form, see bottom of this page or look at the pop-up text over the ⌘ symbols.*

Proposed change affects: UICC apps⌘ [ ] ME [X] Radio Access Network [X] Core Network [ ]

Title:	⌘	Introduction of E-DCH
Source:	⌘	RAN WG1
Work item code:	⌘	EDCH-Phys
Date:	⌘	25/11/2004
Category:	⌘	**B**
Release:	⌘	Rel-6

Use one of the following categories:
F *(correction)*
A *(corresponds to a correction in an earlier release)*
B *(addition of feature),*
C *(functional modification of feature)*
D *(editorial modification)*
Detailed explanations of the above categories can be found in 3GPP TR 21.900.

Use one of the following releases:
2 (GSM Phase 2)
R96 (Release 1996)
R97 (Release 1997)
R98 (Release 1998)
R99 (Release 1999)
Rel-4 (Release 4)
Rel-5 (Release 5)
Rel-6 (Release 6)

Reason for change:	⌘	This CR introduces E-DCH in the specifications
Summary of change:	⌘	Relevant sections are updated: - abbreviations - transmission timing adjustments - new section is added on E-DPCCH/ E-DPDCH power difference with DPCCH - new section is added on E-AGCH, E-RGCH and E-HICH power setting - new section is added on E-DCH related physical layer procedures (6B) : ACK/NACK combining and Relative Grants combining
Consequences if not approved:	⌘	

Clauses affected:	⌘	3, 4.3.4, 5.1.2.5B (new), 5.2.12-14 (new), 6B (new), 7 (and sub-sections)				
		Y	**N**			
Other specs affected:	⌘	**Y**		Other core specifications	⌘	25.201, 25.211, 25.212, 25.213, 25.215
				Test specifications		
				O&M Specifications		
Other comments:	⌘					

How to create CRs using this form:
Comprehensive information and tips about how to create CRs can be found at http://www.3gpp.org/specs/CR.htm.
Below is a brief summary:

1) Fill out the above form. The symbols above marked ⌘ contain pop-up help information about the field that they are closest to.

2) Obtain the latest version for the release of the specification to which the change is proposed. Use the MS Word "revision marks" feature (also known as "track changes") when making the changes. All 3GPP specifications can be downloaded from the 3GPP server under ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/specs/ For the latest version, look for the directory name with the latest date e.g. 2001-03 contains the specifications resulting from the March 2001 TSG meetings.

3) With "track changes" disabled, paste the entire CR form (use CTRL-A to select it) into the specification just in front of the clause containing the first piece of changed text. Delete those parts of the specification which are not relevant to the change request.

3GPP TS 25.214 V6.3.0 (2004-09)

Technical Specification

3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network; Physical layer procedures (FDD) (Release 6)

Keywords

UMTS, radio, layer 1

3GPP

Postal address

3GPP support office address

650 Route des Lucioles - Sophia Antipolis
Valbonne - FRANCE
Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Internet

http://www.3gpp.org

Contents

Foreword

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of this present document, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version x.y.z

where:

x the first digit:

1 presented to TSG for information;

2 presented to TSG for approval;

3 or greater indicates TSG approved document under change control.

y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.

z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the document.

1 Scope

The present document specifies and establishes the characteristics of the physicals layer procedures in the FDD mode of UTRA.

2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies. In the case of a reference to a 3GPP document (including a GSM document), a non-specific reference implicitly refers to the latest version of that document *in the same Release as the present document*.

[1] 3GPP TS 25.211: "Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (FDD)".

[2] 3GPP TS 25.212: "Multiplexing and channel coding (FDD)".

[3] 3GPP TS 25.213: "Spreading and modulation (FDD)".

[4] 3GPP TS 25.215: "Physical layer – Measurements (FDD)".

[5] 3GPP TS 25.331: "RRC Protocol Specification".

[6] 3GPP TS 25.433: "UTRAN Iub Interface NBAP Signalling".

[7] 3GPP TS 25.101: "UE Radio transmission and Reception (FDD)".

[8] 3GPP TS 25.133: "Requirements for Support of Radio Resource Management (FDD)".

[9] 3GPP TS 25.321: " MAC protocol specification".

[10] 3GPP TS 25.306: "UE Radio Access Capabilities".

3 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the following abbreviations apply:

ACK Acknowledgement
AICH Acquisition Indicator Channel
ASC Access Service Class
AP Access Preamble
BCH Broadcast Channel
CA Channel Assignment
CCC CPCH Control Command
CCPCH Common Control Physical Channel
CCTrCH Coded Composite Transport Channel
CD Collision Detection
CPCH Common Packet Channel
CPICH Common Pilot Channel
CQI Channel Quality Indicator
CRC Cyclic Redundancy Check
CSICH CPCH Status Indicator Channel

DCH	Dedicated Channel
DL	Downlink
DPCCH	Dedicated Physical Control Channel
DPCH	Dedicated Physical Channel
DPDCH	Dedicated Physical Data Channel
DTX	Discontinuous Transmission
E-DCH	Enhanced Dedicated Channel
E-DPCCH	E-DCH Dedicated Physical Control Channel
E-DPDCH	E-DCH Dedicated Physical Data Channel
E-AGCH	E-DCH Absolute Grant Channel
E-HICH	E-DCH HARQ Acknowledgement Indicator Channel
E-RGCH	E-DCH Relative Grant Channel
HSDPA	High Speed Downlink Packet Access
HS-DSCH	High Speed Downlink Shared Channel
HS-PDSCH	High Speed Physical Downlink Shared Channel
HS-SCCH	High Speed Physical Downlink Shared Control Channel
NACK	Negative Acknowledgement
P-CCPCH	Primary Common Control Physical Channel
PCA	Power Control Algorithm
PCPCH	Physical Common Packet Channel
PDSCH	Physical Downlink Shared Channel
PICH	Paging Indicator Channel
PRACH	Physical Random Access Channel
RACH	Random Access Channel
RL	Radio Link
RPL	Recovery Period Length
RSCP	Received Signal Code Power
S-CCPCH	Secondary Common Control Physical Channel
SCH	Synchronisation Channel
SFN	System Frame Number
SIR	Signal-to-Interference Ratio
SNIR	Signal to Noise Interference Ratio
SSDT	Site Selection Diversity TPC
TFC	Transport Format Combination
TPC	Transmit Power Control
TrCH	Transport Channel
TTI	Transmission Time Interval
UE	User Equipment
UL	Uplink
UTRAN	UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network

4 Synchronisation procedures

4.1 Cell search

During the cell search, the UE searches for a cell and determines the downlink scrambling code and common channel frame synchronisation of that cell. How cell search is typically done is described in Annex C.

4.2 Common physical channel synchronisation

The radio frame timing of all common physical channels can be determined after cell search. The P-CCPCH radio frame timing is found during cell search and the radio frame timing of all common physical channel are related to that timing as described in [1].

4.3 DPCCH/DPDCH synchronisation

4.3.1 Synchronisation primitives

4.3.1.1 General

For the dedicated channels, synchronisation primitives are used to indicate the synchronisation status of radio links, both in uplink and downlink. The definition of the primitives is given in the following subclauses.

4.3.1.2 Downlink synchronisation primitives

Layer 1 in the UE shall every radio frame check synchronisation status of the downlink dedicated channels. Synchronisation status is indicated to higher layers using the CPHY-Sync-IND and CPHY-Out-of-Sync-IND primitives.

The criteria for reporting synchronisation status are defined in two different phases.

The first phase starts when higher layers initiate physical dedicated channel establishment (as described in [5]) or whenever the UE initiates synchronisation procedure A (as described in section 4.3.2.1) and lasts until 160 ms after the downlink dedicated channel is considered established by higher layers (physical channel establishment is defined in [5]). During this time out-of-sync shall not be reported and in-sync shall be reported using the CPHY-Sync-IND primitive if the following criterion is fulfilled:

- The UE estimates the DPCCH quality over the previous 40 ms period to be better than a threshold Q_{in}. This criterion shall be assumed not to be fulfilled before 40 ms of DPCCH quality measurements have been collected. Q_{in} is defined implicitly by the relevant tests in [7].

The second phase starts 160 ms after the downlink dedicated channel is considered established by higher layers. During this phase both out-of-sync and in-sync are reported as follows.

Out-of-sync shall be reported using the CPHY-Out-of-Sync-IND primitive if any of the following criteria is fulfilled:

- The UE estimates the DPCCH quality over the previous 160 ms period to be worse than a threshold Q_{out}. Q_{out} is defined implicitly by the relevant tests in [7].

- The 20 most recently received transport blocks with a non-zero length CRC attached, as observed on all TrCHs using non-zero length CRC, have been received with incorrect CRC. In addition, over the previous 160 ms, all transport blocks with a non-zero length CRC attached have been received with incorrect CRC. In case no TFCI is used this criterion shall not be considered for the TrCH(s) not using guided detection if they do not use a non-zero length CRC in all transport formats. If no transport blocks with a non-zero length CRC attached are received over the previous 160 ms this criterion shall not be assumed to be fulfilled.

In-sync shall be reported using the CPHY-Sync-IND primitive if both of the following criteria are fulfilled:

- The UE estimates the DPCCH quality over the previous 160 ms period to be better than a threshold Q_{in}. Q_{in} is defined implicitly by the relevant tests in [7].

- At least one transport block with a non-zero length CRC attached, as observed on all TrCHs using non-zero length CRC, is received in a TTI ending in the current frame with correct CRC. If no transport blocks are received, or no transport block has a non-zero length CRC attached in a TTI ending in the current frame and in addition over the previous 160 ms at least one transport block with a non-zero length CRC attached has been received with a correct CRC, this criterion shall be assumed to be fulfilled. If no transport blocks with a non-zero length CRC attached are received over the previous 160 ms this criterion shall also be assumed to be fulfilled. In case no TFCI is used this criterion shall not be considered for the TrCH(s) not using guided detection if they do not use a non-zero length CRC in all transport formats.

How the primitives are used by higher layers is described in [5]. The above definitions may lead to radio frames where neither the in-sync nor the out-of-sync primitives are reported.

4.3.1.3 Uplink synchronisation primitives

Layer 1 in the Node B shall every radio frame check synchronisation status of all radio link sets. Synchronisation status is indicated to the RL Failure/Restored triggering function using either the CPHY-Sync-IND or CPHY-Out-of-Sync-IND primitive. Hence, only one synchronisation status indication shall be given per radio link set.

The exact criteria for indicating in-sync/out-of-sync is not subject to specification, but could e.g. be based on received DPCCH quality or CRC checks. One example would be to have the same criteria as for the downlink synchronisation status primitives.

4.3.2 Radio link establishment and physical layer reconfiguration for dedicated channels

4.3.2.1 General

Two synchronisation procedures are defined in order to obtain physical layer synchronisation of dedicated channels between UE and UTRAN:

- Synchronisation procedure A : This procedure shall be used when at least one downlink dedicated physical channel and one uplink dedicated physical channel are to be set up on a frequency and none of the radio links after the establishment/reconfiguration existed prior to the establishment/reconfiguration which also includes the following cases :
    - the UE was previously on another RAT i.e. inter-RAT handover
    - the UE was previously on another frequency i.e. inter-frequency hard handover
    - the UE has all its previous radio links removed and replaced by other radio links i.e. intra-frequency hard-handover
    - after it fails to complete an inter-RAT, intra- or inter-frequency hard-handover [8], the UE attempts to re-establish [5] all the dedicated physical channels which were already established immediately before the hard-handover attempt. In this case only steps c) and d) of synchronisation procedure A are applicable.
- Synchronisation procedure B : This procedure shall be used when one or several radio links are added to the active set and at least one of the radio links prior to the establishment/reconfiguration still exists after the establishment/reconfiguration.

For existing radio links, the reconfiguration of downlink phase reference from P-CPICH or S-CPICH to dedicated pilots is not supported. For all other physical layer reconfigurations not listed above, the UE and UTRAN shall not perform any of the synchronisation procedures listed above.

The two synchronisation procedures are described in subclauses 4.3.2.3 and 4.3.2.4 respectively.

4.3.2.2 Node B radio link set state machine

In Node B, each radio link set can be in three different states: initial state, out-of-sync state and in-sync state. Transitions between the different states is shown in figure 1 below. The state of the Node B at the start of radio link establishment is described in the following subclauses. Transitions between initial state and in-sync state are described in subclauses 4.3.2.3 and 4.3.2.4 and transitions between the in-sync and out-of-sync states are described in subclause 4.3.3.2.

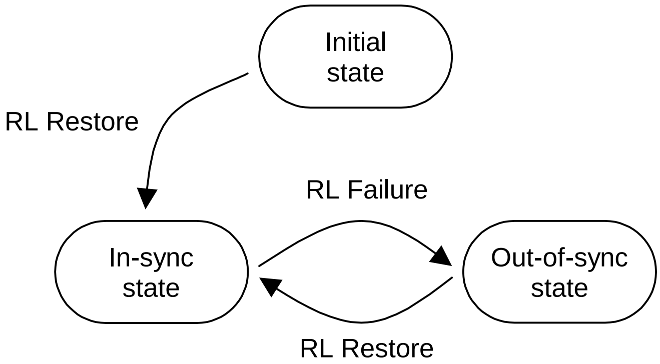


Figure 1: Node B radio link set states and transitions

4.3.2.3 Synchronisation procedure A

The synchronisation establishment procedure, which begins at the time indicated by higher layers (either immediately at receipt of upper layer signalling, or at an indicated activation time), is as follows:

a) Each Node B involved in the procedure sets all the radio link sets which are to be set-up for this UE in the initial state.

b) UTRAN shall start the transmission of the downlink DPCCH and may start the transmission of DPDCH if any data is to be transmitted. The initial downlink DPCCH transmit power is set by higher layers [6]. Downlink TPC commands are generated as described in 5.1.2.2.1.2.

c) The UE establishes downlink chip and frame synchronisation of DPCCH, using the P-CCPCH timing and timing offset information notified from UTRAN. Frame synchronisation can be confirmed using the frame synchronisation word. Downlink synchronisation status is reported to higher layers every radio frame according to subclause 4.3.1.2.

d) The UE shall not transmit on uplink until higher layers consider the downlink physical channel established. If no activation time for uplink DPCCH has been signalled to the UE or if the UE attempts to re-establish the DPCH after an inter-RAT, intra- or inter-frequency hard-handover failure [5], uplink DPCCH transmission shall start when higher layers consider the downlink physical channel established. If an activation time has been given, uplink DPCCH transmission shall not start before the downlink physical channel has been established and the activation time has been reached. Physical channel establishment and activation time are defined in [5]. The initial uplink DPCCH transmit power is set by higher layers [5]. In case the UE attempts to re-establish the DPCH after an inter-RAT, intra- or inter-frequency hard-handover failure [5] the initial uplink DPCCH power shall be the same as the one used immediately preceding the inter-RAT, intra- or inter-frequency hard-handover attempt. In case of physical layer reconfiguration the uplink DPCCH power is kept unchanged between before and after the reconfiguration except for inner loop power control adjustments. A power control preamble shall be applied as indicated by higher layers. The transmission of the uplink DPCCH power control preamble shall start N_{pcp} radio frames prior to the start of uplink DPDCH transmission, where N_{pcp} is a higher layer parameter set by UTRAN [5]; in case the UE attempts to re-establish the DPCH after an inter-RAT, intra- or inter-frequency hard-handover failure [5] the UE shall use the value of N_{pcp} as specified in [5] for this case. Note that the transmission start delay between DPCCH and DPDCH may be cancelled using a power control preamble of 0 length. The starting time for transmission of DPDCHs shall also satisfy the constraints on adding transport channels to a CCTrCH, as defined in [2] sub-clause 4.2.14, independently of whether there are any bits mapped to the DPDCHs. During the uplink DPCCH power control preamble, independently of the selected TFC, no transmission is done on the DPDCH.

e) UTRAN establishes uplink chip and frame synchronisation. Frame synchronisation can be confirmed using the frame synchronisation word. Radio link sets remain in the initial state until N_INSYNC_IND successive in-sync indications are received from layer 1, when Node B shall trigger the RL Restore procedure indicating which radio link set has obtained synchronisation. When RL Restore has been triggered the radio link set shall be considered to be in the in-sync state. The parameter value of N_INSYNC_IND is configurable, see [6]. The RL Restore procedure may be triggered several times, indicating when synchronisation is obtained for different radio link sets.

Note: The total signalling response delay for the establishment of a new DPCH shall not exceed the requirements given in [5] sub-clause 13.5.

4.3.2.4 Synchronisation procedure B

The synchronisation procedure B, which begins at the time indicated by higher layers (either immediately at receipt of upper layer signalling, or at an indicated activation time) is as follows:

a) The following applies to each Node B involved in the procedure:

- New radio link sets are set up to be in initial state.
- If one or several radio links are added to an existing radio link set, this radio link set shall be considered to be in the state the radio link set was prior to the addition of the radio link, i.e. if the radio link set was in the in-sync state before the addition of the radio link it shall remain in that state.

b) UTRAN starts the transmission of the downlink DPCCH/DPDCH for each new radio link at a frame timing such that the frame timing received at the UE will be within $T_0 \pm 148$ chips prior to the frame timing of the uplink DPCCH/DPDCH at the UE. Simultaneously, UTRAN establishes uplink chip and frame synchronisation of each new radio link. Frame synchronisation can be confirmed using the frame synchronisation word. Radio link sets considered to be in the initial state shall remain in the initial state until N_INSYNC_IND successive in-sync indications are received from layer 1, when Node B shall trigger the RL Restore procedure indicating which radio link set has obtained synchronisation. When RL Restore is triggered the radio link set shall be considered to be in the in-sync state. The parameter value of N_INSYNC_IND is configurable, see [6]. The RL Restore procedure may be triggered several times, indicating when synchronisation is obtained for different radio link sets.

c) The UE establishes chip and frame synchronisation of each new radio link. Layer 1 in the UE keeps reporting downlink synchronisation status to higher layers every radio frame according to the second phase of sub-clause 4.3.1.2. Frame synchronisation can be confirmed using the frame synchronisation word.

4.3.3 Radio link monitoring

4.3.3.1 Downlink radio link failure

The downlink radio links shall be monitored by the UE, to trigger radio link failure procedures. The downlink radio link failure criteria is specified in [5], and is based on the synchronisation status primitives CPHY-Sync-IND and CPHY-Out-of-Sync-IND, indicating in-sync and out-of-sync respectively.

4.3.3.2 Uplink radio link failure/restore

The uplink radio link sets are monitored by the Node B, to trigger radio link failure/restore procedures. Once the radio link sets have been established, they will be in the in-sync or out-of-sync states as shown in figure 1 in subclause 4.3.2.1. Transitions between those two states are described below.

The uplink radio link failure/restore criteria is based on the synchronisation status primitives CPHY-Sync-IND and CPHY-Out-of-Sync-IND, indicating in-sync and out-of-sync respectively. Note that only one synchronisation status indication shall be given per radio link set.

When the radio link set is in the in-sync state, Node B shall start timer T_RLFAILURE after receiving N_OUTSYNC_IND consecutive out-of-sync indications. Node B shall stop and reset timer T_RLFAILURE upon receiving successive N_INSYNC_IND in-sync indications. If T_RLFAILURE expires, Node B shall trigger the RL Failure procedure and indicate which radio link set is out-of-sync. When the RL Failure procedure is triggered, the state of the radio link set change to the out-of-sync state.

When the radio link set is in the out-of-sync state, after receiving N_INSYNC_IND successive in-sync indications Node B shall trigger the RL Restore procedure and indicate which radio link set has re-established synchronisation. When the RL Restore procedure is triggered, the state of the radio link set change to the in-sync state.

The specific parameter settings (values of T_RLFAILURE, N_OUTSYNC_IND, and N_INSYNC_IND) are configurable, see [6].

4.3.4 Transmission timing adjustments

During a connection the UE may adjust its DPDCH/DPCCH transmission time instant.

When the UE autonomously adjusts its DPDCH/DPCCH transmission time instant, it shall simultaneously adjust the HS-DPCCH, E-DPCCH and E-DPDCH transmission time instant by the same amount so that the relative timing between DPCCH/DPDCH and HS-DPCCH is kept constant and that DPCCH/DPDCH and E-DPCCH/E-DPDCH remain time aligned.

If the receive timing for any downlink DPCCH/DPDCH in the current active set has drifted, so the time between reception of the downlink DPCCH/DPDCH in question and transmission of uplink DPCCH/DPDCH lies outside the valid range, L1 shall inform higher layers of this, so that the network can be informed of this and downlink timing can be adjusted by the network.

The maximum rate of uplink TX time adjustment, and the valid range for the time between downlink DPCCH/DPDCH reception and uplink DPCCH/DPDCH transmission in the UE are defined by the requirements specified in [8].

5 Power control

5.1 Uplink power control

5.1.1 PRACH

5.1.1.1 General

The power control during the physical random access procedure is described in clause 6. The setting of power of the message control and data parts is described in the next subclause.

5.1.1.2 Setting of PRACH control and data part power difference

The message part of the uplink PRACH channel shall employ gain factors to control the control/data part relative power similar to the uplink dedicated physical channels. Hence, subclause 5.1.2.5 applies also for the RACH message part, with the differences that:

- β_c is the gain factor for the control part (similar to DPCCH);
- β_d is the gain factor for the data part (similar to DPDCH);
- no inner loop power control is performed.

5.1.2 DPCCH/DPDCH

5.1.2.1 General

The initial uplink DPCCH transmit power is set by higher layers. Subsequently the uplink transmit power control procedure simultaneously controls the power of a DPCCH and its corresponding DPDCHs (if present). The relative transmit power offset between DPCCH and DPDCHs is determined by the network and is computed according to subclause 5.1.2.5 using the gain factors signalled to the UE using higher layer signalling.

The operation of the inner power control loop, described in sub clause 5.1.2.2, adjusts the power of the DPCCH and DPDCHs by the same amount, provided there are no changes in gain factors. Additional adjustments to the power of the DPCCH associated with the use of compressed mode are described in sub clause 5.1.2.3.

Any change in the uplink DPCCH transmit power shall take place immediately before the start of the pilot field on the DPCCH. The change in DPCCH power with respect to its previous value is derived by the UE and is denoted by Δ_{DPCCH} (in dB). The previous value of DPCCH power shall be that used in the previous slot, except in the event of an interruption in transmission due to the use of compressed mode, when the previous value shall be that used in the last slot before the transmission gap.

During the operation of the uplink power control procedure the UE transmit power shall not exceed a maximum allowed value which is the lower out of the maximum output power of the terminal power class and a value which may be set by higher layer signalling.

Uplink power control shall be performed while the UE transmit power is below the maximum allowed output power.

The provisions for power control at the maximum allowed value and below the required minimum output power (as defined in [7]) are described in sub-clause 5.1.2.6.

5.1.2.2 Ordinary transmit power control

5.1.2.2.1 General

The uplink inner-loop power control adjusts the UE transmit power in order to keep the received uplink signal-to-interference ratio (SIR) at a given SIR target, SIR_{target}.

The serving cells (cells in the active set) should estimate signal-to-interference ratio SIR_{est} of the received uplink DPCH. The serving cells should then generate TPC commands and transmit the commands once per slot according to the following rule: if $SIR_{est} > SIR_{target}$ then the TPC command to transmit is "0", while if $SIR_{est} < SIR_{target}$ then the TPC command to transmit is "1".

Upon reception of one or more TPC commands in a slot, the UE shall derive a single TPC command, TPC_cmd, for each slot, combining multiple TPC commands if more than one is received in a slot. This is also valid when SSDT transmission is used in the downlink. Two algorithms shall be supported by the UE for deriving a TPC_cmd. Which of these two algorithms is used is determined by a UE-specific higher-layer parameter, "PowerControlAlgorithm", and is under the control of the UTRAN. If "PowerControlAlgorithm" indicates "algorithm1", then the layer 1 parameter PCA shall take the value 1 and if "PowerControlAlgorithm" indicates "algorithm2" then PCA shall take the value 2.

If PCA has the value 1, Algorithm 1, described in subclause 5.1.2.2.2, shall be used for processing TPC commands.

If PCA has the value 2, Algorithm 2, described in subclause 5.1.2.2.3, shall be used for processing TPC commands.

The step size Δ_{TPC} is a layer 1 parameter which is derived from the UE-specific higher-layer parameter "TPC-StepSize" which is under the control of the UTRAN. If "TPC-StepSize" has the value "dB1", then the layer 1 parameter Δ_{TPC} shall take the value 1 dB and if "TPC-StepSize" has the value "dB2", then Δ_{TPC} shall take the value 2 dB. The parameter "TPC-StepSize" only applies to Algorithm 1 as stated in [5]. For Algorithm 2 Δ_{TPC} shall always take the value 1 dB.

After deriving of the combined TPC command TPC_cmd using one of the two supported algorithms, the UE shall adjust the transmit power of the uplink DPCCH with a step of Δ_{DPCCH} (in dB) which is given by:

$$\Delta_{DPCCH} = \Delta_{TPC} \times TPC\_cmd.$$

5.1.2.2.1.1 Out of synchronisation handling

After 160 ms after physical channel establishment (defined in [5]), the UE shall control its transmitter according to a downlink DPCCH quality criterion as follows:

- The UE shall shut its transmitter off when the UE estimates the DPCCH quality over the last 160 ms period to be worse than a threshold Q_{out}. Q_{out} is defined implicitly by the relevant tests in [7].
- The UE can turn its transmitter on again when the UE estimates the DPCCH quality over the last 160 ms period to be better than a threshold Q_{in}. Q_{in} is defined implicitly by the relevant tests in [7]. When transmission is resumed, the power of the DPCCH shall be the same as when the UE transmitter was shut off.

5.1.2.2.1.2 TPC command generation on downlink during RL initialisation

When commanded by higher layers the TPC commands sent on a downlink radio link from Node Bs that have not yet achieved uplink synchronisation shall follow a pattern as follows:

If higher layers indicate by "First RLS indicator" that the radio link is part of the first radio link set sent to the UE and the value 'n' obtained from the parameter "DL TPC pattern 01 count" passed by higher layers is different from 0 then :

- the TPC pattern shall consist of n instances of the pair of TPC commands ("0" ,"1"), followed by one instance of TPC command "1", where ("0","1") indicates the TPC commands to be transmitted in 2 consecutive slots,
- the TPC pattern continuously repeat but shall be forcibly re-started at the beginning of each frame where CFN mod 4 = 0.

else

- The TPC pattern shall consist only of TPC commands "1".

The TPC pattern shall terminate once uplink synchronisation is achieved.

5.1.2.2.2 Algorithm 1 for processing TPC commands

5.1.2.2.2.1 Derivation of TPC_cmd when only one TPC command is received in each slot

When a UE is not in soft handover, only one TPC command will be received in each slot. In this case, the value of TPC_cmd shall be derived as follows:

- If the received TPC command is equal to 0 then TPC_cmd for that slot is –1.
- If the received TPC command is equal to 1, then TPC_cmd for that slot is 1.

5.1.2.2.2.2 Combining of TPC commands from radio links of the same radio link set

When a UE is in soft handover, multiple TPC commands may be received in each slot from different cells in the active set. In some cases, the UE has the knowledge that some of the transmitted TPC commands in a slot are the same. This is the case when the radio links are in the same radio link set. For these cases, the TPC commands from the same radio link set shall be combined into one TPC command, to be further combined with other TPC commands as described in subclause 5.1.2.2.2.3.

5.1.2.2.2.3 Combining of TPC commands from radio links of different radio link sets

This subclause describes the general scheme for combination of the TPC commands from radio links of different radio link sets.

First, the UE shall conduct a soft symbol decision W_i on each of the power control commands TPC_i, where i = 1, 2, …, N, where N is greater than 1 and is the number of TPC commands from radio links of different radio link sets, that may be the result of a first phase of combination according to subclause 5.1.2.2.2.2.

Finally, the UE derives a combined TPC command, TPC_cmd, as a function γ of all the N soft symbol decisions W_i:

- TPC_cmd = γ (W_1, W_2, … W_N), where TPC_cmd can take the values 1 or -1.

The function γ shall fulfil the following criteria:

If the N TPC_i commands are random and uncorrelated, with equal probability of being transmitted as "0" or "1", the probability that the output of γ is equal to 1 shall be greater than or equal to $1/(2^N)$, and the probability that the output of γ is equal to -1 shall be greater than or equal to 0.5. Further, the output of γ shall equal 1 if the TPC commands from all the radio link sets are reliably "1", and the output of γ shall equal –1 if a TPC command from any of the radio link sets is reliably "0".

5.1.2.2.3 Algorithm 2 for processing TPC commands

NOTE: Algorithm 2 makes it possible to emulate smaller step sizes than the minimum power control step specified in subclause 5.1.2.2.1, or to turn off uplink power control by transmitting an alternating series of TPC commands.

5.1.2.2.3.1 Derivation of TPC_cmd when only one TPC command is received in each slot

When a UE is not in soft handover, only one TPC command will be received in each slot. In this case, the UE shall process received TPC commands on a 5-slot cycle, where the sets of 5 slots shall be aligned to the frame boundaries and there shall be no overlap between each set of 5 slots.

The value of TPC_cmd shall be derived as follows:

- For the first 4 slots of a set, TPC_cmd = 0.
- For the fifth slot of a set, the UE uses hard decisions on each of the 5 received TPC commands as follows:
  - If all 5 hard decisions within a set are 1 then TPC_cmd = 1 in the 5^{th} slot.
  - If all 5 hard decisions within a set are 0 then TPC_cmd = -1 in the 5^{th} slot.
  - Otherwise, TPC_cmd = 0 in the 5^{th} slot.

5.1.2.2.3.2 Combining of TPC commands from radio links of the same radio link set

When a UE is in soft handover, multiple TPC commands may be received in each slot from different cells in the active set. In some cases, the UE has the knowledge that some of the transmitted TPC commands in a slot are the same. This is the case when the radio links are in the same radio link set. For these cases, the TPC commands from radio links of the same radio link set shall be combined into one TPC command, to be processed and further combined with any other TPC commands as described in subclause 5.1.2.2.3.3.

5.1.2.2.3.3 Combining of TPC commands from radio links of different radio link sets

This subclause describes the general scheme for combination of the TPC commands from radio links of different radio link sets.

The UE shall make a hard decision on the value of each TPC_i, where i = 1, 2, …, N and N is the number of TPC commands from radio links of different radio link sets, that may be the result of a first phase of combination according to subclause 5.1.2.2.3.2.

The UE shall follow this procedure for 5 consecutive slots, resulting in N hard decisions for each of the 5 slots.

The sets of 5 slots shall be aligned to the frame boundaries and there shall be no overlap between each set of 5 slots.

The value of TPC_cmd is zero for the first 4 slots. After 5 slots have elapsed, the UE shall determine the value of TPC_cmd for the fifth slot in the following way:

The UE first determines one temporary TPC command, TPC_temp_i, for each of the N sets of 5 TPC commands as follows:

- If all 5 hard decisions within a set are "1", TPC_temp_i = 1.
- If all 5 hard decisions within a set are "0", TPC_temp_i = -1.
- Otherwise, TPC_temp_i = 0.

Finally, the UE derives a combined TPC command for the fifth slot, TPC_cmd, as a function γ of all the N temporary power control commands TPC_temp_i:

TPC_cmd(5^{th} slot) = γ (TPC_temp_1, TPC_temp_2, …, TPC_temp_N), where TPC_cmd(5^{th} slot) can take the values 1, 0 or –1, and γ is given by the following definition:

- TPC_cmd is set to -1 if any of TPC_temp_1 to TPC_temp_N are equal to -1.
- Otherwise, TPC_cmd is set to 1 if $\frac{1}{N}\sum_{i=1}^{N} TPC\_temp_i > 0.5$.

- Otherwise, TPC_cmd is set to 0.

5.1.2.3 Transmit power control in compressed mode

In compressed mode, one or more transmission gap pattern sequences are active. Therefore some frames are compressed and contain transmission gaps. The uplink power control procedure is as specified in clause 5.1.2.2, using the same UTRAN supplied parameters for Power Control Algorithm and step size (Δ_{TPC}), but with additional features which aim to recover as rapidly as possible a signal-to-interference ratio (SIR) close to the target SIR after each transmission gap.

The serving cells (cells in the active set) should estimate signal-to-interference ratio SIR_{est} of the received uplink DPCH. The serving cells should then generate TPC commands and transmit the commands once per slot, except during downlink transmission gaps, according to the following rule: if $SIR_{est} > SIR_{cm\_target}$ then the TPC command to transmit is "0", while if $SIR_{est} < SIR_{cm\_target}$ then the TPC command to transmit is "1".

SIR_{cm_target} is the target SIR during compressed mode and fulfils

$SIR_{cm\_target} = SIR_{target} + \Delta SIR_{PILOT} + \Delta SIR1\_coding + \Delta SIR2\_coding$,

where ΔSIR1_coding and ΔSIR2_coding are computed from uplink parameters DeltaSIR1, DeltaSIR2, DeltaSIRafter1, DeltaSIRafter2 signalled by higher layers as:

- ΔSIR1_coding = DeltaSIR1 if the start of the first transmission gap in the transmission gap pattern is within the current uplink frame.
- ΔSIR1_coding = DeltaSIRafter1 if the current uplink frame just follows a frame containing the start of the first transmission gap in the transmission gap pattern.
- ΔSIR2_coding = DeltaSIR2 if the start of the second transmission gap in the transmission gap pattern is within the current uplink frame.
- ΔSIR2_coding = DeltaSIRafter2 if the current uplink frame just follows a frame containing the start of the second transmission gap in the transmission gap pattern.
- ΔSIR1_coding = 0 dB and ΔSIR2_coding = 0 dB in all other cases.

ΔSIR_{PILOT} is defined as: $\Delta SIR_{PILOT} = 10Log_{10} (N_{pilot,N}/N_{pilot,curr\_frame})$,

where $N_{pilot,curr\_frame}$ is the number of pilot bits per slot in the current uplink frame, and $N_{pilot,N}$ is the number of pilot bits per slot in a normal uplink frame without a transmission gap.

In the case of several compressed mode pattern sequences being used simultaneously, ΔSIR1_coding and ΔSIR2_coding offsets are computed for each compressed mode pattern and all ΔSIR1_coding and ΔSIR2_coding offsets are summed together.

In compressed mode, compressed frames may occur in either the uplink or the downlink or both. In uplink compressed frames, the transmission of uplink DPDCH(s) and DPCCH shall both be stopped during transmission gaps.

Due to the transmission gaps in compressed frames, there may be missing TPC commands in the downlink. If no downlink TPC command is transmitted, the corresponding TPC_cmd derived by the UE shall be set to zero.

Compressed and non-compressed frames in the uplink DPCCH may have a different number of pilot bits per slot. A change in the transmit power of the uplink DPCCH would be needed in order to compensate for the change in the total pilot energy. Therefore at the start of each slot the UE shall derive the value of a power offset Δ_{PILOT}. If the number of pilot bits per slot in the uplink DPCCH is different from its value in the most recently transmitted slot, Δ_{PILOT} (in dB) shall be given by:

$$\Delta_{PILOT} = 10Log_{10} (N_{pilot,prev}/N_{pilot,curr});$$

where $N_{pilot,prev}$ is the number of pilot bits in the most recently transmitted slot , and $N_{pilot,curr}$ is the number of pilot bits in the current slot. Otherwise, including during transmission gaps in the downlink, Δ_{PILOT} shall be zero.

Unless otherwise specified, in every slot during compressed mode the UE shall adjust the transmit power of the uplink DPCCH with a step of Δ_{DPCCH} (in dB) which is given by:

$$\Delta_{DPCCH} = \Delta_{TPC} \times TPC\_cmd + \Delta_{PILOT.}$$

At the start of the first slot after an uplink or downlink transmission gap the UE shall apply a change in the transmit power of the uplink DPCCH by an amount Δ_{DPCCH} (in dB), with respect to the uplink DPCCH power in the most recently transmitted uplink slot, where:

$$\Delta_{DPCCH} = \Delta_{RESUME} + \Delta_{PILOT.}$$

The value of Δ_{RESUME} (in dB) shall be determined by the UE according to the Initial Transmit Power mode (ITP). The ITP is a UE specific parameter, which is signalled by the network with the other compressed mode parameters (see [4]). The different modes are summarised in table 1.

Table 1: Initial Transmit Power modes during compressed mode

Initial Transmit Power mode	Description
0	$\Delta_{RESUME} = \Delta_{TPC} \times TPC\_cmd_{gap}$
1	$\Delta_{RESUME} = \delta_{last}$

In the case of a transmission gap in the uplink, TPC_cmd_{gap} shall be the value of TPC_cmd derived in the first slot of the uplink transmission gap, if a downlink TPC_command is transmitted in that slot. Otherwise TPC_cmd_{gap} shall be zero.

δ_{last} shall be equal to the most recently computed value of δ_i. δ_i shall be updated according to the following recursive relations, which shall be executed in all slots in which both the uplink DPCCH and a downlink TPC command are transmitted, and in the first slot of an uplink transmission gap if a downlink TPC command is transmitted in that slot:

$$\delta_i = 0.9375\delta_{i-1} - 0.96875 TPC\_cmd_i \Delta_{TPC} k_{sc}$$
$$\delta_{i-1} = \delta_i$$

where: TPC_cmd_i is the power control command derived by the UE in that slot;

$k_{sc} = 0$ if additional scaling is applied in the current slot and the previous slot as described in sub-clause 5.1.2.6, and $k_{sc} = 1$ otherwise.

δ_{i-1} is the value of δ_i computed for the previous slot. The value of δ_{i-1} shall be initialised to zero when the uplink DPCCH is activated, and also at the end of the first slot after each uplink transmission gap, and also at the end of the first slot after each downlink transmission gap. The value of δ_i shall be set to zero at the end of the first slot after each uplink transmission gap.

After a transmission gap in either the uplink or the downlink, the period following resumption of simultaneous uplink and downlink DPCCH transmission is called a recovery period. RPL is the recovery period length and is expressed as a number of slots. RPL is equal to the minimum value out of the transmission gap length and 7 slots. If a transmission gap is scheduled to start before RPL slots have elapsed, then the recovery period shall end at the start of the gap, and the value of RPL shall be reduced accordingly.

During the recovery period, 2 modes are possible for the power control algorithm. The Recovery Period Power control mode (RPP) is signalled with the other compressed mode parameters (see [4]). The different modes are summarised in the table 2:

Table 2: Recovery Period Power control modes during compressed mode

Recovery Period power control mode	Description
0	Transmit power control is applied using the algorithm determined by the value of PCA, as in subclause 5.1.2.2 with step size $\Delta_{TPC.}$
1	Transmit power control is applied using algorithm 1 (see subclause 5.1.2.2.2) with step size Δ_{RP-TPC} during RPL slots after each transmission gap.

For RPP mode 0, the step size is not changed during the recovery period and ordinary transmit power control is applied (see subclause 5.1.2.2), using the algorithm for processing TPC commands determined by the value of PCA (see sub clauses 5.1.2.2.2 and 5.1.2.2.3).

For RPP mode 1, during RPL slots after each transmission gap, power control algorithm 1 is applied with a step size $\Delta_{RP\text{-}TPC}$ instead of Δ_{TPC}, regardless of the value of PCA. Therefore, the change in uplink DPCCH transmit power at the start of each of the RPL+1 slots immediately following the transmission gap (except for the first slot after the transmission gap) is given by:

$$\Delta_{DPCCH} = \Delta_{RP\text{-}TPC} \times \text{TPC\_cmd} + \Delta_{PILOT}$$

$\Delta_{RP\text{-}TPC}$ is called the recovery power control step size and is expressed in dB. If PCA has the value 1, $\Delta_{RP\text{-}TPC}$ is equal to the minimum value of 3 dB and $2\Delta_{TPC}$. If PCA has the value 2 , $\Delta_{RP\text{-}TPC}$ is equal to 1 dB.

After the recovery period, ordinary transmit power control resumes using the algorithm specified by the value of PCA and with step size Δ_{TPC}.

If PCA has the value 2 , the sets of slots over which the TPC commands are processed shall remain aligned to the frame boundaries in the compressed frame. For both RPP mode 0 and RPP mode 1, if the transmission gap or the recovery period results in any incomplete sets of TPC commands, TPC_cmd shall be zero for those sets of slots which are incomplete.

5.1.2.4 Transmit power control in the uplink DPCCH power control preamble

An uplink DPCCH power control preamble is a period of uplink DPCCH transmission prior to the start of the uplink DPDCH transmission. The downlink DPCCH shall also be transmitted during an uplink DPCCH power control preamble.

The length of the uplink DPCCH power control preamble is a higher layer parameter signalled by the network as defined in [5]. The uplink DPDCH transmission shall commence after the end of the uplink DPCCH power control preamble.

During the uplink DPCCH power control preamble the change in uplink DPCCH transmit power shall be given by:

$$\Delta_{DPCCH} = \Delta_{TPC} \times \text{TPC\_cmd}.$$

During the uplink DPCCH power control preamble TPC_cmd is derived according to algorithm 1 as described in sub clause 5.1.2.2.1, regardless of the value of PCA.

Ordinary power control (see subclause 5.1.2.2), with the power control algorithm determined by the value of PCA and step size $\Delta_{TPC,}$ shall be used after the end of the uplink DPCCH power control preamble.

5.1.2.5 Setting of the uplink DPCCH/DPDCH power difference

5.1.2.5.1 General

The uplink DPCCH and DPDCH(s) are transmitted on different codes as defined in subclause 4.2.1 of [3]. The gain factors β_c and β_d may vary for each TFC. There are two ways of controlling the gain factors of the DPCCH code and the DPDCH codes for different TFCs in normal (non-compressed) frames:

- β_c and β_d are signalled for the TFC, or
- β_c and β_d is computed for the TFC, based on the signalled settings for a reference TFC.

Combinations of the two above methods may be used to associate β_c and β_d values to all TFCs in the TFCS. The two methods are described in subclauses 5.1.2.5.2 and 5.1.2.5.3 respectively. Several reference TFCs may be signalled from higher layers.

The gain factors may vary on radio frame basis depending on the current TFC used. Further, the setting of gain factors is independent of the inner loop power control.

After applying the gain factors, the UE shall scale the total transmit power of the DPCCH and DPDCH(s), such that the DPCCH output power follows the changes required by the power control procedure with power adjustments of Δ_{DPCCH} dB, subject to the provisions of sub-clause 5.1.2.6.

The gain factors during compressed frames are based on the nominal power relation defined in normal frames, as specified in subclause 5.1.2.5.4.

5.1.2.5.2 Signalled gain factors

When the gain factors β_c and β_d are signalled by higher layers for a certain TFC, the signalled values are used directly for weighting of DPCCH and DPDCH(s). The variable A_j, called the nominal power relation is then computed as:

$$A_j = \frac{\beta_d}{\beta_c}.$$

5.1.2.5.3 Computed gain factors

The gain factors β_c and β_d may also be computed for certain TFCs, based on the signalled settings for a reference TFC.

Let $\beta_{c,ref}$ and $\beta_{d,ref}$ denote the signalled gain factors for the reference TFC. Further, let $\beta_{c,j}$ and $\beta_{d,j}$ denote the gain factors used for the j:th TFC. Also let L_{ref} denote the number of DPDCHs used for the reference TFC and $L_{,j}$ denote the number of DPDCHs used for the j:th TFC.

Define the variable

$$K_{ref} = \sum_i RM_i \cdot N_i \ ;$$

where RM_i is the semi-static rate matching attribute for transport channel i (defined in [2] subclause 4.2.7), N_i is the number of bits output from the radio frame segmentation block for transport channel i (defined in [2] subclause 4.2.6.1), and the sum is taken over all the transport channels i in the reference TFC.

Similarly, define the variable

$$K_j = \sum_i RM_i \cdot N_i \ ;$$

where the sum is taken over all the transport channels i in the j:th TFC.

The variable A_j, called the nominal power relation is then computed as:

$$A_j = \frac{\beta_{d,ref}}{\beta_{c,ref}} \cdot \sqrt{\frac{L_{ref}}{L_j}} \sqrt{\frac{K_j}{K_{ref}}}.$$

The gain factors for the j:th TFC are then computed as follows:

- If $A_j > 1$, then $\beta_{d,j} = 1.0$ and $\beta_{c,j}$ is the largest quantized β -value, for which the condition $\beta_{c,j} \leq 1 / A_j$ holds. Since $\beta_{c,j}$ may not be set to zero, if the above rounding results in a zero value, $\beta_{c,j}$ shall be set to the lowest quantized amplitude ratio of 1/15 as specified in [3].
- If $A_j \leq 1$, then $\beta_{d,j}$ is the smallest quantized β -value, for which the condition $\beta_{d,j} \geq A_j$ holds and $\beta_{c,j} = 1.0$.

The quantized β-values are defined in [3] subclause 4.2.1, table 1.

5.1.2.5.4 Setting of the uplink DPCCH/DPDCH power difference in compressed mode

The gain factors used during a compressed frame for a certain TFC are calculated from the nominal power relation used in normal (non-compressed) frames for that TFC. Let A_j denote the nominal power relation for the j:th TFC in a normal frame. Further, let $\beta_{c,C,j}$ and $\beta_{d,C,j}$ denote the gain factors used for the j:th TFC when the frame is compressed. The variable $A_{C,j}$ is computed as:

$$A_{C,j} = A_j \cdot \sqrt{\frac{15 \cdot N_{pilot,C}}{N_{slots,C} \cdot N_{pilot,N}}};$$

where $N_{pilot,C}$ is the number of pilot bits per slot when in compressed mode, and $N_{pilot,N}$ is the number of pilot bits per slot in normal mode. $N_{slots,C}$ is the number of slots in the compressed frame used for transmitting the data.

The gain factors for the j:th TFC in a compressed frame are computed as follows:

If $A_{C,j} > 1$, then $\beta_{d,C,j} = 1.0$ and $\beta_{c,C,j}$ is the largest quantized β -value, for which the condition $\beta_{c,C,j} \leq 1 / A_{C,j}$ holds. Since $\beta_{c,C,j}$ may not be set to zero, if the above rounding results in a zero value, $\beta_{c,C,j}$ shall be set to the lowest quantized amplitude ratio of 1/15 as specified in [3].

If $A_{C,j} \leq 1$, then $\beta_{d,C,j}$ is the smallest quantized β -value, for which the condition $\beta_{d,C,j} \geq A_{C,j}$ holds and $\beta_{c,C,j} = 1.0$.

The quantized β-values are defined in [3] subclause 4.2.1, table 1.

5.1.2.5A Setting of the uplink DPCCH/HS-DPCCH power difference

When an HS-DPCCH is active, the power offset $\Delta_{HS\text{-}DPCCH}$ for each HS-DPCCH slot shall be set as follows.

For HS-DPCCH slots carrying HARQ Acknowledgement :

$\Delta_{HS\text{-}DPCCH} = \Delta_{ACK}$ if the corresponding HARQ Acknowledgement is equal to 1

$\Delta_{HS\text{-}DPCCH} = \Delta_{NACK}$ if the corresponding HARQ Acknowledgement is equal to 0

For HS-DPCCH slots carrying CQI :

$\Delta_{HS\text{-}DPCCH} = \Delta_{CQI}$

The values for Δ_{ACK}, Δ_{NACK} and Δ_{CQI} are set by higher layers.

Then, in non-compressed frames β_{hs}, which is the gain factor defined in [3] subclause 4.2.1, is calculated according to

$$\beta_{hs} = \beta_c \cdot 10^{\left(\frac{\Delta_{HS-DPCCH}}{20}\right)},$$

where β_c value is signalled by higher-layer or calculated as described in subclause 5.1.2.5.2 or 5.1.2.5.3.

With the exception of the start and end of compressed frames, any DPCCH power change shall not modify the power ratio between the DPCCH and the HS-DPCCH. The power ratio between the DPCCH and the HS-DPCCH during compressed DPCCH frames is described below.

During the period between the start and end of a compressed DPCCH frame, when HS-DPCCH is transmitted, β_{hs} is calculated according to

$$\beta_{hs} = \beta_{c,C,j} \cdot 10^{\left(\frac{\Delta_{HS-DPCCH}}{20}\right)} \cdot \sqrt{\frac{N_{pilot,C}}{N_{pilot,N}}},$$

where $\beta_{c,C,j}$ is calculated as described in subclause 5.1.2.5.4, $N_{pilot,C}$ is the number of pilot bits per slot on the DPCCH in compressed frames, and $N_{pilot,N}$ is the number of pilot bits per slot in non-compressed frames.

Thus the gain factor β_{hs} varies depending on the current power offset $\Delta_{HS-DPCCH}$ and on whether the UL DPCCH is currently in a compressed frame.

5.1.2.5B Setting of the uplink DPCCH/E-DPCCH and E-DPDCH power difference

5.1.2.5B.1 DPCCH/ E-DPCCH

5.1.2.5B.2 DPCCH/ E-DPDCH

5.1.2.6 Maximum and minimum power limits

In the case that the total UE transmit power (after applying DPCCH power adjustments and gain factors) would exceed the maximum allowed value, the UE shall apply additional scaling to the total transmit power so that it is equal to the maximum allowed power. This additional scaling shall be such that the power ratio between DPCCH and DPDCH and also DPCCH and HS-DPCCH remains as required by sub-clause 5.1.2.5 and 5.1.2.5A.

Any scaling shall only be applied or changed at a DPCCH slot boundary. In order that the total UE transmit power does not exceed the maximum allowed value the scaling shall be computed using the maximum HS-DPCCH power transmitted in the next DPCCH slot. In the case that either an ACK or a NACK transmission will start during the next DPCCH slot, the maximum HS-DPCCH power shall be computed using one of the following:

(a) whichever of Δ_{ACK} and Δ_{NACK} will be used according to whether the transmission will be ACK or NACK, *or*

(b) whichever of Δ_{ACK} and Δ_{NACK} is the largest.

When transmitting on a DPCH the UE is not required to be capable of reducing its total transmit power below the minimum level required in [7]. However, it may do so, provided that the power ratio between DPCCH and DPDCH and also between DPCCH and HS-DPCCH remains as specified in sub clause 5.1.2.5 and 5.1.2.5A. Some further regulations also apply as follows: In the case that the total UE transmit power (after applying DPCCH power adjustments and gain factors) would be at or below the total transmit power in the previously transmitted slot and also at or below the required minimum power specified in [7], the UE may apply additional scaling to the total transmit power, subject to the following restrictions:

- The total transmit power after applying any additional scaling shall not exceed the required minimum power, nor the total transmit power in the previously transmitted slot;
- The magnitude of any reduction in total transmit power between slots after applying any additional scaling shall not exceed the magnitude of the calculated power reduction before the additional scaling.

In the case that the total UE transmit power in the previously transmitted slot is at or below the required minimum power specfied in [7] and the DPCCH power adjustment and gain factors for the current slot would result in an increase in total power, then no additional scaling shall be used (i.e. power control shall operate as normal).

If the UE applies any additional scaling to the total transmit power as described above, this scaling shall be included in the computation of any DPCCH power adjustments to be applied in the next transmitted slot.

5.1.3 PCPCH

5.1.3.1 General

The power control during the CPCH access procedure is described in clause 6.2. The inner loop power control for the PCPCH is described in the following sub-clauses.

5.1.3.2 Power control in the message part

The uplink transmit power control procedure simultaneously controls the power of a PCPCH control part and its corresponding PCPCH data part. The relative transmit power offset between the PCPCH control part and the PCPCH data part is determined by the network and is computed according to sub-clause 5.1.2.5 using the gain factors signalled to the UE using higher-layer signalling, with the difference that:

- β_c is the gain factor for the PCPCH control part (similar to DPCCH);
- β_d is the gain factor for the PCPCH data part (similar to DPDCH).

The gain factors are applied as shown in sub clause 4.2.3.2 of [3].

The operation of the inner power control loop adjusts the power of the PCPCH control part and PCPCH data part by the same amount, provided there are no changes in gain factors.

Any change in the uplink PCPCH control part transmit power shall take place immediately before the start of the pilot field on the control part of the message part. The change in PCPCH control part power with respect to its value in the previous slot is derived by the UE and is denoted by $\Delta_{PCPCH-CP}$ (in dB).

During the operation of the uplink power control procedure the UE transmit power shall not exceed a maximum allowed value which is the lower out of the maximum output power of the terminal power class and a value which may be set by higher layer signalling.

Uplink power control shall be performed while the UE transmit power is below the maximum allowed output power.

The provisions for power control at the maximum allowed value and below the required minimum output power (as defined in [7]) are described in sub-clause 5.1.2.6.

The uplink inner-loop power control adjusts the UE transmit power in order to keep the received uplink signal-to-interference ratio (SIR) at a given SIR target, SIR_{target}, which is set by the higher layer outer loop.

The network should estimate the signal-to-interference ratio SIR_{est} of the received PCPCH . The network should then generate TPC commands and transmit the commands once per slot according to the following rule: if $SIR_{est} > SIR_{target}$ then the TPC command to transmit is "0", while if $SIR_{est} < SIR_{target}$ then the TPC command to transmit is "1".

The UE derives a TPC command, TPC_cmd, for each slot. Two algorithms shall be supported by the UE for deriving a TPC_cmd. Which of these two algorithms is used is determined by a higher-layer parameter, "PowerControlAlgorithm", and is under the control of the UTRAN. If "PowerControlAlgorithm" indicates "algorithm1", then the layer 1 parameter PCA shall take the value 1 and if "PowerControlAlgorithm" indicates "algorithm2" then PCA shall take the value 2.

If PCA has the value 1, Algorithm 1, described in subclause 5.1.2.2.2, shall be used for processing TPC commands.

If PCA has the value 2, Algorithm 2, described in subclause 5.1.2.2.3, shall be used for processing TPC commands.

The step size Δ_{TPC} is a layer 1 parameter which is derived from the higher-layer parameter "TPC-StepSize" which is under the control of the UTRAN. If "TPC-StepSize" has the value "dB1", then the layer 1 parameter Δ_{TPC} shall take the value 1 dB and if "TPC-StepSize" has the value "dB2", then Δ_{TPC} shall take the value 2 dB.

After deriving the TPC command TPC_cmd using one of the two supported algorithms, the UE shall adjust the transmit power of the uplink PCPCH control part with a step of $\Delta_{PCPCH-CP}$ (in dB) which is given by:

$$\Delta_{PCPCH-CP} = \Delta_{TPC} \times TPC\_cmd$$

5.1.3.3 Power control in the power control preamble

A PCPCH power control preamble is a period when both the UL PCPCH control part and the associated DL DPCCH are transmitted prior to the start of the uplink PCPCH data part.

The length of the power control preamble is a higher layer parameter, $L_{pc-preamble}$ (see section 6.2), and can take the value 0 slots or 8 slots. The uplink PCPCH data part shall not commence before the end of the power control preamble.

If $L_{pc\text{-}preamble} > 0$, the details of power control used during the power control preamble differ from the ordinary power control which is used afterwards. After the first slot of the power control preamble the change in uplink PCPCH control part transmit power shall initially be given by:

$$\Delta_{PCPCH\text{-}CP} = \Delta_{TPC\text{-}init} \times TPC\_cmd$$

If the value of PCA is 1 then $\Delta_{TPC\text{-}init}$ is equal to the minimum value out of 3 dB and $2\Delta_{TPC}$.

If the value of PCA is 2 then $\Delta_{TPC\text{-}init}$ is equal to 2dB.

TPC_cmd is derived according to algorithm 1 as described in sub clause 5.1.2.2.2, regardless of the value of PCA.

Power control as defined for the message part (see sub-clause 5.1.3.2), with the power control algorithm determined by the value of PCA and step size $\Delta_{TPC,}$ shall be used as soon as the sign of TPC_cmd reverses for the first time, or at the end of the power control preamble if the power control preamble ends first.

5.2 Downlink power control

The transmit power of the downlink channels is determined by the network. In general the ratio of the transmit power between different downlink channels is not specified and may change with time. However, regulations exist as described in the following subclauses.

Higher layer power settings shall be interpreted as setting of the total power, i.e. the sum of the power from the two antennas in case of transmit diversity.

5.2.1 DPCCH/DPDCH

5.2.1.1 General

The downlink transmit power control procedure controls simultaneously the power of a DPCCH and its corresponding DPDCHs. The power control loop adjusts the power of the DPCCH and DPDCHs with the same amount, i.e. the relative power difference between the DPCCH and DPDCHs is not changed.

The relative transmit power offset between DPCCH fields and DPDCHs is determined by the network The TFCI, TPC and pilot fields of the DPCCH are offset relative to the DPDCHs power by PO1, PO2 and PO3 dB respectively. The power offsets may vary in time. UTRAN may use the SSDT operation as specified in section 5.2.2 to determine what power offset to use for TFCI in hard split mode with respect to the associated downlink DPDCH. The method for controlling the power offsets within UTRAN is specified in [6].

5.2.1.2 Ordinary transmit power control

5.2.1.2.1 UE behaviour

The UE shall generate TPC commands to control the network transmit power and send them in the TPC field of the uplink DPCCH. An example on how to derive the TPC commands in given in Annex B.2.

The UE shall check the downlink power control mode (DPC_MODE) before generating the TPC command:

- if DPC_MODE = 0 : the UE sends a unique TPC command in each slot and the TPC command generated is transmitted in the first available TPC field in the uplink DPCCH;

- if DPC_MODE = 1 : the UE repeats the same TPC command over 3 slots and the new TPC command is transmitted such that there is a new command at the beginning of the frame.

The DPC_MODE parameter is a UE specific parameter controlled by the UTRAN.

The UE shall not make any assumptions on how the downlink power is set by UTRAN, in order to not prohibit usage of other UTRAN power control algorithms than what is defined in subclause 5.2.1.2.2.

5.2.1.2.2 UTRAN behaviour

Upon receiving the TPC commands UTRAN shall adjust its downlink DPCCH/DPDCH power accordingly. For DPC_MODE = 0, UTRAN shall estimate the transmitted TPC command TPC_{est} to be 0 or 1, and shall update the power every slot. If DPC_MODE = 1, UTRAN shall estimate the transmitted TPC command TPC_{est} over three slots to be 0 or 1, and shall update the power every three slots.

After estimating the *k*:th TPC command, UTRAN shall adjust the current downlink power $P(k-1)$ [dB] to a new power $P(k)$ [dB] according to the following formula:

$P(k) = P(k - 1) + P_{TPC}(k) + P_{bal}(k)$,

where $P_{TPC}(k)$ is the *k*:th power adjustment due to the inner loop power control, and $P_{bal}(k)$ [dB] is a correction according to the downlink power control procedure for balancing radio link powers towards a common reference power. The power balancing procedure and control of the procedure is described in [6].

$P_{TPC}(k)$ is calculated according to the following.

If the value of *Limited Power Increase Used* parameter is 'Not used', then

$$\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{TPC}}(k) = \begin{cases} +\Delta_{\mathrm{TPC}} & \text{if } \mathrm{TPC}_{\mathrm{est}}(k) = 1 \\ -\Delta_{\mathrm{TPC}} & \text{if } \mathrm{TPC}_{\mathrm{est}}(k) = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{, [dB].} \qquad (1)$$

If the value of *Limited Power Increase Used* parameter is 'Used', then the *k:*th inner loop power adjustment shall be calculated as:

$$P_{TPC}(k) = \begin{cases} +\Delta_{TPC} & \text{if } \mathrm{TPC}_{\mathrm{est}}(k) = 1 \text{ and } \Delta_{sum}(k) + \Delta_{TPC} < \text{Power\_Raise\_Limit} \\ 0 & \text{if } \mathrm{TPC}_{\mathrm{est}}(k) = 1 \text{ and } \Delta_{sum}(k) + \Delta_{TPC} \geq \text{Power\_Raise\_Limit} \\ -\Delta_{TPC} & \text{if } \mathrm{TPC}_{\mathrm{est}}(k) = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{, [dB]} \qquad (2)$$

where

$$\Delta_{sum}(k) = \sum_{i = k - \text{DL\_Power\_Averaging\_Window\_Size}}^{k-1} P_{TPC}(i)$$

is the temporary sum of the last *DL_Power_Averaging_Window_Size* inner loop power adjustments (in dB).

For the first (*DL_Power_Averaging_Window_Size* – 1) adjustments after the activation of the limited power increase method, formula (1) shall be used instead of formula (2). *Power_Raise_Limit* and *DL_Power_Averaging_Window_Size* are parameters configured in the UTRAN.

The power control step size Δ_{TPC} can take four values: 0.5, 1, 1.5 or 2 dB. It is mandatory for UTRAN to support Δ_{TPC} of 1 dB, while support of other step sizes is optional.

In addition to the above described formulas on how the downlink power is updated, the restrictions below apply.

In case of congestion (commanded power not available), UTRAN may disregard the TPC commands from the UE.

The average power of transmitted DPDCH symbols over one timeslot shall not exceed Maximum_DL_Power (dB), nor shall it be below Minimum_DL_Power (dB). Transmitted DPDCH symbol means here a complex QPSK symbol before spreading which does not contain DTX. Maximum_DL_Power (dB) and Minimum_DL_Power (dB) are power limits for one channelisation code, relative to the primary CPICH power [6].

5.2.1.3 Power control in compressed mode

The aim of downlink power control in uplink or/and downlink compressed mode is to recover as fast as possible a signal-to-interference ratio (SIR) close to the target SIR after each transmission gap.

The UE behaviour is the same in compressed mode as in normal mode, described in subclause 5.2.1.2, except that the target SIR is offset by higher layer signalling. However due to transmission gaps in uplink compressed frames there may be incomplete sets of TPC commands when DPC_MODE=1.

UTRAN behaviour is as stated in section 5.2.1.2.2 except for DPC_MODE = 1 where missing TPC commands in the UL may lead the UTRAN to changing its power more frequently than every 3 slots.

In compressed mode, compressed frames may occur in either the uplink or the downlink or both. In compressed frames, the transmission of downlink DPDCH(s) and DPCCH shall be stopped during transmission gaps.

The power of the DPCCH and DPDCH in the first slot after the transmission gap should be set to the same value as in the slot just before the transmission gap.

During compressed mode except during downlink transmission gaps, UTRAN shall estimate the *k*:th TPC command and adjust the current downlink power $P(k-1)$ [dB] to a new power $P(k)$ [dB] according to the following formula:

$P(k) = P(k - 1) + P_{TPC}(k) + P_{SIR}(k) + P_{bal}(k)$,

where $P_{TPC}(k)$ is the *k*:th power adjustment due to the inner loop power control, $P_{SIR}(k)$ is the k-th power adjustment due to the downlink target SIR variation, and $P_{bal}(k)$ [dB] is a correction according to the downlink power control procedure for balancing radio link powers towards a common reference power. The power balancing procedure and control of the procedure is described in [6].

Due to transmission gaps in uplink compressed frames, there may be missing TPC commands in the uplink.

For DPC_MODE = 0 if no uplink TPC command is received, $P_{TPC}(k)$ derived by the Node B shall be set to zero. Otherwise, $P_{TPC}(k)$ is calculated the same way as in normal mode (see sub-clause 5.2.1.2.2) but with a step size Δ_{STEP} instead of Δ_{TPC}.

For DPC_MODE = 1, the sets of slots over which the TPC commands are processed shall remain aligned to the frame boundaries in the compressed frame. If this results in an incomplete set of TPC commands, the UE shall transmit the same TPC commands in all slots of the incomplete set.

The power control step size $\Delta_{STEP} = \Delta_{RP-TPC}$ during RPL slots after each transmission gap and $\Delta_{STEP} = \Delta_{TPC}$ otherwise, where:

- RPL is the recovery period length and is expressed as a number of slots. RPL is equal to the minimum value out of the transmission gap length and 7 slots. If a transmission gap is scheduled to start before RPL slots have elapsed, then the recovery period shall end at the start of the gap, and the value of RPL shall be reduced accordingly.

– Δ_{RP-TPC} is called the recovery power control step size and is expressed in dB. Δ_{RP-TPC} is equal to the minimum value of 3 dB and $2\Delta_{TPC}$.

The power offset $P_{SIR}(k) = \delta P_{curr} - \delta P_{prev}$, where δP_{curr} and δP_{prev} are respectively the value of δP in the current slot and the most recently transmitted slot and δP is computed as follows:

$$\delta P = \max(\Delta P1\_compression, \ldots, \Delta Pn\_compression) + \Delta P1\_coding + \Delta P2\_coding$$

where n is the number of different TTI lengths amongst TTIs of all TrChs of the CCTrCh, where ΔP1_coding and ΔP2_coding are computed from uplink parameters DeltaSIR1, DeltaSIR2, DeltaSIRafter1, DeltaSIRafter2 signaled by higher layers as:

- ΔP1_coding = DeltaSIR1 if the start of the first transmission gap in the transmission gap pattern is within the current frame.

- ΔP1coding = DeltaSIRafter1 if the current frame just follows a frame containing the start of the first transmission gap in the transmission gap pattern.

- ΔP2_coding = DeltaSIR2 if the start of the second transmission gap in the transmission gap pattern is within the current frame.

- ΔP2_coding = DeltaSIRafter2 if the current frame just follows a frame containing the start of the second transmission gap in the transmission gap pattern.

- ΔP1_coding = 0 dB and ΔP2_coding = 0 dB in all other cases.

and ΔPi_compression is defined by :

- ΔPi_compression = 3 dB for downlink frames compressed by reducing the spreading factor by 2.
- ΔPi_compression = 10 log ($15*F_i$ / ($15*F_i$ - TGL_i)) if there is a transmission gap created by puncturing method within the current TTI of length F_i frames, where TGL_i is the gap length in number of slots (either from one gap or a sum of gaps) in the current TTI of length F_i frames.
- ΔPi_compression = 0 dB in all other cases.

In case several compressed mode patterns are used simultaneously, a δP offset is computed for each compressed mode pattern and the sum of all δP offsets is applied to the frame.

For all time slots except those in transmissions gaps, the average power of transmitted DPDCH symbols over one timeslot shall not exceed Maximum_DL_Power (dB) by more than δP_{curr}, nor shall it be below Minimum_DL_Power (dB). Transmitted DPDCH symbol means here a complex QPSK symbol before spreading which does not contain DTX. Maximum_DL_Power (dB) and Minimum_DL_Power (dB) are power limits for one channelisation code, relative to the primary CPICH power [6].

5.2.1.4 Site selection diversity transmit power control

5.2.1.4.1 General

Site selection diversity transmit power control (SSDT) is another macro diversity method in soft handover mode. This method is optional in UTRAN.

Operation is summarised as follows. The UE selects one of the cells from its active set to be ‘primary’, all other cells are classed as ‘non primary’. The main objective is to transmit on the downlink from the primary cell, thus reducing the interference caused by multiple transmissions in a soft handover mode. A second objective is to achieve fast site selection without network intervention, thus maintaining the advantage of the soft handover. In order to select a primary cell, each cell is assigned a temporary identification (ID) and UE periodically informs a primary cell ID to the connecting cells. The non-primary cells selected by UE switch off the transmission power. The primary cell ID is delivered by UE to the active cells via uplink FBI field. SSDT activation, SSDT termination and ID assignment are all carried out by higher layer signalling.

SSDT is only supported when the P-CPICH is used as the downlink phase reference and closed loop mode transmit diversity is not used simultaneously. Simultaneous operation of SSDT and HS-SCCH reception is not supported.

UTRAN may also command UE to use SSDT signalling in the uplink although cells would transmit the downlink as without SSDT active. In case SSDT is used in the uplink direction only, the processing in the UE for the radio links received in the downlink is as with macro diversity in non-SSDT case. The downlink operation mode for SSDT is set by higher layers. UTRAN may use the SSDT information for the PDSCH power control as specified in section 5.2.2 and for the TFCI power control in hard split mode. Simultaneous operation of SSDT signalling in the uplink and HS-SCCH reception is not supported.

NOTE: This feature of SSDT limited to uplink only applies to terminals that are DSCH capable.

5.2.1.4.1.1 Definition of temporary cell identification

Each cell is given a temporary ID during SSDT and the ID is utilised as site selection signal. The ID is given a binary bit sequence. There are three different lengths of coded ID available denoted as "long", "medium" and "short". The network decides which length of coded ID is used. Settings of ID codes for 1-bit and 2-bit FBI are exhibited in table 3 and table 4, respectively.

Table 3: Settings of ID codes for 1 bit FBI

ID label	ID code "long"	"medium"	"short"
a	000000000000000	(0)0000000	00000
b	101010101010101	(0)1010101	01001
c	011001100110011	(0)0110011	11011
d	110011001100110	(0)1100110	10010
e	000111100001111	(0)0001111	00111
f	101101001011010	(0)1011010	01110
g	011110000111100	(0)0111100	11100
h	110100101101001	(0)1101001	10101

Table 4: Settings of ID codes for 2 bit FBI

ID label	ID code (Column and Row denote slot position and FBI-bit position.) "long"	"medium"	"short"
a	(0)0000000 (0)0000000	(0)000 (0)000	000 000
b	(0)0000000 (1)1111111	(0)000 (1)111	000 111
c	(0)1010101 (0)1010101	(0)101 (0)101	101 101
d	(0)1010101 (1)0101010	(0)101 (1)010	101 010
e	(0)0110011 (0)0110011	(0)011 (0)011	011 011
f	(0)0110011 (1)1001100	(0)011 (1)100	011 100
g	(0)1100110 (0)1100110	(0)110 (0)110	110 110
h	(0)1100110 (1)0011001	(0)110 (1)001	110 001

The ID code bits shown in table 3 and table 4 are transmitted from left to right. In table 4, the first row gives the first FBI bit in each slot, the second row gives the 2nd FBI bit in each slot. The ID code(s) are transmitted aligned to the radio frame structure (i.e. ID codes shall be terminated within a frame). If FBI space for sending the last ID code within a frame cannot be obtained, the first bit(s) from that ID code are punctured. The bit(s) to be punctured are shown in brackets in table 3 and table 4.

The alignment of the ID codes to the radio frame structure is not affected by transmission gaps resulting from uplink compressed mode.

5.2.1.4.2 TPC procedure in UE

The UE shall generate TPC commands to control the network transmit power and send them in the TPC field of the uplink DPCCH based on the downlink signals from the primary cell as selected by the UE. An example on how to derive the TPC commands is given in Annex B.2.

5.2.1.4.3 Selection of primary cell

The UE selects a primary cell periodically by measuring the RSCP of P-CPICHs transmitted by the active cells. The cell with the highest P-CPICH RSCP is detected as a primary cell.

5.2.1.4.4 Delivery of primary cell ID

The UE periodically sends the ID code of the primary cell via portion of the uplink FBI field assigned for SSDT use (FBI S field). A cell recognises its state as non-primary if the following conditions are fulfilled simultaneously:

- The received ID code does not match with the own ID code.

- The received uplink signal quality satisfies the following:

  $SIR_{estIDcode} > SIR_{target} + Qth$ [dB]

  Where $SIR_{estIDcode}$ is the average of estimated signal-to-interference ratio of the received uplink DPCH SIR_{est}, described in subclause 5.1.2.2.1, over the uplink slots containing the received cell ID code; SIR_{target} is the target SIR of the uplink, described in subclause 5.1.2.2.1; and Qth is uplink quality threshold which corresponds to the uplink DPCH quality level relative to the SIR_{target}. Qth parameter is signalled via higher layer signalling.

- If uplink compressed mode is used, and less than $\lfloor N_{ID}/3 \rfloor$ bits are lost from the ID code (as a result of uplink compressed mode), where N_{ID} is the number of bits in the ID code (after puncturing according to clause 5.2.1.4.1.1, if puncturing has been done).

Otherwise the cell recognises its state as primary.

The state of the cells (primary or non-primary) in the active set is updated synchronously. If a cell receives the last portion of the coded ID in uplink slot j, the state of cell is updated in downlink slot $(j+1+T_{os})$ mod 15, where T_{os} is defined as a constant of 2 time slots. The updating of the cell state is not influenced by the operation of downlink compressed mode.

At the UE, the primary ID code to be sent to the cells is segmented into a number of portions. These portions are distributed in the uplink FBI S-field. The cell in SSDT collects the distributed portions of the primary ID code and then detects the transmitted ID. The period of the primary cell update depends on the settings of the code length and the number of FBI bits assigned for SSDT use as shown in table 5. However, SSDT is only applicable with DPC_MODE = 0.

Table 5: Period of primary cell update

code length	The number of FBI bits per slot assigned for SSDT	
	1	2
"long"	1 update per frame	2 updates per frame
"medium"	2 updates per frame	4 updates per frame
"short"	3 updates per frame	5 updates per frame

5.2.1.4.5 TPC procedure in the network

In SSDT, a non-primary cell can switch off its DPDCH output (i.e. no transmissions).

The cell manages two downlink transmission power levels, P1, and P2. Power level P1 is used for downlink DPCCH transmission power level and this level is updated in the same way with the downlink DPCCH power adjustment specified in 5.2.1.2.2 (for normal mode) and 5.2.1.3 (for compressed mode) regardless of the selected state (primary or non-primary). The actual transmission power of TFCI, TPC and pilot fields of DPCCH is set by adding P1 and the offsets PO1, PO2 and PO3, respectively, as specified in 5.2.1.1. P2 is used for downlink DPDCH transmission power level and this level is set to P1 if the cell is selected as primary, otherwise P2 is switched off. The cell updates P1 first and P2 next, and then the two power settings P1 and P2 are maintained within the power control dynamic range. Table 6 summarizes the updating method of P1 and P2.

Table 6: Updating of P1 and P2

State of cell	P1 (DPCCH)	P2 (DPDCH)
non primary	Updated in the same way with the downlink DPCCH power adjustment specified in 5.2.1.2.2 and 5.2.1.3	Switched off
primary		= P1

5.2.2 PDSCH

The PDSCH power control can be based on any of the following solutions:

- Inner-loop power control based on the power control commands sent by the UE on the uplink DPCCH.
- Other power control procedures applied by the network.

UTRAN may use the SSDT signalling to determine what power offset to use for PDSCH with respect to the associated downlink DCH when more than one cell may be in the active set. The support for a combination where SSDT signaling is used in the uplink, but SSDT is not necessarily used in the downlink, is required only from the UEs that support the use of DSCH.

If the downlink direction uses SSDT for the DCH transmission, then the TPC procedure in the UE to generate TPC commands to control the network transmit power is as specified in 5.2.1.4.2.

If the downlink transmission does not use SSDT operation, then the TPC procedure in the UE to generate TPC commands to control the network transmit power is as specified in 5.2.1.2.1.

The PDSCH power offset to be used with respect to the associated DCH depends on whether the cell transmitting PDSCH is determined to be a primary one or not. Note that the condition on the received uplink signal quality in subclause 5.2.1.4.4 is not used for determining whether the cell status for PDSCH power control is primary or not.

The SSDT commands sent by the UE are averaged in UTRAN side over one or more frames. The averaging window length parameter as the number of frames to average over, *Enhanced DSCH PC Wnd*, and the parameter for the required number of received primary SSDT commands, *Enhanced DSCH PC Counter*, during the averaging window for declaring primary status for a cell are given by UTRAN [6].

If the number of primary ID codes in the uplink received during the averaging window is less than the parameter *Enhanced DSCH PC Counter*, then a cell shall consider itself as non-primary and uses the power offset given from UTRAN to the cell with the data for the PDSCH.

If the number of primary ID codes in the uplink received during the averaging window is equal or more than the parameter *Enhanced DSCH PC Counter* defines, the cell shall use the power control parameterisation for the primary case. When the cell considers itself as primary it uses both the power offset for the PDSCH frame for the given UE and the *Enhanced DSCH Power Offset* parameter given by the UTRAN for the primary case.

The cell status (primary/non-primary) obtained from the rules above may differ from the cell status for SSDT transmission in the downlink depending on the values given by UTRAN for the parameters for averaging window length and the required number of received primary SSDT commands for cell status determination.

5.2.3 DL-DPCCH for CPCH

5.2.3.1 UE behaviour

The UE shall generate TPC commands to control the network transmit power and send them in the TPC field of the uplink DPCCH. The UE shall send a unique TPC command in each slot as in the DPCCH/DPDCH case for DPC_MODE=0.

The TPC commands setting may be based on the example provided in Annex B.2 for the DPCCH/DPDCH. However in the DL-DPCCH for CPCH case, the setting of the SIR_target by the outer loop power control is based on a DL-DPCCH for CPCH BER target provided by the UTRAN rather than a TrCH BLER. Also there is no soft handover, neither SSDT, used in combination with the CPCH.

The UE shall not make any assumptions on how the downlink power is set by UTRAN, in order to not prohibit usage of other UTRAN power control algorithms than what is defined in sub-clause 5.2.1.2.2.

5.2.3.2 UTRAN behaviour

The relative transmit power offsets between the different DPCCH fields (TPC and pilot) and CCC field is determined by the network. The power of CCC field in DL DPCCH for CPCH is the same as the power of the pilot field.

The TPC field of the DPCCH is offset relative to the pilot by PO2dB. This power offsets may vary in time. The method for controlling the power offset within UTRAN is specified in [6]

The UTRAN behaviour for the power control is left open to the implementation. As an example it may be based on the UTRAN behaviour for the DPCCH/DPDCH as specified in sub-clause 5.2.1.2.2, with the following exceptions : DPC_MODE should be set to 0 as there is no DPC_MODE parameter for CPCH and there is no support of Site selection diversity power control for the DL-DPCCH for CPCH as Soft handover is not applicable to the CPCH.

5.2.4 AICH

The UE is informed about the relative transmit power of the AICH (measured as the power per transmitted acquisition indicator) compared to the primary CPICH transmit power by the higher layers.

5.2.5 PICH

The UE is informed about the relative transmit power of the PICH (measured as the power over the paging indicators) compared to the primary CPICH transmit power by the higher layers.

5.2.6 S-CCPCH

The TFCI and pilot fields may be offset relative to the power of the data field. The power offsets may vary in time.

5.2.7 CSICH

The UE is informed about the relative transmit power of the CSICH (measured as the power per transmitted status indicator) compared to the primary CPICH transmit power by the higher layers.

5.2.8 AP-AICH

The UE is informed about the relative transmit power of the AP-AICH (measured as the power per transmitted acquisition indicator) compared to the primary CPICH transmit power by the higher layers.

5.2.9 CA/CD-ICH

The UE is informed about the relative transmit power of the CA/CD-ICH (measured as the power per transmitted acquisition indicator) compared to the primary CPICH transmit power by the higher layers.

5.2.10 HS-SCCH

The HS-SCCH power control is under the control of the node B. It may e.g. follow the power control commands sent by the UE to the node B or any other power control procedure applied by the node B.

5.2.11 HS-PDSCH

The HS-PDSCH power control is under the control of the node B. When the HS-PDSCH is transmitted using 16-QAM, the UE may assume that the power is kept constant during the corresponding HS-DSCH subframe.

In case of multiple HS-PDSCH transmission to one UE, all the HS-PDSCHs intended for that UE shallbe transmitted with equal power.

The sum of the powers used by all HS-PDSCHs and HS-SCCHs in a cell shall not exceed the value of *HS-PDSCH and HS-SCCH Total Power* if signaled by higher layers [6].

5.2.12 E-AGCH

The E-AGCH power control is under the control of the node B.

5.2.13 E-HICH

The E-HICH power control is under the control of the node B.

5.2.14 E-RGCH

The E-RGCH power control is under the control of the node B.

6 Random access procedure

6.1 Physical random access procedure

The physical random access procedure described in this subclause is initiated upon request from the MAC sublayer (cf. [9]).

Before the physical random-access procedure can be initiated, Layer 1 shall receive the following information from the higher layers (RRC):

- The preamble scrambling code.
- The message length in time, either 10 or 20 ms.
- The AICH_Transmission_Timing parameter [0 or 1].
- The set of available signatures and the set of available RACH sub-channels for each Access Service Class (ASC). Sub-channels are defined in subclause 6.1.1.
- The power-ramping factor Power Ramp Step [integer > 0].
- The parameter Preamble Retrans Max [integer > 0].
- The initial preamble power Preamble_Initial_Power.
- The Power offset $P_{p\text{-}m} = P_{message\text{-}control} - P_{preamble}$, measured in dB, between the power of the last transmitted preamble and the control part of the random-access message.
- The set of Transport Format parameters. This includes the power offset between the data part and the control part of the random-access message for each Transport Format.

Note that the above parameters may be updated from higher layers before each physical random access procedure is initiated.

At each initiation of the physical random access procedure, Layer 1 shall receive the following information from the higher layers (MAC):

- The Transport Format to be used for the PRACH message part.
- The ASC of the PRACH transmission.
- The data to be transmitted (Transport Block Set).

The physical random-access procedure shall be performed as follows:

1 Derive the available uplink access slots, in the next full access slot set, for the set of available RACH sub-channels within the given ASC with the help of subclauses 6.1.1. and 6.1.2. Randomly select one access slot among the ones previously determined. If there is no access slot available in the selected set, randomly select one uplink access slot corresponding to the set of available RACH sub-channels within the given ASC from the next access slot set. The random function shall be such that each of the allowed selections is chosen with equal probability.

2 Randomly select a signature from the set of available signatures within the given ASC. The random function shall be such that each of the allowed selections is chosen with equal probability.

3 Set the Preamble Retransmission Counter to Preamble Retrans Max.

4 Set the parameter Commanded Preamble Power to Preamble_Initial_Power.

5 In the case that the Commanded Preamble Power exceeds the maximum allowed value, set the preamble transmission power to the maximum allowed power. In the case that the Commanded Preamble Power is below the minimum level required in [7], set the preamble transmission power to a value, which shall be at or above the Commanded Preamble Power and at or below the required minimum power specified in [7]. Otherwise set the preamble transmission power to the Commanded Preamble Power. Transmit a preamble using the selected uplink access slot, signature, and preamble transmission power.

6 If no positive or negative acquisition indicator (AI ≠ +1 nor –1) corresponding to the selected signature is detected in the downlink access slot corresponding to the selected uplink access slot:

6.1 Select the next available access slot in the set of available RACH sub-channels within the given ASC.

6.2 Randomly select a new signature from the set of available signatures within the given ASC. The random function shall be such that each of the allowed selections is chosen with equal probability.

6.3 Increase the Commanded Preamble Power by ΔP_0 = Power Ramp Step [dB]. If the Commanded Preamble Power exceeds the maximum allowed power by 6dB, the UE may pass L1 status ("No ack on AICH") to the higher layers (MAC) and exit the physical random access procedure.

6.4 Decrease the Preamble Retransmission Counter by one.

6.5 If the Preamble Retransmission Counter > 0 then repeat from step 5. Otherwise pass L1 status ("No ack on AICH") to the higher layers (MAC) and exit the physical random access procedure.

7 If a negative acquisition indicator corresponding to the selected signature is detected in the downlink access slot corresponding to the selected uplink access slot, pass L1 status ("Nack on AICH received") to the higher layers (MAC) and exit the physical random access procedure.

8 Transmit the random access message three or four uplink access slots after the uplink access slot of the last transmitted preamble depending on the AICH transmission timing parameter. Transmission power of the control part of the random access message should be $P_{p\text{-}m}$ [dB] higher than the power of the last transmitted preamble. Transmission power of the data part of the random access message is set according to subclause 5.1.1.2.

9 Pass L1 status "RACH message transmitted" to the higher layers and exit the physical random access procedure.

6.1.1 RACH sub-channels

A RACH sub-channel defines a sub-set of the total set of uplink access slots. There are a total of 12 RACH sub-channels. RACH sub-channel #i (i = 0, …, 11) consists of the following uplink access slots:

- Uplink access slot #i leading by $\tau_{p\text{-}a}$ chips the downlink access slot #i contained within the 10 ms interval that is time aligned with P-CCPCH frames for which SFN mod 8 = 0 or SFN mod 8 = 1.
- Every 12^{th} access slot relative to this access slot.

The access slots of different RACH sub-channels are also illustrated in Table 7.

Table 7: The available uplink access slots for different RACH sub-channels

SFN modulo 8 of corresponding P-CCPCH frame	**Sub-channel number**											
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7				
1	12	13	14						8	9	10	11
2				0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
3	9	10	11	12	13	14						8
4	6	7					0	1	2	3	4	5
5			8	9	10	11	12	13	14			
6	3	4	5	6	7					0	1	2
7						8	9	10	11	12	13	14

6.1.2 RACH access slot sets

The PRACH contains two sets of access slots as shown in Figure 2. Access slot set 1 contains PRACH slots 0 – 7 and starts τ_{p-a} chips before the downlink P-CCPCH frame for which SFN mod 2 = 0. Access slot set 2 contains PRACH slots 8 - 14 and starts (τ_{p-a} –2560) chips before the downlink P-CCPCH frame for which SFN mod 2 = 1.

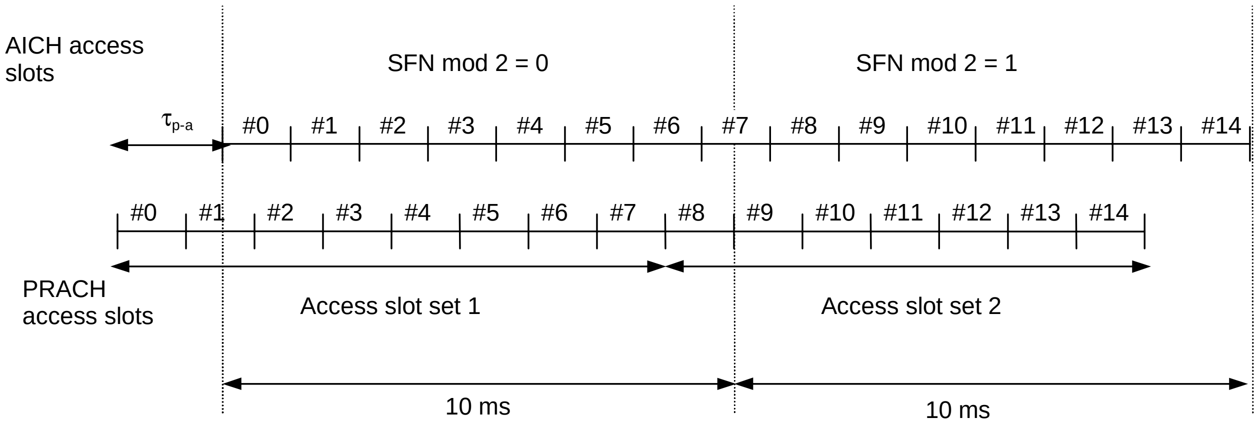


Figure 2: PRACH access slot and downlink AICH relation (τ_{p-a} = 7680 chips)

6.2 CPCH Access Procedures

For each CPCH physical channel in a CPCH set allocated to a cell the following physical layer parameters are included in the System Information message: L1 shall receive the following information from the higher layers (RRC).

- UL Access Preamble (AP) scrambling code.
- UL Access Preamble signature set.
- The Access preamble slot sub-channels group.
- AP- AICH preamble channelization code.
- UL Collision Detection(CD) preamble scrambling code.
- CD Preamble signature set.
- CD preamble slot sub-channels group.
- CD-AICH preamble channelization code.
- CPCH UL scrambling code.
- DPCCH DL channelization code.([512] chip).

NOTE: There may be some overlap between the AP signature set and CD signature set if they correspond to the same scrambling code.

The following physical layer parameters are received from the RRC layer:

1) N_AP_retrans_max = Maximum Number of allowed consecutive access attempts (retransmitted preambles) if there is no AICH response. This is a CPCH parameter and is equivalent to Preamble Retrans Max in RACH.

2) $P_{RACH} = P_{CPCH}$ = Initial open loop power level for the first CPCH access preamble sent by the UE.

   - [RACH/CPCH parameter].

3) ΔP_0 = Power step size for each successive CPCH access preamble.

   - [RACH/CPCH parameter].

4) $\Delta P_{p\text{-}m} = P_{message\text{-}control} - P_{cd}$, measured in dB. This is the power offset between the transmit power of the CD preamble and the initial transmit power of the CPCH power control preamble (or the control part of the CPCH message part if the power control preamble length is 0 slots).

   [CPCH parameter]

5) T_{cpch} = CPCH transmission timing parameter: This parameter is identical to PRACH/AICH transmission timing parameter.

   - [RACH/CPCH parameter].

6) $L_{pc\text{-}preamble}$ = Length of power control preamble (0 or 8 slots).

   - [CPCH parameter].

7) $N_{Start\_Message}$ = Number of frames for the transmission of Start of Message Indicator in DL-DPCCH for CPCH.

8) The set of Transport Format parameters. This includes a Transport Format to PCPCH mapping table.

L1 shall receive the following information from MAC prior to packet transmission:

1) Transport Format of the message part.

2) The data to be transmitted is delivered to L1 once every TTI until the data buffer is empty.

The overall CPCH -access procedure consists of two parts:

1) Upon receipt of a Status-REQ message from the MAC layer, the UE shall start monitoring the CSICH to determine the availability of the transport formats in the transport format subset included in the Status-REQ message. UTRAN transmits availability of each PCPCH or maximum available data rate with availability of each PCPCH over the CSICH in case CA is active. Upper layers will supply the UE with information to map the transport formats to the PCPCHs. The UE shall send a Status-CNF message to the MAC layer containing the transport format subset listing the transport formats of the requested subset which are currently indicated as "available".

The actual access procedure is then:

2) Upon receipt of the Access-REQ message from the MAC layer, which contains an identified transport format from the available ones ,the following sequence of events occur. The use of step 2a or 2b depends on whether availability of each PCPCH or the Maximum available data rate along with the availability of each PCPCH is transmitted over CSICH. Note that in the first case, each access resource combination (AP signatures and access subchannel group) maps to each PCPCH resource and in the second case each access resource combination maps to each data rate.

2a) (In case CA is not Active) The UE shall test the value(s) of the most recent transmission of the CSICH Status Indicator(s) corresponding to the PCPCH channel(s) for the identified transport format included in the Access-REQ message. If this indicates that no channel is 'available' the UE shall abort the access attempt and send a failure message to the MAC layer. The UE shall also retain the availability status of the each PCPCH for further verification in a later phase.

2b) (In case CA is active) The CSICH Status Indicators indicate the maximum available data rate along with individual PCPCH availability. The UE shall test the value of the most recent transmission of the Status Indicator(s). If this indicates that the maximum available data rate is less than the requested data rate, the UE shall abort the access attempt and send a failure message to the MAC layer. The PHY provides the availability information to the MAC. The UE shall also retain the availability status of the each PCPCH for further channel assignment message verification in a later phase in case of success.

3) The UE sets the preamble transmit power to the value $P_{CPCH\_}$ which is supplied by the MAC layer for initial power level for this CPCH access attempt.

4) The UE sets the AP Retransmission Counter to N_AP_Retrans_Max.

5a) In the case CA is not active, the uplink access slot and signature to be used for the CPCH-AP transmission are selected in the following steps:

a) The UE selects randomly one PCPCH from the set of available PCPCH channel(s) as indicated on the CSICH and supporting the identified transport format included in the Access-REQ message. The random function shall be such that each of the allowed selections is chosen with equal probability.

b) The UE randomly selects a CPCH-AP signature from the set of available signatures in the access resource combination corresponding to the selected PCPCH in step a). The random function shall be such that each of the allowed selections is chosen with equal probability.

c) Using the AP access slot sub-channel group of the access resource combination corresponding to selected PCPCH in step a), the UE derives the available CPCH-AP access slots with the help of subclauses 6.1.1. and 6.1.2. The UE randomly selects one uplink access slot from the derived available CPCH-AP access slots. If there is no access slot available in the selected set, the UE randomly selects one uplink access slot corresponding to the selected CPCH sub-channel group from the next access slot set. The random function shall be such that each of the allowed selections is chosen with equal probability.

5b) In the case CA is active, the uplink access slot and signature to be used for the CPCH-AP transmission are selected in the following steps:

a) The UE randomly selects a CPCH-AP signature from the set of available signatures in the access resource combination corresponding to the transport format identified in the Access-REQ message. The random function shall be such that each of the allowed selections is chosen with equal probability.

b) Using the AP access slot sub-channel group of the access resource combination corresponding to the transport format identified in the Access-REQ message, the UE derives the available CPCH-AP access slots with the help of subclauses 6.1.1 and 6.1.2. The UE randomly selects one uplink access slot from the derived available CPCH-AP access slots. If there is no access slot available in the selected set, the UE randomly selects one uplink access slot corresponding to the selected CPCH sub-channel group from the next access slot set. The random function shall be such that each of the allowed selections is chosen with equal probability.

6) The UE transmits the AP using the selected uplink access slot and signature, and MAC supplied initial preamble transmission power. The following sequence of events occur based on whether availability of each PCPCH or the Maximum available data rate along with the availability of each PCPCH is transmitted over CSICH.

6a) (In case CA is not Active) The UE shall test the value of the most recent transmission of the Status Indicator corresponding to the identified CPCH transport channel immediately before AP transmission. If this indicates that the channel is 'not available' the UE shall abort the access attempt and send a failure message to the MAC layer. Otherwise the UE transmits the AP using the UE selected uplink signature and access slot, and the initial preamble transmission power from step 3, above.

6b) (In case CA is active) The Status Indicator indicates the maximum available data rate as well as the availability of each PCPCH. The UE shall test the value of the Status Indicator. If this indicates that the maximum available data rate is less than the requested data rate, the UE shall abort the access attempt and send a failure message to the MAC layer. Otherwise the UE shall transmit the AP using the UE selected uplink access slot, the MAC supplied signature and initial preamble transmission power from step 3, above.

7) If the UE does not detect the positive or negative acquisition indicator corresponding to the selected signature in the downlink access slot corresponding to the selected uplink access slot, the UE shall test the value of the most recent transmission of the Status Indicator corresponding to the selected PCPCH immediately before AP transmission. If this indicates that the PCPCH is 'not available' the UE shall abort the access attempt and send a failure message to the MAC layer. Otherwise the following steps shall be executed:

a) Select the next available access slot in the sub-channel group used. There must be a minimum distance of three or four (per Tcpch parameter) access slots from the uplink access slot in which the last preamble was transmitted depending on the CPCH/AICH transmission timing parameter.

b) Increases the preamble transmission power with the specified offset ΔP. Power offset ΔP_0 s is used.

c) Decrease the AP Retransmission Counter by one.

d) If the AP Retransmission Counter < 0, the UE aborts the access attempt and sends a failure message to the MAC layer.

8) If the UE detects the AP-AICH_nak (negative acquisition indicator) corresponding to the selected signature in the downlink access slot corresponding to the selected uplink access slot, the UE aborts the access attempt and sends a failure message to the MAC layer.

9) Upon reception of AP-AICH_ack with matching signature, the access segment ends and the contention resolution segment begins. In this segment, the UE randomly selects a CD signature from the CD signature set and also selects one CD access slot sub-channel from the CD sub-channel group supported in the cell and transmits a CD Preamble at the same power as the last AP, then waits for a CD/CA-ICH and the channel assignment (CA) (in case CA is active) message from the Node B. The slot selection procedure is as follows:

   a) The next available slot when the PRACH and PCPCH scrambling code are not shared. Furthermore, the PCPCH AP preamble scrambling code and CD Preamble scrambling codes are different.

   b) When the PRACH and PCPCH AP preamble scrambling code and CD preamble scrambling code are shared, the UE randomly selects one of the available access slots in the next 12 access slots. Number of CD sub-channels will be greater than 2.

10) If the UE does not receive a CD/CA-ICH in the designated slot, the UE aborts the access attempt and sends a failure message to the MAC layer.

11) If the UE receives a CD/CA-ICH in the designated slot with a signature that does not match the signature used in the CD Preamble, the UE aborts the access attempt and sends a failure message to the MAC layer.

12a) (In case CA is not Active) If the UE receives a CDI from the CD/CA-ICH with a matching signature, the UE transmits the power control preamble $\tau_{cd\text{-}p\text{-}pc\text{-}p}$ ms later as measured from initiation of the CD Preamble. The initial transmission power of the power control preamble shall be $\Delta P_{p\text{-}m}$ [dB] higher than the power of the CD preamble. The inner loop power control in the power control preamble is described in sub clause 5.1.3.3. The transmission of the message portion of the burst starts immediately after the power control preamble. Power control in the message part is described in sub clause 5.1.3.2.

12b) (In case CA is active) If the UE receives a CDI from the CD/CA-ICH with a matching signature and CA message that points out to one of the PCPCH's (mapping rule is in [5]) that were indicated to be free by the last received CSICH broadcast, the UE transmits the power control preamble $\tau_{cd\text{-}p\text{-}pc\text{-}p}$ ms later as measured from initiation of the CD Preamble. The initial transmission power of the power control preamble shall be $\Delta P_{p\text{-}m}$ [dB] higher than the power of the CD preamble. The inner loop power control in the power control preamble is described in sub clause 5.1.3.3. The transmission of the message portion of the burst starts immediately after the power control preamble. Power control in the message part is described in sub clause 5.1.3.2. If the CA message received points out the channel that was indicated to be busy on the last status information transmission received on the CSICH, the UE shall abort the access attempt and send a failure message to the MAC layer.

NOTE: If the $L_{pc\text{-}preamble}$ parameter indicates a zero length preamble, then there is no power control preamble and the message portion of the burst starts $\tau_{cd\text{-}p\text{-}pc\text{-}p}$ ms after the initiation of the CD Preamble. In this case the initial transmission power of the control part of the message part shall be $\Delta P_{p\text{-}m}$ [dB] higher than the power of the CD preamble. Power control in the message part is described in sub clause 5.1.3.2

13) The UE shall test the value of Start of Message Indicator received from DL-DPCCH for CPCH during the first $N_{Start\_Message}$ frames after Power Control preamble. Start of Message Indicator is a known sequence repeated on a frame by frame basis. The value of $N_{Start\_Message}$ shall be provided by the higher layers.

14) If the UE does not detect Start of Message Indicator in the first $N_{Start\_Message}$ frames of DL-DPCCH for CPCH after Power Control preamble, the UE aborts the access attempt and sends a failure message to the MAC layer. Otherwise, UE continuously transmits the packet data.

15) During CPCH Packet Data transmission, the UE and UTRAN perform inner-loop power control on both the CPCH UL and the DPCCH DL, as described in sub clause 5.1.3.

16) After the first $N_{Start\_Message}$ frames after Power Control preamble, upon the detection of an Emergency Stop command sent by UTRAN, the UE halts CPCH UL transmission, aborts the access attempt and sends a failure message to the MAC layer.

17) If the UE detects loss of DPCCH DL during transmission of the power control preamble or the packet data, the UE halts CPCH UL transmission, aborts the access attempt and sends a failure message to the MAC layer.

18)The UE may send empty frames after the end of the packet to indicate the end of transmission. The number of the empty frames is set by higher layers.

6A HS-DSCH-related procedures

6A .1 General procedure

Scheduling and transport format selection is controlled by the MAC-hs sublayer in the Node B [9].

The following physical layer parameters are signalled to the UE and the Node B from higher layers:

1) HS-SCCH set to be monitored
2) Repetition factor of ACK/NACK: N_acknack_transmit
3) Channel Quality Indicator (CQI) feedback cycle *k*.
4) Repetition factor of CQI: N_cqi_transmit
5) Measurement power offset Γ

6A .1.1 UE procedure for receiving HS-DSCH

If the UE did not detect consistent control information intended for this UE on any of the HS-SCCHs in the HS-SCCH set in the immediately preceding subframe, the UE shall monitor all HS-SCCHs in the HS-SCCH set. The maximum size of the HS-SCCH set is 4.

If the UE did detect consistent control information intended for this UE in the immediately preceding subframe, it is sufficient to only monitor the same HS-SCCH used in the immediately preceding subframe.

When the UE monitors HS-SCCHs, the UE shall only consider the control information to be consistent

if decoded 'channelization-code-set information' is lower than or equal to 'maximum number of HS-DSCH codes received' in its UE capability and

if the decoded modulation scheme is valid in terms of its UE capability.

If a UE detects that one of the monitored HS-SCCHs carries consistent control information intended for this UE, the UE shall start receiving the HS-PDSCHs indicated by this control information.

The transport block size information shall be derived from the signaled TFRI value as defined in [9]. If the 'Hybrid-ARQ process information' is not included in the set configured by upper layers, the UE shall discard the information received on this HS-SCCH and on the HS-PDSCHs.

The UE shall transmit the ACK/NACK information received from MAC-hs in the slot allocated to the HARQ-ACK in the corresponding HS-DPCCH sub-frame as defined in [1]. When *N_ acknack_transmit* is greater than one, the UE shall:

repeat the transmission of the ACK/NACK information over the next (*N_ acknack_transmit-1*) consecutive HS-DPCCH sub-frames, in the slots allocated to the HARQ-ACK as defined in [1] and

not attempt to receive nor decode transport blocks from the HS-PDSCH in HS-DSCH sub-frames corresponding to HS-DPCCH sub-frames in which the ACK/NACK information transmission is repeated.

If consistent control information is not detected on any of the HS-SCCHs in the HS-SCCH set, neither ACK, nor NACK, shall be transmitted in the corresponding HS-DPCCH subframe.

6A .1.2 UE procedure for reporting channel quality indication (CQI)

With the exception of the provisions of subclause 6A.3, the following shall apply:

1) The UE derives the CQI value as defined in 6A .2.

2) For k = 0, the UE shall not transmit the CQI value.
For k > 0, the UE shall transmit the CQI value in each subframe that starts $m\times256$ chips after the start of the associated uplink DPCCH frame with m fulfilling

$$\left(5\times CFN+\lceil m\times 256chip/7680chip\rceil\right)\mathrm{mod}\,k'=0 \quad \text{with} \quad k'=k/(2ms),$$

where CFN denotes the connection frame number for the associated DPCH and the set of five possible values of m is calculated as described in subclause 7.7 in [1].

3) The UE shall repeat the transmission of the CQI value derived in 1) over the next *(N_cqi_transmit – 1)* consecutive HS-DPCCH sub frames in the slots respectively allocated to the CQI as defined in [1]. UE does not support the case of $k' < N\_cqi\_transmit$.

4) The UE shall not transmit the CQI in other subframes than those described in 2) and 3).

6A .2 Channel quality indicator (CQI) definition

Based on an unrestricted observation interval, the UE shall report the highest tabulated CQI value for which a single HS-DSCH sub-frame formatted with the transport block size, number of HS-PDSCH codes and modulation corresponding to the reported or lower CQI value could be received in a 3-slot reference period ending 1 slot before the start of the first slot in which the reported CQI value is transmitted and for which the transport block error probability would not exceed 0.1. Depending on the UE category as defined in [10], either Table 7A, 7B, 7C, 7D, or 7E should be used.

For the purpose of CQI reporting, the UE shall assume a total received HS-PDSCH power of
$P_{HSPDSCH} = P_{CPICH} + \Gamma + \Delta$ in dB,

where the total received power is evenly distributed among the HS-PDSCH codes of the reported CQI value, the measurement power offset Γ is signaled by higher layers and the reference power adjustment Δ is given by Table 7A, 7B, 7C, 7D, or 7E depending on the UE category.

Further, UE shall assume the number of soft channel bits available in the virtual IR buffer (N_{IR}), and redundancy and constellation version parameter (X_{RV}) as given by Table 7A, 7B, 7C, 7D, or 7E depending on the UE category.

If higher layer signaling informs the UE that for the radio link from the serving HS-DSCH cell it may use a S-CPICH as a phase reference and the P-CPICH is not a valid phase reference, P_{CPICH} is the received power of the S-CPICH used by the UE, otherwise P_{CPICH} is the received power of the P-CPICH. If closed loop transmit diversity is used for the radio link from the serving HS-DSCH cell, P_{CPICH} denotes the power of the combined received CPICH from both transmit antennas, determined as if error-free transmitter weights had been applied to the CPICH, where those weights are determined as described in sub-clause 7.2. If STTD is used, P_{CPICH} denotes the combined CPICH power received from each transmit antenna and if no transmit diversity is used P_{CPICH} denotes the power received from the non diversity antenna.

For the purpose of CQI reporting the UE shall assume that all HS-PDSCH channelisation codes it may receive are under the same scrambling code as the Common Pilot Channel used to determine P_{CPICH}.

Table 7A: CQI mapping table for UE categories 1 to 6.

CQI value	Transport Block Size	Number of HS-PDSCH	Modulation	Reference power adjustment Δ	N_{IR}	X_{RV}
0	N/A	Out of range				
1	137	1	QPSK	0	9600	0
2	173	1	QPSK	0		
3	233	1	QPSK	0		
4	317	1	QPSK	0		
5	377	1	QPSK	0		
6	461	1	QPSK	0		
7	650	2	QPSK	0		
8	792	2	QPSK	0		
9	931	2	QPSK	0		
10	1262	3	QPSK	0		
11	1483	3	QPSK	0		
12	1742	3	QPSK	0		
13	2279	4	QPSK	0		
14	2583	4	QPSK	0		
15	3319	5	QPSK	0		
16	3565	5	16-QAM	0		
17	4189	5	16-QAM	0		
18	4664	5	16-QAM	0		
19	5287	5	16-QAM	0		
20	5887	5	16-QAM	0		
21	6554	5	16-QAM	0		
22	7168	5	16-QAM	0		
23	7168	5	16-QAM	-1		
24	7168	5	16-QAM	-2		
25	7168	5	16-QAM	-3		
26	7168	5	16-QAM	-4		
27	7168	5	16-QAM	-5		
28	7168	5	16-QAM	-6		
29	7168	5	16-QAM	-7		
30	7168	5	16-QAM	-8		

Table 7B: CQI mapping table for UE categories 7 and 8.

CQI value	Transport Block Size	Number of HS-PDSCH	Modulation	Reference power adjustment Δ	N_{IR}	X_{RV}
0	N/A	Out of range				
1	137	1	QPSK	0	19200	0
2	173	1	QPSK	0		
3	233	1	QPSK	0		
4	317	1	QPSK	0		
5	377	1	QPSK	0		
6	461	1	QPSK	0		
7	650	2	QPSK	0		
8	792	2	QPSK	0		
9	931	2	QPSK	0		
10	1262	3	QPSK	0		
11	1483	3	QPSK	0		
12	1742	3	QPSK	0		
13	2279	4	QPSK	0		
14	2583	4	QPSK	0		
15	3319	5	QPSK	0		
16	3565	5	16-QAM	0		
17	4189	5	16-QAM	0		
18	4664	5	16-QAM	0		
19	5287	5	16-QAM	0		
20	5887	5	16-QAM	0		
21	6554	5	16-QAM	0		
22	7168	5	16-QAM	0		
23	9719	7	16-QAM	0		
24	11418	8	16-QAM	0		
25	14411	10	16-QAM	0		
26	14411	10	16-QAM	-1		
27	14411	10	16-QAM	-2		
28	14411	10	16-QAM	-3		
29	14411	10	16-QAM	-4		
30	14411	10	16-QAM	-5		

Table 7C: CQI mapping table for UE category 9.

CQI value	Transport Block Size	Number of HS-PDSCH	Modulation	Reference power adjustment Δ	N_{IR}	X_{RV}
0	N/A	Out of range				
1	137	1	QPSK	0	28800	0
2	173	1	QPSK	0		
3	233	1	QPSK	0		
4	317	1	QPSK	0		
5	377	1	QPSK	0		
6	461	1	QPSK	0		
7	650	2	QPSK	0		
8	792	2	QPSK	0		
9	931	2	QPSK	0		
10	1262	3	QPSK	0		
11	1483	3	QPSK	0		
12	1742	3	QPSK	0		
13	2279	4	QPSK	0		
14	2583	4	QPSK	0		
15	3319	5	QPSK	0		
16	3565	5	16-QAM	0		
17	4189	5	16-QAM	0		
18	4664	5	16-QAM	0		
19	5287	5	16-QAM	0		
20	5887	5	16-QAM	0		
21	6554	5	16-QAM	0		
22	7168	5	16-QAM	0		
23	9719	7	16-QAM	0		
24	11418	8	16-QAM	0		
25	14411	10	16-QAM	0		
26	17237	12	16-QAM	0		
27	17237	12	16-QAM	-1		
28	17237	12	16-QAM	-2		
29	17237	12	16-QAM	-3		
30	17237	12	16-QAM	-4		

Table 7D: CQI mapping table for UE category 10.

CQI value	Transport Block Size	Number of HS-PDSCH	Modulation	Reference power adjustment Δ	N_{IR}	X_{RV}
0	N/A	Out of range				
1	137	1	QPSK	0	28800	0
2	173	1	QPSK	0		
3	233	1	QPSK	0		
4	317	1	QPSK	0		
5	377	1	QPSK	0		
6	461	1	QPSK	0		
7	650	2	QPSK	0		
8	792	2	QPSK	0		
9	931	2	QPSK	0		
10	1262	3	QPSK	0		
11	1483	3	QPSK	0		
12	1742	3	QPSK	0		
13	2279	4	QPSK	0		
14	2583	4	QPSK	0		
15	3319	5	QPSK	0		
16	3565	5	16-QAM	0		
17	4189	5	16-QAM	0		
18	4664	5	16-QAM	0		
19	5287	5	16-QAM	0		
20	5887	5	16-QAM	0		
21	6554	5	16-QAM	0		
22	7168	5	16-QAM	0		
23	9719	7	16-QAM	0		
24	11418	8	16-QAM	0		
25	14411	10	16-QAM	0		
26	17237	12	16-QAM	0		
27	21754	15	16-QAM	0		
28	23370	15	16-QAM	0		
29	24222	15	16-QAM	0		
30	25558	15	16-QAM	0		

Table 7E: CQI mapping table for UE categories 11 and 12.

CQI value	Transport Block Size	Number of HS-PDSCH	Modulation	Reference power adjustment Δ	N_{IR}	X_{RV}
0	N/A	Out of range				
1	137	1	QPSK	0	4800	0
2	173	1	QPSK	0		
3	233	1	QPSK	0		
4	317	1	QPSK	0		
5	377	1	QPSK	0		
6	461	1	QPSK	0		
7	650	2	QPSK	0		
8	792	2	QPSK	0		
9	931	2	QPSK	0		
10	1262	3	QPSK	0		
11	1483	3	QPSK	0		
12	1742	3	QPSK	0		
13	2279	4	QPSK	0		
14	2583	4	QPSK	0		
15	3319	5	QPSK	0		
16	3319	5	QPSK	-1		
17	3319	5	QPSK	-2		
18	3319	5	QPSK	-3		
19	3319	5	QPSK	-4		
20	3319	5	QPSK	-5		
21	3319	5	QPSK	-6		
22	3319	5	QPSK	-7		
23	3319	5	QPSK	-8		
24	3319	5	QPSK	-9		
25	3319	5	QPSK	-10		
26	3319	5	QPSK	-11		
27	3319	5	QPSK	-12		
28	3319	5	QPSK	-13		
29	3319	5	QPSK	-14		
30	3319	5	QPSK	-15		

6A .3 Operation during compressed mode on the associated DPCH

During compressed mode on the associated DPCH, the following applies for the UE for transmission of HS-DPCCH and reception of HS-SCCH and HS-PDSCH:

- The UE shall neglect a HS-SCCH or HS-PDSCH transmission, if a part of the HS-SCCH or a part of the corresponding HS-PDSCH overlaps with a downlink transmission gap on the associated DPCH. In this case, neither ACK, nor NACK shall be transmitted by the UE to respond to the corresponding downlink transmission.

- If a part of a HS-DPCCH slot allocated for ACK/NACK information overlaps with an uplink transmission gap on the associated DPCH, the UE shall not transmit ACK/NACK information in that slot.
- If in a HS-DPCCH sub-frame a part of the slots allocated for CQI information overlaps with an uplink transmission gap on the associated DPCH, the UE shall not transmit CQI information in that sub-frame.
- If a CQI report is scheduled in the current CQI field according to subclause 6A.1.2 paragraph (2), and the corresponding 3-slot reference period (as defined in subclause 6A.2) wholly or partly overlaps a downlink transmission gap, then the UE shall use DTX in the current CQI field and in the CQI fields in the next (*N_cqi_transmit*–1) subframes.

6B E-DCH related procedures

The following physical layer parameters are signalled to the UE from higher layers:

1) E-HICH set to be monitored

2) E-RGCH set to be monitored

6B.1 ACK/NACK combining

When a UE is in soft handover, multiple ACK/NACKs may be received in an E-DCH TTI from different cells in the active set. In some cases, the UE has the knowledge that some of the transmitted ACK/NACKs are the same. This is the case when the radio links are in the same radio link set. For these cases, ACK/NACKs from the same radio link set shall be combined into one ACK/NACK information and delivered to higher layers.

6B.2 Relative Grants combining

When a UE is in soft handover, multiple Relative Grants may be received in an E-DCH TTI from different cells in the E-DCH active set. In some cases, the UE has the knowledge that some of the transmitted Relative Grants are the same. This is the case when the radio links are in the E-DCH Radio Link Set (serving or non serving). For these cases, Relative Grants from the same E-DCH Radio Link Set (serving or non serving) shall be combined into one Relative Grant information and delivered to higher layers.

7 Closed loop mode transmit diversity

The general transmitter structure to support closed loop mode transmit diversity for DPCH transmission is shown in figure 3. Channel coding, interleaving and spreading are done as in non-diversity mode. The spread complex valued signal is fed to both TX antenna branches, and weighted with antenna specific weight factors w_1 and w_2. The weight factors are complex valued signals (i.e., $w_i = a_i + jb_i$), in general.

The weight factors (actually the corresponding phase adjustments in closed loop mode 1 and phase/amplitude adjustments in closed loop mode 2) are determined by the UE, and signalled to the UTRAN access point (=cell transceiver) using the D sub-field of the FBI field of uplink DPCCH.

For the closed loop mode 1 different orthogonal dedicated pilot symbols in the DPCCH are sent on the 2 different antennas. For closed loop mode 2 the same dedicated pilot symbols in the DPCCH are sent on both antennas.

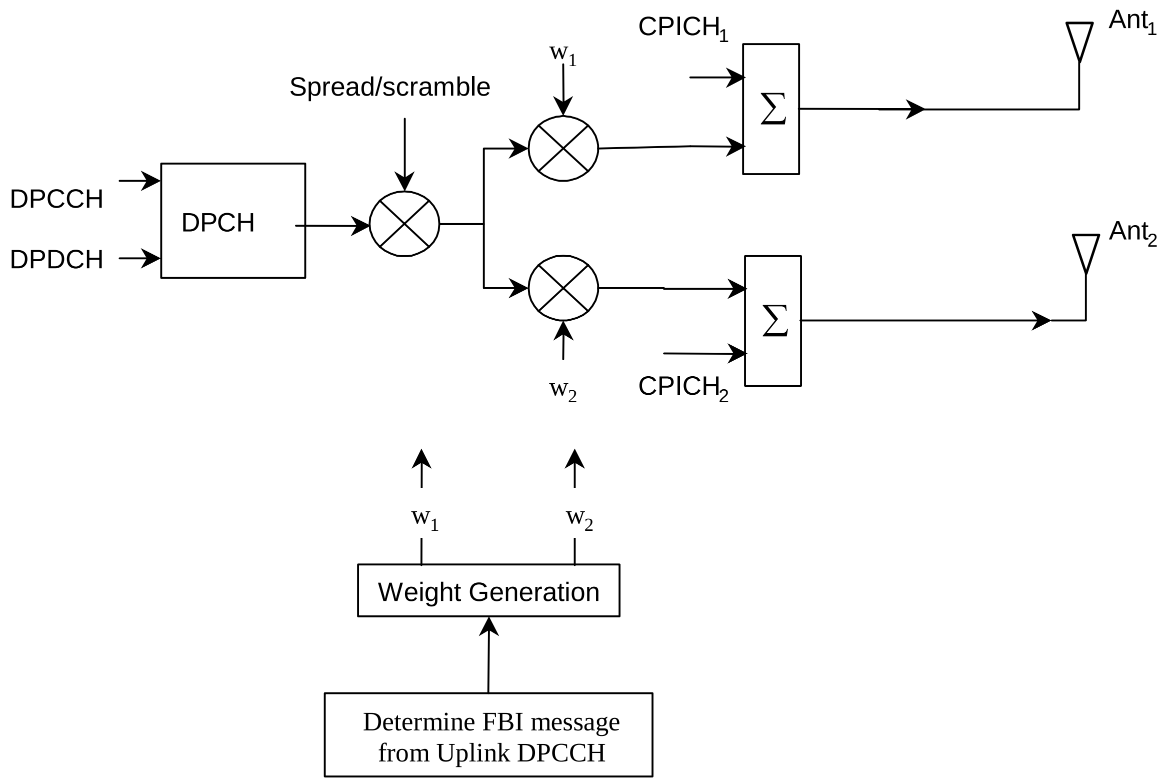


Figure 3: The generic downlink transmitter structure to support closed loop mode transmit diversity for DPCH transmission

There are two closed loop modes whose characteristics are summarised in the table 8. The use of the modes is controlled via higher layer signalling.

Table 8: Summary of number of feedback information bits per slot, N_{FBD}, feedback command length in slots, N_W, feedback command rate, feedback bit rate, number of phase bits, N_{ph}, per signalling word, number of amplitude bits, N_{po}, per signalling word and amount of constellation rotation at UE for the two closed loop modes

Closed loop mode	N_{FBD}	N_W	Update rate	Feedback bit rate	N_{po}	N_{ph}	Constellation rotation
1	1	1	1500 Hz	1500 bps	0	1	$\pi/2$
2	1	4	1500 Hz	1500 bps	1	3	N/A

7.1 Determination of feedback information

The UE uses the CPICH to separately estimate the channels seen from each antenna.

Once every slot, the UE computes the phase adjustment, ϕ, and for mode 2 the amplitude adjustment that should be applied at the UTRAN access point to maximise the UE received power. During soft handover, the UE computes the phase adjustment and for mode 2 the amplitude adjustment to maximise the total UE received power from the cells in the active set. In the case that a PDSCH or HS-PDSCH is associated with a DPCH for which closed-loop transmit diversity is applied, the antenna weights applied to the PDSCH and HS-PDSCH, respectively, are the same as the antenna weights applied to the associated DPCH. In case a PDSCH or HS-PDSCH is associated with a DPCH during soft handover, the UE may emphasize the radio link transmitted from DSCH or HS-DSCH serving cell, respectively, when calculating the antenna weights. An example of how the computations can be accomplished is given in Annex A.2.

The UE feeds back to the UTRAN access point the information on which phase/power settings to use. Feedback Signalling Message (FSM) bits are transmitted in the portion of FBI field of uplink DPCCH slot(s) assigned to closed loop mode transmit diversity, the FBI D field (see [1]). Each message is of length $N_W = N_{po}+N_{ph}$ bits and its format is shown in the figure 4. The transmission order of bits is from MSB to LSB, i.e. MSB is transmitted first. FSM_{po} and FSM_{ph} subfields are used to transmit the power and phase settings, respectively.

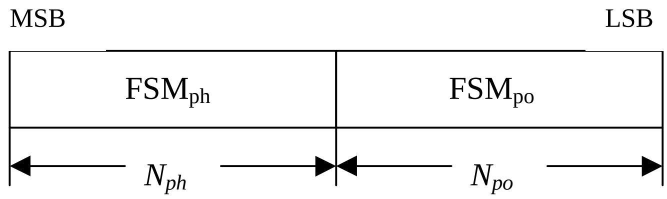


Figure 4: Format of feedback signalling message. FSM_{po} transmits the power setting and FSM_{ph} the phase setting

The adjustments are made by the UTRAN Access Point at the beginning of the downlink DPCCH pilot field. The downlink slot in which the adjustment is done is signalled to L1 of UE by higher layers. Two possibilities exist:

1) When feedback command is transmitted in uplink slot *i*, which is transmitted approximately 1024 chips in offset from the received downlink slot *j*, the adjustment is done at the beginning of the pilot field of the downlink slot (*j*+1) mod 15.

2) When feedback command is transmitted in uplink slot *i*, which is transmitted approximately 1024 chips in offset from the received downlink slot *j*, the adjustment is done at the beginning of the pilot field of the downlink slot (*j*+2) mod 15.

Thus, adjustment timing at UTRAN Access Point is either according to 1) or 2) as controlled by the higher layers.

In case of soft handover, Layer 1 shall support different adjustment timing values for different radio links in the same active set.

The timing of the weight adjustment of the PDSCH is such that the PDSCH weight adjustment is done at the PDSCH slot border, N chips after the adjustment of the associated DPCH, where $0 \le N < 2560$.

The timing of the weight adjustment of the HS-PDSCH is such that the HS-PDSCH weight adjustment is done at the HS-PDSCH slot border, respectively, M chips after the adjustment of the associated DPCH, where $0 \le M < 2560$.

7.2 Closed loop mode 1

The UE uses the CPICH transmitted both from antenna 1 and antenna 2 to calculate the phase adjustment to be applied at UTRAN access point to maximise the UE received power. In each slot, UE calculates the optimum phase adjustment, ϕ, for antenna 2, which is then quantized into ϕ_Q having two possible values as follows:

$$\phi_Q = \begin{cases} \pi, & \text{if } \pi/2 < \phi - \phi_r(i) \le 3\pi/2 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (1)$$

where:

$$\phi_r(i) = \begin{cases} 0, & i = 0,2,4,6,8,10,12,14 \\ \pi/2, & i = 1,3,5,7,9,11,13 \end{cases} \quad (2)$$

If $\phi_Q = 0$, a command '0' is send to UTRAN using the FSM_{ph} field. Correspondingly, if $\phi_Q = \pi$, command '1' is send to UTRAN using the FSM_{ph} field.

Due to rotation of the constellation at UE the UTRAN interprets the received commands according to table 9 which shows the mapping between phase adjustment, ϕ_i, and received feedback command for each uplink slot.

Table 9: Phase adjustments, ϕ_i, corresponding to feedback commands for the slots *i* of the UL radio frame

Slot #		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
FSM	0	0	π/2	0	π/2	0	π/2	0	π/2	0	π/2	0	π/2	0	π/2	0
	1	π	-π/2	π	-π/2	π	-π/2	π	-π/2	π	-π/2	π	-π/2	π	-π/2	π

The weight w_2 is then calculated by averaging the received phases over 2 consecutive slots. Algorithmically, w_2 is calculated as follows:

$$w_2 = \frac{\sum_{i=n-1}^{n} \cos(\phi_i)}{2} + j\frac{\sum_{i=n-1}^{n} \sin(\phi_i)}{2} \qquad (3)$$

where:

$$\phi_i \in \{0, \pi, \pi/2, -\pi/2\} \qquad (4)$$

For antenna 1, w_1 is constant:

$$w_1 = 1/\sqrt{2} \qquad (5)$$

7.2.1 Mode 1 end of frame adjustment

In closed loop mode 1 at frame borders the averaging operation is slightly modified. Upon reception of the FB command for slot 0 of a frame, the average is calculated based on the command for slot 13 of the previous frame and the command for slot 0 of the current frame, i.e. ϕ_i from slot 14 is not used:

$$w_2 = \frac{\cos(\phi_{13}^{j-1}) + \cos(\phi_0^j)}{2} + j\frac{\sin(\phi_{13}^{j-1}) + \sin(\phi_0^j)}{2} \qquad (6)$$

where:

- ϕ_{13}^{j-1} = phase adjustment from frame j-1, slot 13.
- ϕ_0^j = phase adjustment from frame j, slot 0.

7.2.2 Mode 1 normal initialisation

For the first frame of transmission UE determines the feedback commands in a normal way and sends them to UTRAN.

Before the first FB command is received, the UTRAN shall use the initial weight $w_2 = \frac{1}{2}(1+j)$.

Having received the first FB command the UTRAN calculates w_2 as follows:

$$w_2 = \frac{\cos(\pi/2) + \cos(\phi_0)}{2} + j\frac{\sin(\pi/2) + \sin(\phi_0)}{2} \qquad (7)$$

where:

ϕ_0 = phase adjustment from slot 0 of the first frame.

7.2.3 Mode 1 operation during compressed mode

7.2.3.1 Downlink in compressed mode and uplink in normal mode

When downlink is in compressed mode but uplink is operating normally (i.e. not compressed) the UTRAN continues it's Tx diversity related functions in the same way as in non-compressed downlink mode.

In downlink transmission gaps there are uplink slots for which no new estimate of the phase adjustment is calculated. During these slots the following rules are applied in UE when determining the feedback command:

1) If no new estimate of phase adjustment ϕ_i exists corresponding to the feedback command to be sent in uplink slot *i*:

- If 1 < *i* < 15:
    - the feedback command sent in uplink slot *i*-2 is used;
- else if *i* = 0:
    - the feedback command sent in uplink slot 14 of previous frame is used;
- else if *i* = 1:
    - the feedback command sent in uplink slot 13 of previous frame is used;
- end if.

2) When transmission in downlink is started again in downlink slot N_{last}+1 (if N_{last}+1 = 15, then slot 0 in the next frame) the UE must resume calculating new estimates of the phase adjustment. The feedback command corresponding to the first new estimate of ϕ_i must be sent in the uplink slot which is transmitted approximately 1024 chips in offset from the downlink slot N_{last}+1.

7.2.3.2 Both downlink and uplink in compressed mode

During the uplink transmission gaps no FB commands are sent from UE to UTRAN. When transmission in downlink is started again in downlink slot N_{last}+1 (if N_{last}+1 = 15, then slot 0 in the next frame) the UE must resume calculating new estimates of the phase adjustment. The feedback command corresponding to the first new estimate of ϕ_i must be sent in the uplink slot which is transmitted approximately 1024 chips in offset from the downlink slot N_{last}+1.

The UTRAN continues to update the weight w_2 until the uplink transmission gap starts and no more FB commands are received. When the transmission in downlink resumes in slot N_{last}+1, the value of w_2, calculated after receiving the last FB command before the start of the uplink transmission gap, is applied to antenna 2 signal.

After the UE resumes transmission in uplink and sends the first FB command, the new value of w_2 is calculated as follows:

- S_1 = {0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12 14}.
- S_2 = {1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13}.
- i = number of uplink slot at which the transmission resumes.
- j = number of uplink slot at which the last FB command was sent before the start of the uplink transmission gap.
- Do while ($i \in S_1$ *and* $j \in S_1$) or ($i \in S_2$ *and* $j \in S_2$):
    - j = j-1;
    - if j < 0;
    - j = 14;
- end if;
- end do;

- calculate w_2 based on FB commands received in uplink slots i and j.

Note that for N_{last} = 13 the end of frame adjustment procedure shall be based on the FB commands for the last odd slot prior to the uplink transmission gap and slot 0.

7.2.3.3 Uplink in compressed mode and downlink in normal mode

The UTRAN continues to update the value of w_2 until the uplink transmission gap starts and no more FB commands are received. Then, the value of w_2 calculated after receiving the last FB command before the uplink transmission gap is applied to the antenna 2 signal. When the UE resumes transmission in uplink, it shall send FB commands according to section 7.2 equations 2 and 3 (normal operation) and the UTRAN Access Point shall interpret the FB commands according to Table 9.

The calculation of w_2 by the UTRAN following the uplink transmission gap, and before the first two FB commands following the gap are received is not specified.

7.2.4 Mode 1 initialisation during compressed mode

7.2.4.1 Downlink in compressed mode

When closed loop mode 1 is initialised during the downlink transmission gap of compressed mode there are slots for which no estimate of the phase adjustment is calculated and no previous feedback command is available.

In this case, if the UE is required to send feedback in the uplink, the FB command to the UTRAN shall be ‘0’.

When transmission in downlink is started again in slot N_{last}+1 (if N_{last}+1 = 15, then slot 0 in the next frame), the UTRAN shall use the initial weight $w_2 = \frac{1}{2}(1+j)$. The UE must start calculating estimates of the phase adjustment.

The feedback command corresponding to the first estimate of ϕ_i must be sent in the uplink slot which is transmitted approximately 1024 chips in offset from the downlink slot N_{last}+1. Having received this feedback command the UTRAN calculates w_2 as follows:

$$w_2 = \frac{\cos(\phi_i) + \cos(\phi_j)}{2} + j\frac{\sin(\phi_i) + \sin(\phi_j)}{2} \qquad (8)$$

where:

ϕ_i = phase adjustment in uplink slot i , which is transmitted approximately 1024 chips in offset from the downlink slot N_{last}+1.

$\phi_j = \frac{\pi}{2}$, if slot i is even ($i \in \{0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14\}$) and

$\phi_j = 0$, if slot i is odd ($i \in \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13\}$)

7.2.4.2 Uplink in compressed mode

Initialisation of closed loop mode 1 operation during uplink compressed mode only is not specified.

7.3 Closed loop mode 2

In closed loop mode 2 there are 16 possible combinations of phase and power adjustment from which the UE selects and transmits the FSM according to table 10 and table 11. As opposed to closed loop Mode 1, no constellation rotation is done at UE and no filtering of the received weights is performed at the UTRAN.

Table 10: FSM_{po} subfield of closed loop mode 2 signalling message

FSM_{po}	Power_ant1	Power_ant2
0	0.2	0.8
1	0.8	0.2

Table 11: FSM_{ph} subfield of closed loop mode 2 signalling message

FSM_{ph}	Phase difference between antennas (radians)
000	π
001	-3π/4
011	-π/2
010	-π/4
110	0
111	π/4
101	π/2
100	3π/4

To obtain the best performance, progressive updating is performed at both the UE and the UTRAN Access point. The UE procedure shown below is an example of how to determine FSM at UE. Different implementation is allowed. Every slot time, the UE may refine its choice of FSM, from the set of weights allowed given the previously transmitted bits of the FSM. This is shown in figure 5, where, in this figure b_i ($0 \le i \le 3$) are the bits of the FSM (from table 10 and table 11) from the MSB to the LSB and m=0, 1, 2, 3 (the end of frame adjustment given in subclause 7.3.1 is not shown here).

At the beginning of a FSM to be transmitted, the UE chooses the best FSM out of the 16 possibilities. Then the UE starts sending the FSM bits from the MSB to the LSB in the portion of FBI field of the uplink DPCCH during 4 (FSM message length) slots. Within the transmission of the FSM the UE refines its choice of FSM. This is defined in the following:

- define the 4 bits of FSM, which are transmitted from slot number k to k+3, as $\{b_3(k)\ b_2(k+1)\ b_1(k+2)\ b_0(k+3)\}$, where k=0, 4, 8, 12. Define also the estimated received power criteria defined in Equation 1 for a given FSM as $P(\{x_3, x_2\ x_1\ x_0\})$, where $\{x_3\ x_2\ x_1\ x_0\}$ is one of the 16 possible FSMs which defines an applied phase and power offset according to table 10 and table 11. The $b_i()$ and x_i are 0 or 1.

The bits transmitted during the m'th FSM of the frame, where m=0,1,2,3, are then given by:

$b_3(4m)=X_3$ from the $\{X_3\ X_2\ X_1\ X_0\}$ which maximises $P(\{x_3\ x_2\ x_1\ x_0\})$ over all x_3,x_2,x_1,x_0 (16 possible combinations);

$b_2(4m+1)=X_2$ from the $\{b_3(4m)\ X_2\ X_1\ X_0\}$ which maximises $P(\{b_3(4m)\ x_2\ x_1\ x_0\})$ over all x_2,x_1,x_0 (8 possible combinations);

$b_1(4m+2)=X_1$ from the $\{b_3(4m)\ b_2(4m+1)\ X_1\ X_0\}$ which maximises $P(\{b_3(4m)\ b_2(4m+1)\ x_1\ x_0\})$ over all x_1,x_0 (4 possible combinations);

$b_0(4m+3)=X_0$ from the $\{b_3(4m)\ b_2(4m+1)\ b_1(4m+2)\ X_0\}$ which maximises $P(\{b_3(4m)\ b_2(4m+1)\ b_1(4m+2)\ x_0\})$ over x_0 (2 possible combinations).

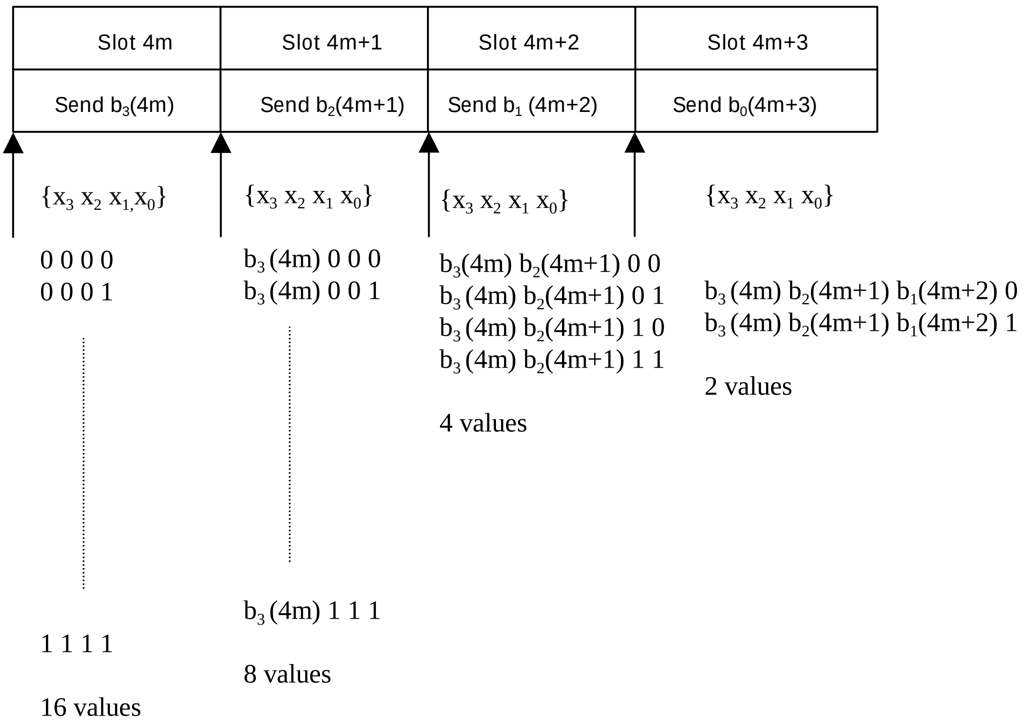


Figure 5: Progressive Refinement at the UE for closed loop mode 2

Every slot time the UTRAN constructs the FSM from the most recently received bits for each position in the word and applies the phase and amplitude (derived from power) as defined by table 10 and table 11. More precisely, the UTRAN operation can be explained as follows. The UTRAN maintains a register **z**={z_3 z_2 z_1 z_0}, which is updated every slot time according to z_i=b_i(ns) (i=0:3, ns=0:14). Every slot time the contents of register **z** are used to determine the phase and power adjustments as defined by table 10 and table 11, with FSM_{ph} ={z_3 z_2 z_1} and FSM_{po}=z_0.

Special procedures for initialisation and end of frame processing are described below.

The weight vector, $\underline{w}$, is then calculated as:

$$\underline{w} = \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{power\_ant1} \\ \sqrt{power\_ant2}\,\exp(j\ phase\_diff) \end{bmatrix} \tag{9}$$

7.3.1 Mode 2 end of frame adjustment

The FSM must be wholly contained within a frame. To achieve this an adjustment is made to the last FSM in the frame where the UE only sends the FSM_{ph} subfield, and the UTRAN takes the power bit FSM_{po} of the previous FSM.

7.3.2 Mode 2 normal initialisation

For the first frame of transmission using closed loop mode 2, the operation is as follows.

The UE starts sending the FSM message from slot 0 in the normal way. The UE may refine its choice of FSM in slots 1 to 3 from the set of weights allowed given the previously transmitted bits of the FSM.

The UTRAN Access Point operation is as follows. Until the first FSM_{po} bit is received and acted upon (depending on the timing control specified via the higher layer parameter described in section 7.1) the power in both antennas shall be set to 0.5. Until the first FSM_{ph} bit is received and acted upon the phase difference between antennas shall be π radians.

The phase offset applied between the antennas is updated according to the number and value of FSM_{ph} bits received as given in table 12.

Table 12: FSM_{ph} normal initialisation for closed loop mode 2

FSM_{ph}	Phase difference between antennas (radians)
- - -	π (normal initialisation) or held from previous setting (compressed mode recovery)
0 - -	π
1 - -	0
0 0 -	π
0 1 -	-π/2
1 1 -	0
1 0 -	π/2
0 0 0	π
0 0 1	-3π/4
0 1 1	-π/2
0 1 0	-π/4
1 1 0	0
1 1 1	π/4
1 0 1	π/2
1 0 0	3π/4

This operation applies in both the soft handover and non soft handover cases.

7.3.3 Mode 2 operation during compressed mode

7.3.3.1 Downlink in compressed mode and uplink in normal mode

When the downlink is in compressed mode and the uplink is in normal mode, the closed loop mode 2 functions are described below.

When the UE is not listening to the CPICH from antennas 1 and 2 during the downlink transmission gap, the UE sends the last FSM bits calculated before the start of the downlink transmission gap.

Recovery from compressed mode is described in the following. Downlink transmissions commence at the pilot field of slot Nlast as described in [2].

After a transmission gap, UTRAN Access Point sets the power in both antennas to 0.5 until a FSM_{po} bit is received and acted upon. Until the first FSM_{ph} bit is received and acted upon, UTRAN uses the phase offset, which was applied before the transmission interruption (table 12).

If the uplink slot Nlast+1 (modulo 15) occurs at the beginning of a FSM period (that is at slot 0,4,8,or 12), the UE sends the FSM message in the normal way, with 3 FSM_{ph} bits and with the FSM_{po} bit on slot 3, 7 or 11, and the UTRAN Access Point acts on the FSM_{ph} bits according to table 12.

If the uplink slot Nlast+1 (modulo 15) does not occur at the beginning of a FSM period, the following operation is performed. In each of the remaining slots of the partial FSM period, that is from slot Nlast+1 (modulo 15) until the final slot (slot 3, 7, 11or 14), and for the first slot of the next full FSM period, the UE sends the first (i.e. MSB) bit of the FSM_{ph} message, and at the UTRAN access point the phase offset applied between the antennas is updated according to the number and value of FSM_{ph} bits received as given in table 13. During the following full FSM period, which starts on slot 0, 4, 8, or 12, the UE sends the FSM message in the normal way, with 3 FSM_{ph} bits and with the FSM_{po} bit on slot 3, 7 or 11, and the UTRAN Access Point acts on the FSM_{ph} bits according to table 12.

Table 13: FSM_{ph} subfield of closed loop mode 2 in compressed mode recovery period

FSM_{ph}	Phase difference between antennas (radians)
-	held from previous setting
0	π
1	0

7.3.3.2 Both downlink and uplink in compressed mode

During both downlink and uplink compressed mode, the UTRAN and the UE performs the functions of recovery after transmission gaps as described in the previous subclause 7.3.3.1.

7.3.3.3 Uplink in compressed mode and downlink in normal mode

The UTRAN continues to update the weight vector $\underline{w}$ until the uplink transmission gap starts and no more FSM bits are received. Then, UTRAN Access Point continues to apply the weight vector $\underline{w}$, which was used before the transmission gap. When the UE resumes transmission in uplink, it chooses FSM according to normal operation as described in section 7.3 and 7.3.1. If the uplink signalling does not resume at the beginning of a FSM period, the UE shall calculate the remaining FSM bits according to section 7.3, using the last FSM(s) sent before the uplink gap as the "previously transmitted bits of the FSM".

The calculation of the phase adjustment by UTRAN remains unspecified until all 3 FSM_{ph} bits have been received following the uplink transmission gap. The calculation of the power adjustment by UTRAN remains unspecified until an FSM_{po} bit has been received following the uplink transmission gap.

7.3.4 Mode 2 initialisation during compressed mode

7.3.4.1 Downlink in compressed mode

When closed loop mode 2 is initialised during the downlink transmission gap of compressed mode there are slots for which no FSM bit is calculated and no previous sent FSM bit is available.

In this case, if the UE is required to send feedback in the uplink, the FB command to the UTRAN shall be ‘0’.

The UTRAN and the UE perform the functions of recovery after the downlink transmission gap as described in the previous subclause 7.3.3.1. If no previous phase setting is available, UTRAN shall use the phase offset π, until the first FSM_{ph} bit is received and acted upon.

7.3.4.2 Uplink in compressed mode

Initialisation of closed loop mode 2 operation during uplink compressed mode only is not specified.

8 Idle periods for IPDL location method

8.1 General

To support time difference measurements for location services, idle periods can be created in the downlink (hence the name IPDL) during which time transmission of all channels from a Node B is temporarily seized. During these idle periods the visibility of neighbour cells from the UE is improved.

The idle periods are arranged in a predetermined pseudo random fashion according to higher layer parameters. Idle periods differ from compressed mode in that they are shorter in duration, all channels are silent simultaneously, and no attempt is made to prevent data loss.

In general there are two modes for these idle periods:

- Continuous mode, and
- Burst mode.

In continuous mode the idle periods are active all the time. In burst mode the idle periods are arranged in bursts where each burst contains enough idle periods to allow a UE to make sufficient measurements for its location to be calculated. The bursts are separated by a period where no idle periods occur.

8.2 Parameters of IPDL

The following parameters are signalled to the UE via higher layers:

IP_Status: This is a logic value that indicates if the idle periods are arranged in continuous or burst mode.

IP_Spacing: The number of 10 ms radio frames between the start of a radio frame that contains an idle period and the next radio frame that contains an idle period. Note that there is at most one idle period in a radio frame.

IP_Length: The length of the idle periods, expressed in symbols of the CPICH.

IP_Offset: A cell specific offset that can be used to synchronise idle periods from different sectors within a Node B.

Seed: Seed for the pseudo random number generator.

Additionally in the case of burst mode operation the following parameters are also communicated to the UE.

Burst_Start: Specifies the start of the first burst of idle periods. 256×Burst_Start is the SFN where the first burst of idle periods starts.

Burst_Length: The number of idle periods in a burst of idle periods.

Burst_Freq: Specifies the time between the start of a burst and the start of the next burst. 256×Burst_Freq is the number of radio frames of the primary CPICH between the start of a burst and the start of the next burst.

8.3 Calculation of idle period position

In burst mode, burst #0 starts in the radio frame with SFN = 256×Burst_Start. Burst #k starts in the radio frame with SFN = 256×Burst_Start + k×256×Burst_Freq(k = 0,1,2, …). The sequence of bursts according to this formula continues up to and including the radio frame with SFN = 4095. At the start of the radio frame with SFN = 0, the burst sequence is terminated (no idle periods are generated) and at SFN = 256×Burst_Start the burst sequence is restarted with burst #0 followed by burst #1 etc., as described above.

Continuous mode is equivalent to burst mode, with only one burst spanning the whole SFN cycle of 4096 radio frames, this burst starting in the radio frame with SFN = 0.

Assume that IP_Position(x) is the position of idle period number x within a burst, where x = 1, 2, …, and IP_Position(x) is measured in number of CPICH symbols from the start of the first radio frame of the burst.

The positions of the idle periods within each burst are then given by the following equation:

$$\text{IP\_Position}(x) = (x \times \text{IP\_Spacing} \times 150) + (\text{rand}(x \text{ modulo } 64) \text{ modulo } (150 - \text{IP\_Length})) + \text{IP\_Offset};$$

where rand(m) is a pseudo random generator defined as follows:

$$\text{rand}(0) = \text{Seed};$$

$$\text{rand}(m) = (106 \times \text{rand}(m - 1) + 1283) \text{ modulo } 6075,\ m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots.$$

Note that x is reset to x = 1 for the first idle period in every burst.

Figure 6 below illustrates the idle periods for the burst mode case.

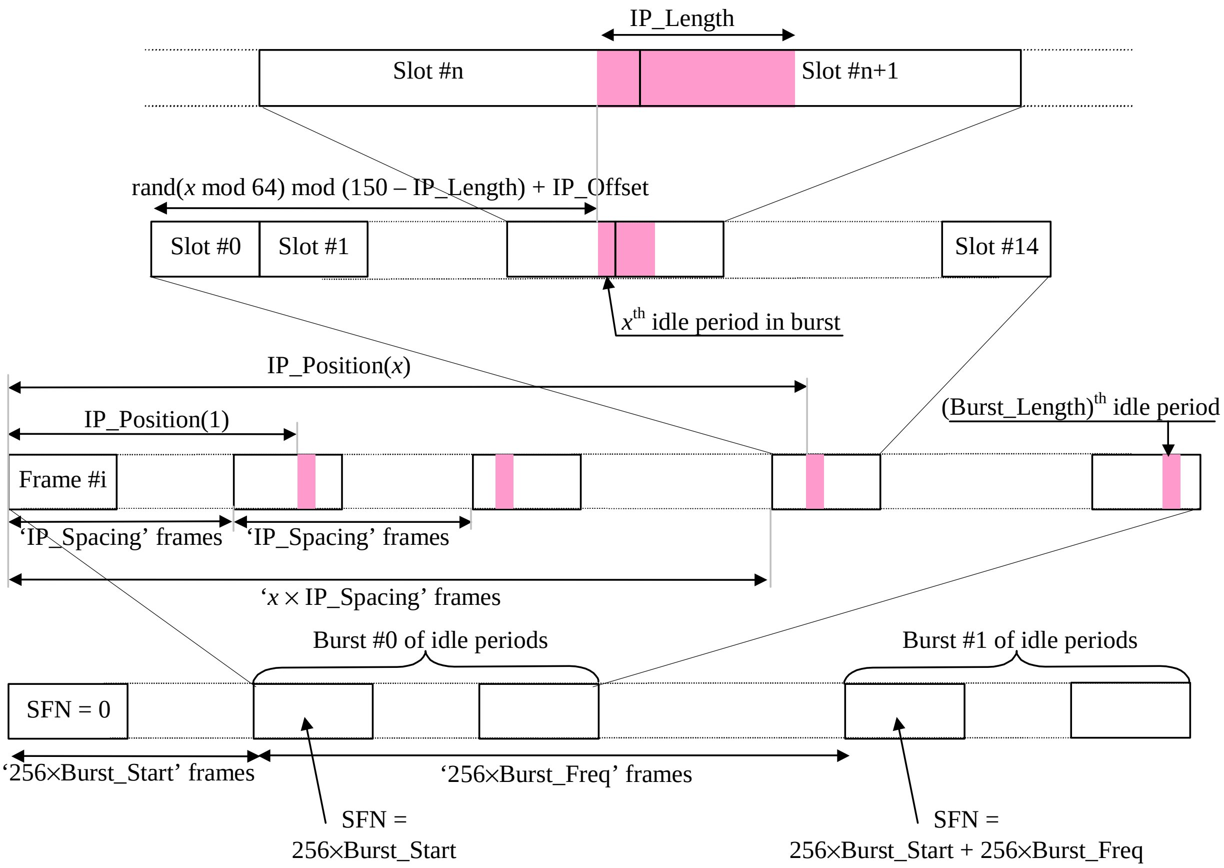


Figure 6: Idle Period placement in the case of burst mode operation

Annex A (informative):

A.1 Antenna verification

In closed loop mode 1, if channel estimates are taken from the Primary CPICH, the performance will also suffer if the UE cannot detect errors since the channel estimates will be taken for the incorrect phase settings. To mitigate this problem, antenna verification can be done, which can make use of antenna specific pilot patterns of the dedicated physical channel. The antenna verification can be implemented with several different algorithms. A straightforward algorithm can use a 4-hypothesis test per slot. Alternatively, a simplified beam former verification (SBV) requiring only a 2-hypothesis test per slot can be used.

Consider

$$2\sum_{i=1}^{Npath}\frac{1}{\sigma_i^2}\left\{\sqrt{2}\,\mathrm{Re}(\gamma h_{2,i}^{(d)}h_{2,i}^{(p)^*})\right\} > \ln\left(\frac{\overline{p}(\phi_{Rx}=\pi)}{\overline{p}(\phi_{Rx}=0)}\right)$$

Then define the variable x_0 as 0 if the above inequality holds good and $x_0 = \pi$ otherwise.

Similarly consider

$$-2\sum_{i=1}^{Npath}\frac{1}{\sigma_i^2}\left\{\sqrt{2}\,\mathrm{Im}(\gamma h_{2,i}^{(d)}h_{2,i}^{(p)^*})\right\} > \ln\left(\frac{\overline{p}(\phi_{Rx}=\pi/2)}{\overline{p}(\phi_{Rx}=-\pi/2)}\right)$$

then define the variable x_1 as $-\pi/2$ if the above inequality holds good and $x_1 = \pi/2$ oherwise.

Whether x_0 or x_1 is to be calculated for each slot is given by the following table , where the first row contains the UL slot index of the feedback bit to be verified.

UL	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
	x_0	x_1	x_0	x_1	x_0	x_1	x_0	x_1	x_0	x_1	x_0	x_1	x_0	x_1	x_0

The estimate for the transmitted phase is now obtained from

$$\sin(\phi_{Tx}) + j\cos(\phi_{Tx}) = \frac{\sum_{i=0}^{1}\sin(x_i)}{\sqrt{2}} + j\frac{\sum_{i=0}^{1}\cos(x_i)}{\sqrt{2}}$$

where:

- the x_i values are used corresponding to the current slot and the previous slot taking into account the end-of-frame adjustment and the used CL timing adjustment delay
- $h_{2,i}^{(p)}$ is the *i*'th estimated channel tap of antenna 2 using the CPICH;
- $h_{2,i}^{(d)}$ is the *i*'th estimated channel tap of antenna 2 using the DPCCH;
- γ^2 is the DPCH Pilot SNIR/ CPICH SNIR;
- σ_i^2 is the noise plus interference power on the *i*'th path.

In normal operation the *a priori* probability for selected pilot pattern is assumed to be 96% (assuming there are 4% of errors in the feedback channel for power control and antenna selection).

For closed loop mode 2, if channel estimates are taken from the Primary CPICH, antenna verification can also be performed, for example using a 16-hypothesis test per slot. For closed loop mode 2, the same pilot sequence is transmitted on both antennas for DPCCH. Therefore, we obtain channel estimates from the DPCCH that correspond to the combined channel from both transmitting antennas:

$$\vec{h}^{(d)} = \gamma(\beta_1 \vec{h}_1 + \beta_2 \vec{h}_2) + \vec{b}^{(d)}$$

where β_1, β_2 are the applied coefficients on the antennas at the UTRAN, γ is as defined above for mode 1 verification, $\vec{h}_i$ is the actual channel vector from the *i-th* antenna, and $\vec{b}^{(d)}$ is the noise vector for the DPCCH channel estimate. Furthermore we have channel estimates made on the CPICH Pilots for each antenna:

$$\vec{h}_1^{(p)} = \vec{h}_1 + \vec{b}_1^{p}$$

$$\vec{h}_2^{(p)} = \vec{h}_2 + \vec{b}_2^{p}$$

where $\vec{h}_i^{(p)}$ is the estimated channel vector using the CPICH, and $\vec{b}_i^{p}$ is the noise vector for the CPICH channel estimate, from the *i-th* antenna.

At the receiver, verification consists in choosing a pair of applied coefficients, $(\hat{\beta}_1, \hat{\beta}_2)$, which results in a combined channel estimate from CPICH which best fits the channel estimate obtained from the DPCCH, taking into account the *a priori* probability of error on the FBI bits.

One possible way of implementing verification for mode 2 is by choosing $(\hat{\beta}_1, \hat{\beta}_2)$ from the whole set of possibilities $T = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2\}$, using the logarithmic form of the following decision rule:

$$(\hat{\beta}_1, \hat{\beta}_2) = \arg\left\langle \max_{\alpha_1,\alpha_2 \in T} \left\{ \ln(\hat{p}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2)) + \ln(\overline{p}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2)) \right\} \right\rangle$$

where the *a priori* probability $\overline{p}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2)$ for each candidate antenna coefficient pair is determined from the antenna coefficient pair asked for by the mobile, combined with the *a priori* probability of each FSM bit used to represent the antenna coefficient pair. The *a priori* probability of each FSM bit is assumed to be 96% (assuming there are 4% of errors in the feedback channel). Also

$$\ln(\hat{p}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2)) = -\left(\sum_{i=1}^{Npath} \frac{\left| h_i^{(d)} - \gamma\left(\alpha_1 h_{1,i}^{(p)} + \alpha_2 h_{2,i}^{(p)}\right) \right|^2}{\sigma_i^2 \left(1 + \gamma^2 \left(|\alpha_1|^2 + |\alpha_2|^2\right)\right)} \right)$$

where σ_i^2 is as defined above for mode 1 verification.

A.2 Computation of feedback information for closed loop transmit diversity

In non-soft handover case, the computation of feedback information can be accomplished by e.g. solving for weight vector, $\underline{w}$, that maximises.

$$P = \underline{w}^H H^H H \underline{w} \qquad (1)$$

where

H=[$\underline{h}_1$ $\underline{h}_2$] and $\underline{w}$ = [w_1, w_2]^T

and where the column vectors $\underline{h}_1$ and $\underline{h}_2$ represent the estimated channel impulse responses for the transmission antennas 1 and 2, of length equal to the length of the channel impulse response. The elements of $\underline{w}$ correspond to the adjustments computed by the UE.

During soft handover, the antenna weight vector, $\underline{w}$ can be, for example, determined so as to maximise the criteria function:

$$P = \underline{w}^H(H_1^H H_1 + H_2^H H_2 + \cdots)\underline{w} \qquad (2)$$

where H_i is an estimated channel impulse response for BS#i. In regular SHO, the set of BS#i corresponds to the active set.

If PDSCH is present, the UE may emphasize the PDSCH serving cell. In this case the antenna weight vector, $\underline{w}$ can be, for example, determined so as to maximise the criteria function:

$$P = \underline{w}^H(\alpha(H_1^H H_1) + (1-\alpha)(H_2^H H_2 + \cdots))\underline{w}$$

where BS#1 is the PDSCH serving cell and coefficient α is less than or equal to 1. For example $\alpha = 0.7$ enhances DSCH performance while ensuring that there is only a small degradation on the DPCH.

Annex B (Informative): Power control

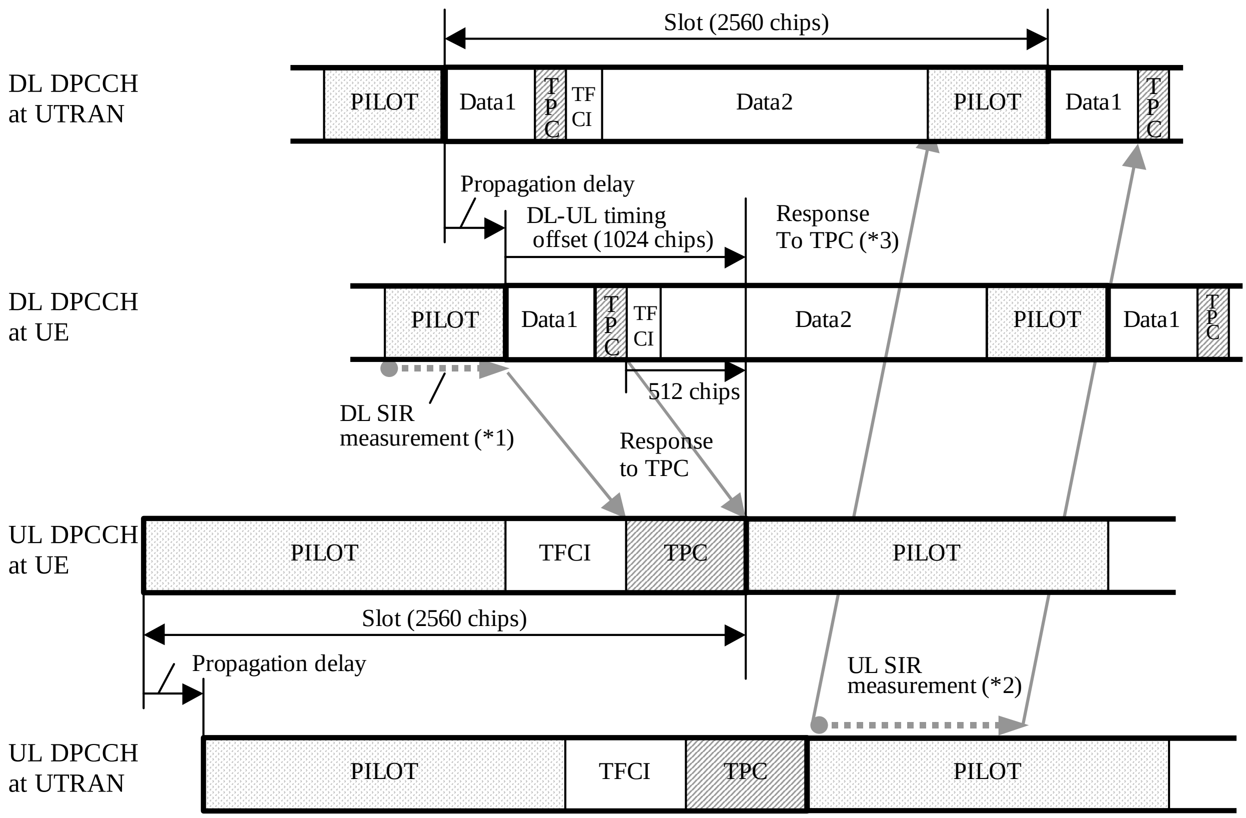
B.1 Downlink power control timing

The power control timing described in this annex should be seen as an example on how the control bits have to be placed in order to permit a short TPC delay.

In order to maximise the cell radius distance within which one-slot control delay is achieved, the frame timing of an uplink DPCH is delayed by 1024 chips from that of the corresponding downlink DPCH measured at the UE antenna.

Responding to a downlink TPC command, the UE shall change its uplink DPCH output power at the beginning of the first uplink pilot field after the TPC command reception. Responding to an uplink TPC command, the UTRAN access point shall change its DPCH output power at the beginning of the next downlink pilot field after the reception of the whole TPC command. Note that in soft handover, the TPC command is sent over one slot when DPC_MODE is 0 and over three slots when DPC_MODE is 1. Note also that the delay from the uplink TPC command reception to the power change timing is not specified for UTRAN. The UE shall decide and send TPC commands on the uplink based on the downlink SIR measurement. The TPC command field on the uplink starts, when measured at the UE antenna, 512 chips after the end of the downlink pilot field. The UTRAN access point shall decide and send TPC commands based on the uplink SIR measurement. However, the SIR measurement periods are not specified either for UE nor UTRAN.

Figure B.1 illustrates an example of transmitter power control timings.



1,2 The SIR measurement periods illustrated here are examples. Other ways of measurement are allowed to achieve accurate SIR estimation.

3 If there is not enough time for UTRAN to respond to the TPC, the action can be delayed until the next slot.

Figure B.1: Transmitter power control timing

B.2 Example of implementation in the UE

The downlink inner-loop power control adjusts the network transmit power in order to keep the received downlink SIR at a given SIR target, SIR_{target}. A higher layer outer loop adjusts SIR_{target} independently for each connection.

The UE should estimate the received downlink DPCCH/DPDCH power of the connection to be power controlled. Simultaneously, the UE should estimate the received interference and calculate the signal-to-interference ratio, SIR_{est}. SIR_{est} can be calculated as RSCP/ISCP, where RSCP refers to the received signal code power on one code and ISCP refers to the non-orthogonal interference signal code power of the received signal on one code. Note that due to the specific SIR target offsets described in [5] that can be applied during compressed frames, the spreading factor shall not be considered in the calculation of SIR_{est}.

The obtained SIR estimate SIR_{est} is then used by the UE to generate TPC commands according to the following rule: if $SIR_{est} > SIR_{target}$ then the TPC command to transmit is "0", requesting a transmit power decrease, while if $SIR_{est} < SIR_{target}$ then the TPC command to transmit is "1", requesting a transmit power increase.

When the UE is in soft handover and SSDT is not activated, the UE should estimate SIR_{est} from the downlink signals of all cells in the active set.

When SSDT is activated, the UE should estimate SIR_{est} from the downlink signals of the primary cell as described in 5.2.1.4.2. If the state of the cells (primary or non-primary) in the active set is changed and the UE sends the last portion of the coded ID in uplink slot j, the UE should change the basis for the estimation of SIR_{est} at the beginning of downlink slot $(j+1+T_{os})$ mod 15, where T_{os} is defined as a constant of 2 time slots.

B.3 UL power control when losing UL synchronisation

Each Node B operates the uplink power control independently of the other Node Bs that may be providing RLS to the same UE. In case of multiple RLS the UE derives the decision on power adjustment based on all the commands received according the rules specified in section 5.1.2. In this scenario, transmission of a down command by one or more of the involved Node Bs will likely result in the UE decreasing its transmit power.

Consequently, if and when, after successful initial RL synchronisation, the Node B loses UL synchronisation for a UE and if the current number of RLS configured for that UE is greater than one and if the Node B reverts to a TPC pattern in such situation (i.e. generates DL TPC commands independently of actual RL measurements), the Node B should not use TPC commands “0” in the TPC pattern.

Annex C (Informative): Cell search procedure

During the cell search, the UE searches for a cell and determines the downlink scrambling code and frame synchronisation of that cell. The cell search is typically carried out in three steps:

Step 1: Slot synchronisation

During the first step of the cell search procedure the UE uses the SCH's primary synchronisation code to acquire slot synchronisation to a cell. This is typically done with a single matched filter (or any similar device) matched to the primary synchronisation code which is common to all cells. The slot timing of the cell can be obtained by detecting peaks in the matched filter output.

Step 2: Frame synchronisation and code-group identification

During the second step of the cell search procedure, the UE uses the SCH's secondary synchronisation code to find frame synchronisation and identify the code group of the cell found in the first step. This is done by correlating the received signal with all possible secondary synchronisation code sequences, and identifying the maximum correlation value. Since the cyclic shifts of the sequences are unique the code group as well as the frame synchronisation is determined.

Step 3: Scrambling-code identification

During the third and last step of the cell search procedure, the UE determines the exact primary scrambling code used by the found cell. The primary scrambling code is typically identified through symbol-by-symbol correlation over the CPICH with all codes within the code group identified in the second step. After the primary scrambling code has been identified, the Primary CCPCH can be detected.And the system- and cell specific BCH information can be read.

If the UE has received information about which scrambling codes to search for, steps 2 and 3 above can be simplified.

Annex D (informative): Change history

Change history							
Date	TSG #	TSG Doc.	CR	Rev	Subject/Comment	Old	New
	RAN_05	RP-99531	-		Approved at TSG RAN #5 and placed under Change Control	-	3.0.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	003	2	Flexible timing of UTRAN response to uplink closed loop Tx diversity feedback commands	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	006	2	CPCH power control preamble length	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	007	-	Removal of open loop power control	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99687	008	-	Power offset of AICH and PICH	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	009	1	Update of Random Access Procedure	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	010	1	oft symbol combining for uplink power control	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99685	011	-	Clarification of closed loop transmit diversity figure in clause 8 and closed loop operation in compressed mode for mode 2 in subclause 8.3 of TS 25.214	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	012	-	Uplink power control maximum TX power	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	013	1	Setting of beta values for multi-code	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	014	-	Consolidation of CPCH Power Control Preamble Information	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	015	1	Consolidation of Power Control Information for DCH Initialisation	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	016	-	Uplink power control in compressed mode	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	018	1	Timing for initialisation procedures	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99687	021	-	20 ms RACH message length	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99684	023	1	Maximum Tx Power at uplink compressed Mode	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99687	024	2	Setting of power in uplink compressed mode	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99687	025	-	Cleanup of synchronisation procedures	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	026	2	Downlink power control	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99687	029	-	Out-of-synch handling	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99687	030	2	State update rule addition to SSDT specification	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99687	033	-	Uplink TX timing adjustment	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99687	036	-	Inclusion of idle periods for the IPDL LCS	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99686	041	-	Revision of power control timing text	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99687	042	1	Inclusion of adjustment loop in downlink power control	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	-	-	-		Change history was added by the editor	3.1.0	3.1.1
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	043	1	Optimum ID Codes for SSDT Power Control	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	044	-	Editorial clarification to subclause 5.1.2.2.2	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	047	1	Additional description of TX diversity for PDSCH	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	048	-	Power offset on S-CCPCH	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	050	2	Corrections to uplink power control	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	055	-	Correction of Adjustment loop description	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	056	1	Clarification of TPC command combining for Algorithm 1	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	057	-	Clarification of TPC command combining for Algorithm 2	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	059	2	CPCH:CD subslot-related additions to 6.2	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	061	1	CPCH: editorial changes and clarifications of 6.2	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	062	-	Editorial corrections	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	064	1	Editorial improvement of the IPDL section	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	065	1	PRACH power offset definition	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	066	1	Radio link synchronisation in UTRA/FDD	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	068	-	Definition for maximum and minimum DL power	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	069	4	Channel assignment and UE channel selection methods of CPCH	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	071	-	Channelization code allocation method for PCPCH message part	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	072	1	Limited power raise used -parameter in DL PC	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	080	-	Downlink power control	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000064	081	-	Editorial improvement on SSDT power control section	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000065	082	2	Emergency Stop of CPCH transmission and Start of Message Indicator	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000065	083	-	Clean up of USTS related specifications	3.1.1	3.2.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	084	-	Addition of CSICH power parameter	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	085	-	Correction to power control in compressed mode recovery period	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	086	1	Revisions to power control for CPCH	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	087	-	Corrections to uplink DCH power control sections	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	090	3	Level of specification of downlink power control	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	091	1	Clarification of TX diversity power setting	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	092	-	PICH undefined bits	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	095	1	DPDCH/DPCCH gain factors	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	096	3	Correction to RACH subchannel definition	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	097	1	The power setting of the CCC field of DL DPCCH for CPCH	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	098	4	Procedure for end of transmission indicator in CPCH	3.2.0	3.3.0

Change history							
Date	TSG #	TSG Doc.	CR	Rev	Subject/Comment	Old	New
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	099	-	Downlink inner-loop power control in compressed mode	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	100	-	Definition of vector transmission weight entity	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	101	1	Number of slots for DPCCH power control preamble	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	102	-	Clarification of UTRAN Tx diversity reponse timing description in 25.214	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	103	2	Corrections to transmit diversity section	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	104	1	Corrections to uplink power control in compressed mode	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	105	-	Clarification of downlink power control mode	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	106	-	Clarification of radio link set	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000268	107	1	Clarification of radio link synchronisation procedure	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000269	108	-	Correctly quantized gainfactors for uplink compressed mode	3.2.0	3.3.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	110	4	Downlink inner-loop power control in compressed mode	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	112	-	Adding reference for power offset variation text in TS 25.214	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	113	-	Combining TPC commands in soft handover	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	115	1	Corrections to power control	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	116	-	Corrections to 25.214	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	117	-	Clarification to downlink power control	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	118	3	Clarification of power control at maximum and minimum power	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	119	-	Clarification of SSDT text	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	120	-	Corrections to CL transmit diversity mode 1	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	121	1	Clarification of SSDT ID code bit transmission order	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	122	1	Clarification on RACH and CPCH subchannel definition	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	123	1	DPCH initialisation procedure	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	124	-	Clarification of closed loop mode TX diversity initialisation	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000342	127	2	Uplink power control in compressed mode	3.3.0	3.4.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	128	1	Clarification of downlink quality measurement in SSDT	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	129	-	Formula typography and reference corrections	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	130	1	Radio link establishment and sync status reporting	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	133	-	Correction of RACH/CPCH physical random access procedure	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	134	-	Correction of uplink power control algorithm 2	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	135	1	TPC command generation on downlink during RLS initialisation	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	136	1	Clarification of RACH behaviour at maximum and minimum power	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	137	-	Clarifications on the description of the radio link establishment procedure (when no radio link exists)	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	138	1	Corrections on power control preambles	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	139	1	Clarification of RACH procedure	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	140	-	Uplink power control in compressed mode	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000540	141	1	Revision of the abbreviation list	3.4.0	3.5.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	-	-	-	Approved as Release 4 specification (v4.0.0) at TSG RAN #11	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010060	142	1	Uplink power control in compressed mode	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010060	144	-	Removal of the power balancing algorithm from TS 25.214	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010254	145	2	Clarification of Nid parameter – when SSDT and uplink compressed mode are in operation	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010060	146	-	Clarification of closed loop transmit diversity mode 1 and mode 2 operation during compressed mode	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010060	148	1	Clarification of UE SIR estimation	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010060	150	1	Clarification of the order of SSDT signalling in 2 bit FBI	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010244	154	2	Uplink power control preamble	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010060	155	-	Correction of limited power raise	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010060	156	-	Clarification of initialisation procedure	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010060	158	-	Definition of power control step size for algorithm 2	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010060	161	1	Correction of the UE behaviour in SSDT mode	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010060	163	-	Correction on downlink synchronisation primitives	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010074	149	1	DSCH Power Control Improvement in soft handover	3.5.0	4.0.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010334	166	1	Limited power raise: aligning of terminology with TS25.433	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010334	167	1	Correction of IPDL burst parameters	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010334	169	1	Correction of synchronisation primitives	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010334	177	1	Clarification on TPC command generation on downlink during RL initialisation	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010482	181	4	Clarification of synchronisation procedures	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010334	183	-	Clarification of initialisation of closed loop mode 1 and 2 during compressed mode	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010334	186	-	DL maximum power level in compressed mode	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010341	164	1	Clarification on the usage of SSDT signaling in uplink	4.0.0	4.1.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010520	192	-	Corrections and Clarifications for calculation of idle period position in subclause 8.3 in 25.214	4.1.0	4.2.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010520	194	1	Minor modifications to the CPCH access procedure	4.1.0	4.2.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010520	197	-	Downlink power control in compressed mode	4.1.0	4.2.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010520	199	1	Improvements of closed loop TX diversity description	4.1.0	4.2.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010520	201	1	Correction to Random access procedure (Primitive from MAC)	4.1.0	4.2.0

Change history							
Date	TSG #	TSG Doc.	CR	Rev	Subject/Comment	Old	New
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010677	205	1	Proposed CR to TS25.214: Clarification of the SSDT behaviour with beam forming	4.1.0	4.2.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010527	195	1	Enhanced PDSCH power control clarification	4.1.0	4.2.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010739	207	1	Power control in compressed mode when DPC_MODE=1	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010739	209	-	Clarification of closed loop mode 1 and 2 Tx diversity operation during compressed mode	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010739	211	-	Downlink phase reference reconfiguration	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010739	219	1	Downlink power control for channels supporting CPCH	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010739	223	-	Removal of slow power control from TS 25.214	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010775	216	-	Uplink TPC command processing in SHO with SSDT	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010744	217	2	DSCH power control clarification	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010933	229	-	Restriction to SSDT and closed loop mode transmit diversity combination	4.2.0	4.3.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020047	227	-	Clarification on DPCCH dedicated pilot bits with closed loop mode1	4.3.0	4.4.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020261	231	3	Qth threshold parameter in SSDT	4.3.0	4.4.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020047	240	1	TPC procedure in UE when SSDT is activated	4.3.0	4.4.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020053	236	1	Clarification of closed loop transmit diversity during soft handover	4.3.0	4.4.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020054	250	1	Description of SSDT operation for TFCI power control in hard split mode	4.3.0	5.0.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020058	237	2	Introduction of HSDPA feature to TS25.214	4.3.0	5.0.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020058	251	-	Introduction of power control aspects for HSDPA feature in TS25.214	4.3.0	5.0.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	255	2	Correction on the operation of HSDPA during compressed mode	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	259	1	Clarification of UE transmission timing adjustment with HS-DPCCH	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	260	4	Definition of CQI reporting	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	266	-	Correction to the setting of DPCCH/HS-DPCCH power difference	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020316	267	-	Inclusion of CQI table	5.0.0	5.1.0
07/06/02	RAN_16	RP-020318	265	1	Definition of Qth threshold parameter in SSDT	5.0.0	5.1.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020584	263	-	Clarification of total HS-SCCH/HS-PDSCH power	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020571	272	-	Reversal of unwanted corrections resulting from CR 25.211-122 & CR 25.214-226	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020584	273	2	Clarification of total HS-PDSCH power in CQI reporting procedure	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020584	274	1	Closed loop transmit diversity mode 2 with antenna verification	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020589	279	-	Correction of maximum power adjustment in case of compressed mode	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020574	282	1	Enhanced DSCH power control parameter name change	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020584	287	2	Correction of CQI definition	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020587	288	-	Inclusion of closed loop transmit diversity for HSDPA	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020588	289	-	Correction of timing of CQI reporting	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020529	294	-	Correction of reference linked to approval of CR 25.133-471	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020584	296	-	The clarification of CQI feedback parameter k value	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020584	298	-	Clarification of CQI definition and reference period	5.1.0	5.2.0
17/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020584	286	1	Numbering corrections	5.1.0	5.2.0
20/12/02	RAN_18	RP-020847	300	1	Corrections and clarifications to FDD CQI description	5.2.0	5.3.0
20/12/02	RAN_18	RP-020847	301	1	Criterion to determine primary cell for DSCH power control improvement	5.2.0	5.3.0
20/12/02	RAN_18	RP-020851	304	2	Introduction of Transport Block Size signaling procedure reference.	5.2.0	5.3.0
20/12/02	RAN_18	RP-020841	307	-	Clarification of closed loop timing adjustment mode	5.2.0	5.3.0
26/03/03	RAN_19	RP-030136	299	5	CQI reporting with TxD	5.3.0	5.4.0
26/03/03	RAN_19	RP-030136	313	1	On closed loop transmit diversity mode 1 verification algorithm	5.3.0	5.4.0
26/03/03	RAN_19	RP-030136	315	2	Clarification of SSDT and HSDPA	5.3.0	5.4.0
26/03/03	RAN_19	RP-030132	318	-	Correction on verification algorithm in Annex 1	5.3.0	5.4.0
23'06/03	RAN_20	RP-030273	314	1	Correction of TPC command combining in SHO	5.4.0	5.5.0
23'06/03	RAN_20	RP-030273	319	-	Correction for HS-DPCCH gain factor in compressed frame	5.4.0	5.5.0
23'06/03	RAN_20	RP-030273	320	1	Clarification of HS-SCCH reception in case of minimum interTTI interval is not 1	5.4.0	5.5.0
23'06/03	RAN_20	RP-030273	321	-	Correction of description of CQI transmission timing calculation	5.4.0	5.5.0
23'06/03	RAN_20	RP-030273	322	1	Clarification of the reference power for HS-DPCCH	5.4.0	5.5.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030458	325	-	Correction of CQI definition table	5.5.0	5.6.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030462	326	-	Removal of the combination of TxAA Mode 1 with HS-SCCH	5.5.0	5.6.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030458	328	2	Clarification of power scaling with HS-DPCCH	5.5.0	5.6.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030458	329	3	Correction of CQI reporting in DL compressed mode	5.5.0	5.6.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030458	330	1	Clarification of HS-SCCH reception	5.5.0	5.6.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030458	333	1	Clarification on CQI repetition behaviour	5.5.0	5.6.0
21/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030547	335	3	TPC pattern during loss of RL synchronisation	5.5.0	5.6.0
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030649	335	1	Clarification of HS-SCCH reception	5.6.0	5.7.0
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030649	336	1	Clarification of CQI definition	5.6.0	5.7.0
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030649	337	1	Clarification of the HS-SCCH detection	5.6.0	5.7.0

Change history							
Date	TSG #	TSG Doc.	CR	Rev	Subject/Comment	Old	New
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030661	338	-	Remove inconsistency among specifications on signalling support for power control during loss of RL synchronisation	5.6.0	5.7.0
06/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030712	339	-	Alignment of "Soft channel bits" terminology with 25.306	5.6.0	5.7.0
13/01/04	RAN_22	-	-	-	Created for M.1457 update	5.7.0	6.0.0
23/03/04	RAN_23	RP-040086	341	-	Beta values for HS-DPCCH in compressed mode	6.0.0	6.1.0
23/03/04	RAN_23	RP-040086	346	1	ACK/NACK repetition factor	6.0.0	6.1.0
09/06/04	RAN_24	RP-040257	350	3	Clarification of UE procedure in case of HHO failure	6.1.0	6.2.0

3GPP TSG-RAN WG1 Meeting #39
Yokohama, Japan, November 15-19, 2004

Tdoc⌘ R1-041514

CR-Form-v7.1

CHANGE REQUEST

⌘ 25.215	CR 149	⌘ rev 1	⌘	Current version: 6.0.0	⌘

*For **HELP** on using this form, see bottom of this page or look at the pop-up text over the ⌘ symbols.*

Proposed change affects:	UICC apps⌘ [ ]	ME [X]	Radio Access Network [X]	Core Network [ ]

Title:	⌘	Introduction of E-DCH		
Source:	⌘	RAN WG1		
Work item code:	⌘	EDCH-Phys	***Date:*** ⌘	18/11/2004
Category:	⌘	**B**	***Release:*** ⌘	Rel-6

Use one of the following categories:
F *(correction)*
A *(corresponds to a correction in an earlier release)*
B *(addition of feature),*
C *(functional modification of feature)*
D *(editorial modification)*
Detailed explanations of the above categories can be found in 3GPP TR 21.900.

Use one of the following releases:
Ph2 (GSM Phase 2)
R96 (Release 1996)
R97 (Release 1997)
R98 (Release 1998)
R99 (Release 1999)
Rel-4 (Release 4)
Rel-5 (Release 5)
Rel-6 (Release 6)
Rel-7 (Release 7)

Reason for change:	⌘	Introduction of E-DCH in Rel-6.
Summary of change:	⌘	Introduce E-DCH
Consequences if not approved:	⌘	E-DCH will not be completely specified in Rel-6.

Clauses affected:	⌘					
		Y	**N**			
Other specs affected:	⌘	**X**		Other core specifications	⌘	25.201, 25.211, 25.212, 25.213, 25.214
				Test specifications		
				O&M Specifications		
Other comments:	⌘					

How to create CRs using this form:

Comprehensive information and tips about how to create CRs can be found at http://www.3gpp.org/specs/CR.htm. Below is a brief summary:

1) Fill out the above form. The symbols above marked ⌘ contain pop-up help information about the field that they are closest to.

2) Obtain the latest version for the release of the specification to which the change is proposed. Use the MS Word "revision marks" feature (also known as "track changes") when making the changes. All 3GPP specifications can be downloaded from the 3GPP server under ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/specs/ For the latest version, look for the directory name with the latest date e.g. 2001-03 contains the specifications resulting from the March 2001 TSG meetings.

3) With "track changes" disabled, paste the entire CR form (use CTRL-A to select it) into the specification just in front of the clause containing the first piece of changed text.   Delete those parts of the specification which are not relevant to the change request.

3GPP TS 25.215 V6.0.0 (2003-12)

Technical Specification

**3rd Generation Partnership Project;
Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network;
Physical layer - Measurements (FDD)
(Release 6)**

Keywords

UMTS, radio, layer 1

3GPP

Postal address

3GPP support office address

650 Route des Lucioles - Sophia Antipolis
Valbonne - FRANCE
Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Internet

http://www.3gpp.org

Contents

Foreword

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of the present document, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version x.y.z

where:

x the first digit:

1 presented to TSG for information;

2 presented to TSG for approval;

3 or greater indicates TSG approved document under change control.

y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.

z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the document.

1 Scope

The present document contains the description and definition of the measurements for FDD done at the UE and network in order to support operation in idle mode and connected mode.

2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies. In the case of a reference to a 3GPP document (including a GSM document), a non-specific reference implicitly refers to the latest version of that document *in the same Release as the present document*.

[1] 3GPP TS 25.211: "Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (FDD)".

[2] 3GPP TS 25.212: "Multiplexing and channel coding (FDD)".

[3] 3GPP TS 25.213: "Spreading and modulation (FDD)".

[4] 3GPP TS 25.214: "Physical layer procedures (FDD)".

[5] 3GPP TS 25.215: "Physical layer - Measurements (FDD)".

[6] 3GPP TS 25.221: "Physical channels and mapping of transport channels onto physical channels (TDD)".

[7] 3GPP TS 25.222: "Multiplexing and channel coding (TDD)".

[8] 3GPP TS 25.223: "Spreading and modulation (TDD)".

[9] 3GPP TS 25.224: "Physical layer procedures (TDD)".

[10] 3GPP TS 25.301: "Radio Interface Protocol Architecture".

[11] 3GPP TS 25.302: "Services provided by the Physical layer".

[12] 3GPP TS 25.303: "UE functions and interlayer procedures in connected mode".

[13] 3GPP TS 25.304: "UE procedures in idle mode".

[14] 3GPP TS 25.331: "RRC Protocol Specification".

[15] 3GPP TR 25.922: "Radio Resource Management Strategies".

[16] 3GPP TR 25.923: "Report on Location Services (LCS)".

[17] 3GPP TR 25.401: "UTRAN Overall Description".

[18] 3GPP TS 25.101: "UE Radio transmission and Reception (FDD)".

[19] 3GPP TS 25.104: "UTRA (BS) FDD; Radio transmission and Reception".

[20] 3GPP TS 25.133: " Requirements for Support of Radio Resource Management (FDD)"

[21] 3GPP TS 25.225: " Physical layer – Measurements (TDD)".

3 Definitions and Abbreviations

3.1 Definitions

For the purposes of the present document, the following terms and definitions apply.

cell portion: A geographical part of a cell for which a Node B measurement can be reported to the RNC. A cell portion is semi-static, and identical for both the UL and the DL. Within a cell, a cell portion is uniquely identified by a cell portion ID.

Note 1: a cell portion is not necessarily analogous to actual beams used for transmission and/or reception of e.g. a DPCH at the Node B.
Note 2: RNC may associate physical channels with cell portions.

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the following abbreviations apply:

BER	Bit Error Rate
BLER	Block Error Rate
Ec/No	Received energy per chip divided by the power density in the band
ISCP	Interference Signal Code Power
RL	Radio Link
RSCP	Received Signal Code Power
RSSI	Received Signal Strength Indicator
SIR	Signal to Interference Ratio

4 Control of UE/UTRAN measurements

In this chapter the general measurement control concept of the higher layers is briefly described to provide an understanding on how L1 measurements are initiated and controlled by higher layers.

L1 provides with the measurement specifications a toolbox of measurement abilities for the UE and the UTRAN. These measurements can be differentiated in different reported measurement types: intra-frequency, inter-frequency, inter-system, traffic volume, quality and UE internal measurements (see [14]).

In the L1 measurement specifications the measurements, see chapter 5, are distinguished between measurements in the UE (the messages will be described in the RRC Protocol) and measurements in the UTRAN (the messages will be described in the NBAP and the Frame Protocol).

To initiate a specific measurement the UTRAN transmits a 'measurement control message' to the UE including a measurement ID and type, a command (setup, modify, release), the measurement objects and quantity, the reporting quantities, criteria (periodical/event-triggered) and mode (acknowledged/unacknowledged), see [14].

When the reporting criteria is fulfilled the UE shall answer with a 'measurement report message' to the UTRAN including the measurement ID and the results.

In idle mode the measurement control message is broadcast in a System Information.

Intra-frequency reporting events, traffic volume reporting events and UE internal measurement reporting events described in [14] define events which trigger the UE to send a report to the UTRAN. This defines a toolbox from which the UTRAN can choose the needed reporting events.

5 Measurement abilities for UTRA FDD

In this chapter the physical layer measurements reported to higher layers are defined. The GSM measurements are required only from the GSM capable terminals. The TDD measurements are required only from the terminals that are capable to operate in TDD mode.

5.1 UE measurement abilities

The structure of the table defining a UE measurement quantity is shown below.

Column field	Comment
Definition	Contains the definition of the measurement.
Applicable for	States in which RRC state according to [14] a measurement shall be possible to perform. For RRC connected mode states information is also given on the possibility to perform the measurement on intra-frequency and/or inter-frequency. The following terms are used in the tables: Idle = Shall be possible to perform in idle mode; URA_PCH = Shall be possible to perform in URA_PCH; CELL_PCH = Shall be possible to perform in CELL_PCH; CELL_FACH = Shall be possible to perform in CELL_FACH; CELL_DCH = Shall be possible to perform in CELL_DCH; For all RRC connected mode states i.e. URA_PCH, CELL_PCH, CELL_FACH and CELL_DCH Intra appended to the RRC state = Shall be possible to perform in the corresponding RRC state on an intra-frequency cell; Inter appended to the RRC state = Shall be possible to perform in the corresponding RRC state on an inter-frequency cell. Inter-RAT appended to the RRC state = Shall be possible to perform in the corresponding RRC state on an inter-RAT cell.

The term "antenna connector of the UE" used in this sub-clause to define the reference point for the UE measurements is defined in [18]. Performance and reporting requirements for the UE measurements are defined in [20].

5.1.1 CPICH RSCP

Definition	Received Signal Code Power, the received power on one code measured on the Primary CPICH. The reference point for the RSCP shall be the antenna connector of the UE. If Tx diversity is applied on the Primary CPICH the received code power from each antenna shall be separately measured and summed together in [W] to a total received code power on the Primary CPICH.
Applicable for	Idle, URA_PCH intra, URA_PCH inter, CELL_PCH intra, CELL_PCH inter, CELL_FACH intra, CELL_FACH inter, CELL_DCH intra, CELL_DCH inter

5.1.2 PCCPCH RSCP

Definition	Received Signal Code Power, the received power on one code measured on the PCCPCH from a TDD cell. The reference point for the RSCP shall be the antenna connector of the UE. See [21] for further details on this measurement.
Applicable for	Idle, URA_PCH inter, CELL_PCH inter, CELL_FACH inter, CELL_DCH inter

5.1.3 UTRA carrier RSSI

Definition	The received wide band power, including thermal noise and noise generated in the receiver, within the bandwidth defined by the receiver pulse shaping filter. The reference point for the measurement shall be the antenna connector of the UE.
Applicable for	CELL_DCH intra, CELL_DCH inter

5.1.4 GSM carrier RSSI

Definition	Received Signal Strength Indicator, the wide-band received power within the relevant channel bandwidth. Measurement shall be performed on a GSM BCCH carrier. The reference point for the RSSI shall be the antenna connector of the UE.
Applicable for	Idle, URA_PCH inter-RAT CELL_PCH inter-RAT CELL_FACH inter-RAT CELL_DCH inter-RAT

5.1.5 CPICH Ec/No

Definition	The received energy per chip divided by the power density in the band. The CPICH Ec/No is identical to CPICH RSCP/UTRA Carrier RSSI. Measurement shall be performed on the Primary CPICH. The reference point for the CPICH Ec/No shall be the antenna connector of the UE. If Tx diversity is applied on the Primary CPICH the received energy per chip (Ec) from each antenna shall be separately measured and summed together in [Ws] to a total received chip energy per chip on the Primary CPICH, before calculating the Ec/No.
Applicable for	Idle, URA_PCH intra, URA_PCH inter, CELL_PCH intra, CELL_PCH inter, CELL_FACH intra, CELL_FACH inter, CELL_DCH intra, CELL_DCH inter

5.1.6 Transport channel BLER

Definition	Estimation of the transport channel block error rate (BLER). The BLER estimation shall be based on evaluating the CRC of each transport block associated with the measured transport channel after RL combination. The BLER shall be computed over the measurement period as the ratio between the number of received transport blocks resulting in a CRC error and the number of received transport blocks. When either TFCI or guided detection is used, the measurement “Transport channel BLER” may only be requested for a transport channel when the associated CRC size is non zero and at least one transport format in the associated transport format set includes at least one transport block. When neither TFCI nor guided detection is used, the measurement “Transport channel BLER” may only be requested for a transport channel when the associated CRC size is non zero and all transport formats in the associated transport format set include at least one transport block. The measurement “Transport channel BLER” does not apply to transport channels mapped on a P-CCPCH and a S-CCPCH. The UE shall be able to perform the measurement “Transport channel BLER” on any transport channel configured such that the measurement “Transport channel BLER” can be requested as defined in this section.
Applicable for	CELL_DCH intra

5.1.7 UE transmitted power

Definition	The total UE transmitted power on one carrier. The reference point for the UE transmitted power shall be the antenna connector of the UE.
Applicable for	CCELL_FACH intra, CELL_DCH intra

5.1.8 SFN-CFN observed time difference

Definition	The SFN-CFN observed time difference to cell is defined as: OFF×38400+ T_m, where: T_m= (T_{UETx}-T_0) - T_{RxSFN}, given in chip units with the range [0, 1, …, 38399] chips T_{UETx} is the time when the UE transmits an uplink DPCCH~~/DPDCH~~ frame. T_0 is defined in [1]. T_{RxSFN} is the time at the beginning of the neighbouring P-CCPCH frame received most recent in time before the time instant T_{UETx}-T_0in the UE. If the beginning of the neighbouring P-CCPCH frame is received exactly at T_{UETx}-T_0 then T_{RxSFN}=T_{UETx}-T_0 (which leads to T_m=0). and OFF=(SFN-CFN_{Tx}) mod 256, given in number of frames with the range [0, 1, …, 255] frames CFN_{Tx} is the connection frame number for the UE transmission of an uplink DPCCH~~/DPDCH~~ frame at the time T_{UETx}. SFN is the system frame number for the neighbouring P-CCPCH frame received in the UE at the time T_{RxSFN}. The reference point for the SFN-CFN observed time difference shall be the antenna connector of the UE. In case the inter-frequency measurement is done with compressed mode, the UE is not required to read the cell SFN of the target inter-frequency neighbour cell and the value for the parameter OFF is always reported to be 0. In case that the SFN measurement indicator indicates that the UE does not need to read cell SFN of the target neighbour cell, the value of the parameter OFF is always be set to 0.
Applicable for	CELL_DCH intra, CELL_DCH inter

5.1.9 SFN-SFN observed time difference

Definition	**Type 1:** The SFN-SFN observed time difference to cell is defined as: OFF×38400+ T_m, where: T_m= T_{RxSFNj} - T_{RxSFNi}, given in chip units with the range [0, 1, …, 38399] chips T_{RxSFNj} is the time at the beginning of a received neighbouring P-CCPCH frame from cell j. T_{RxSFNi} is time at the beginning of the neighbouring P-CCPCH frame from cell i received most recent in time before the time instant T_{RxSFNj} in the UE. If the next neighbouring P-CCPCH frame is received exactly at T_{RxSFNj} then T_{RxSFNj}= T_{RxSFNi} (which leads to T_m=0). and OFF=(SFN_i- SFN_j) mod 256, given in number of frames with the range [0, 1, …, 255] frames SFN_j is the system frame number for downlink P-CCPCH frame from cell j in the UE at the time T_{RxSFNj}. SFN_i is the system frame number for the P-CCPCH frame from cell i received in the UE at the time T_{RxSFNi}. The reference point for the SFN-SFN observed time difference type 1 shall be the antenna connector of the UE. **Type 2:** The relative timing difference between cell j and cell i, defined as $T_{CPICHRxj}$ - $T_{CPICHRxi}$, where: $T_{CPICHRxj}$ is the time when the UE receives one Primary CPICH slot from cell j $T_{CPICHRxi}$ is the time when the UE receives the Primary CPICH slot from cell i that is closest in time to the Primary CPICH slot received from cell j. The reference point for the SFN-SFN observed time difference type 2 shall be the antenna connector of the UE.
Applicable for	**Type 1:** Idle, URA_PCH intra, CELL_PCH intra, CELL_FACH intra **Type 2:** URA_PCH intra, URA_PCH inter, CELL_PCH intra, CELL_PCH inter, CELL_FACH intra, CELL_FACH inter CELL_DCH intra, CELL_DCH inter

5.1.10 UE Rx-Tx time difference

Definition	The difference in time between the UE uplink DPCCH/~~DPDCH~~ frame transmission and the first detected path (in time), of the downlink DPCH frame from the measured radio link. Type 1 and Type 2 are defined. For Type 1, the reference Rx path shall be the first detected path (in time) amongst the paths (from the measured radio link) used in the demodulation process. For Type 2, the reference Rx path shall be the first detected path (in time) amongst all paths (from the measured radio link) detected by the UE. The reference path used for the measurement may therefore be different for Type 1 and Type 2. The reference point for the UE Rx-Tx time difference shall be the antenna connector of the UE. Measurement shall be made for each cell included in the active set.
Applicable for	CELL_DCH intra

5.1.11 Observed time difference to GSM cell

Definition	The Observed time difference to GSM cell is defined as: T_{RxGSMj} - T_{RxSFNi}, where: T_{RxSFNi} is the time at the beginning of the P-CCPCH frame with SFN=0 from cell i. Cell i is an intra-frequency cell. T_{RxGSMj} is the time at the beginning of the GSM BCCH 51-multiframe from GSM frequency j received closest in time after the time T_{RxSFNi}. If the next GSM multiframe is received exactly at T_{RxSFNi} then T_{RxGSMj} =T_{RxSFNi} (which leads to T_{RxGSMj} - T_{RxSFNi} = 0). The reference point for the Observed time difference to GSM cell shall be the antenna connector of the UE. The beginning of the GSM BCCH 51-multiframe is defined as the beginning of the first tail bit of the frequency correction burst in the first TDMA-frame of the GSM BCCH 51-multiframe, i.e. the TDMA-frame following the IDLE-frame. The reported time difference is calculated from the actual measurement in the UE. The actual measurement shall be based on: $T_{MeasGSM,j}$: The start of the first tail bit of the most recently received GSM SCH on frequency j $T_{MeasSFN,i}$: The start of the last P-CCPCH frame received from cell i before receiving the GSM SCH on frequency j For calculating the reported time difference, the frame lengths are always assumed to be 10 ms for UTRA and (60/13) ms for GSM.
Applicable for	Idle, URA_PCH inter-RAT, CELL_PCH inter-RAT, CELL_DCH inter-RAT

5.1.12 UE GPS Timing of Cell Frames for UE positioning

Definition	The timing between cell j and GPS Time Of Week. $T_{UE-GPSj}$ is defined as the time of occurrence of a specified UTRAN event according to GPS time. The specified UTRAN event is the beginning of a particular frame (identified through its SFN) in the first detected path (in time) of the cell j CPICH, where cell j is a cell chosen by the UE. The reference point for $T_{UE-GPSj}$ shall be the antenna connector of the UE.
Applicable for	CELL_FACH intra, CELL_DCH intra

5.1.13 UE GPS code phase

Definition	The whole and fractional phase of the spreading code of the i^{th} GPS satellite signal. The reference point for the GPS code phase shall be the antenna connector of the UE.
Applicable for	Void (this measurement is not related to UTRAN/GSM signals; its applicability is therefore independent of the UE RRC state)

5.2 UTRAN measurement abilities

The structure of the table defining a UTRAN measurement quantity is shown below.

Column field	Comment
Definition	Contains the definition of the measurement.

The term "antenna connector" used in this sub-clause to define the reference point for the UTRAN measurements refers to the "BS antenna connector" test port A and test port B as described in [19]. The term "antenna connector" refers to Rx or Tx antenna connector as described in the respective measurement definitions.

5.2.1 Received total wide band power

Definition	The received wide band power, including noise generated in the receiver, within the bandwidth defined by the receiver pulse shaping filter. The reference point for the measurement shall be the Rx antenna connector. In case of receiver diversity the reported value shall be linear average of the power in the diversity branches. When cell portions are defined in the cell, the total received wideband power shall be measured for each cell portion.

5.2.2 SIR

Definition	Type 1: Signal to Interference Ratio, is defined as: (RSCP/ISCP)×SF. The measurement shall be performed on the DPCCH of a Radio Link Set. In compressed mode the SIR shall not be measured in the transmission gap. The reference point for the SIR measurements shall be the Rx antenna connector. If the radio link set contains more than one radio link, the reported value shall be the linear summation of the SIR from each radio link of the radio link set. If Rx diversity is used in the Node B for a cell, the SIR for a radio link shall be the linear summation of the SIR from each Rx antenna for that radio link. When cell portions are defined in the cell, the SIR measurement shall be possible in each cell portion. where: RSCP = Received Signal Code Power, unbiased measurement of the received power on one code. ISCP = Interference Signal Code Power, the interference on the received signal. SF=The spreading factor used on the DPCCH. Type 2: Signal to Interference Ratio, is defined as: (RSCP/ISCP)×SF. The measurement shall be performed on the PRACH control part. The reference point for the SIR measurements shall be the Rx antenna connector. When cell portions are defined in the cell, the SIR measurement shall be possible in each cell portion. where: RSCP = Received Signal Code Power, unbiased measurement of the received power on the code. ISCP = Interference Signal Code Power, the interference on the received signal. SF=The spreading factor used on the control part of the PRACH.

5.2.3 SIR_{error}

Definition	$SIR_{error} = SIR - SIR_{target\_ave}$, where: SIR = the SIR measured by UTRAN, defined in section 5.2, given in dB. SIR_{target_ave} = the SIR_{target} averaged over the same time period as the SIR used in the SIR_{error} calculation. In compressed mode $SIR_{target}=SIR_{cm\_target}$ shall be used when calculating SIR_{target_ave}. In compressed mode the SIR_{target_ave} shall not be calculated over the transmission gap. The averaging of SIR_{target} shall be made in a linear scale and SIR_{target_ave} shall be given in dB.

5.2.4 Transmitted carrier power

Definition	Transmitted carrier power, is the ratio between the total transmitted power on one DL carrier from one UTRAN access point, and the maximum transmission power possible to use on that DL carrier at this moment of time. Total transmission power is the mean power [W] on one carrier from one UTRAN access point. Maximum transmission power is the mean power [W] on one carrier from one UTRAN access point when transmitting at the configured maximum power for the cell. Measurement shall be possible on any carrier transmitted from the UTRAN access point. The reference point for the transmitted carrier power measurement shall be the Tx antenna connector. In case of Tx diversity the transmitted carrier power is the ratio between the sum of the total transmitted powers of all branches and the maximum transmission power. When cell portions are defined in the cell, the transmitted carrier power for each cell portion shall be measured and reported to higher layers.

5.2.5 Transmitted code power

Definition	Transmitted code power, is the transmitted power on one channelisation code on one given scrambling code on one given carrier. Measurement shall be possible on the DPCCH-field of any dedicated radio link transmitted from the UTRAN access point and shall reflect the power on the pilot bits of the DPCCH-field. When measuring the transmitted code power in compressed mode all slots shall be included in the measurement, e.g. also the slots in the transmission gap shall be included in the measurement. The reference point for the transmitted code power measurement shall be the Tx antenna connector. In case of Tx diversity the transmitted code power for each branch shall be measured and summed together in [W].

5.2.6 Transport channel BER

Definition	The transport channel BER is an estimation of the average bit error rate (BER) of the DPDCH data of a Radio Link Set. The transport channel (TrCH) BER is measured from the data considering only non-punctured bits at the input of the channel decoder in Node B. It shall be possible to report an estimate of the transport channel BER for a TrCH after the end of each TTI of the TrCH. The reported TrCH BER shall be an estimate of the BER during the latest TTI for that TrCH.

5.2.7 Physical channel BER

Definition	The Physical channel BER is an estimation of the average bit error rate (BER) on the DPCCH of a Radio Link Set. An estimate of the Physical channel BER shall be possible to be reported after the end of each TTI of any of the transferred TrCHs. The reported physical channel BER shall be an estimate of the BER averaged over the latest TTI of the respective TrCH.

5.2.8 Round trip time

Definition	Round trip time (RTT), is defined as RTT = $T_{RX} – T_{TX}$, where T_{TX} = The time of transmission of the beginning of a downlink DPCH frame to a UE. The reference point for T_{TX} shall be the Tx antenna connector. T_{RX} = The time of reception of the beginning (the first detected path, in time) of the corresponding uplink DPCCH~~/DPDCH~~ frame from the UE. The reference point for T_{RX} shall be the Rx antenna connector. Measurement shall be possible on DPCH for each RL transmitted from an UTRAN access point and ~~DPDCH/~~DPCCH for each RL received in the same UTRAN access point.

5.2.9 UTRAN GPS Timing of Cell Frames for UE positioning

Definition	$T_{UTRAN-GPS}$ is defined as the time of the occurrence of a specified UTRAN event according to GPS Time Of Week. The specified UTRAN event is the beginning of the transmission of a particular frame in the cell. The reference point for $T_{UTRAN-GPS}$ shall be the Tx antenna connector.

5.2.10 PRACH/PCPCH Propagation delay

Definition	Propagation delay is defined as one-way propagation delay as measured during either PRACH or PCPCH access: PRACH : Propagation delay = (T_{RX} – T_{TX} – 2560)/2, where: T_{TX} = The transmission time of AICH access slot (n-2-AICH transmission timing), where 0≤(n-2-AICH Transmission Timing)≤14 and AICH_Transmission_Timing can have values 0 or 1. The reference point for T_{TX} shall be the Tx antenna connector. T_{RX} = The time of reception of the beginning (the first detected path, in time) of the PRACH message from the UE at PRACH access slot n. The reference point for T_{RX} shall be the Rx antenna connector. PCPCH: Propagation delay = (T_{RX} – T_{TX} – ($L_{pc-preamble}$ +1)*2560– (k-1)*38400)/2, where T_{TX} = The transmission time of CD-ICH at access slot (n-2-T_{cpch}), where 0≤(n-2-T_{cpch})≤14 and T_{cpch} can have values 0 or 1. The reference point for T_{TX} shall be the Tx antenna connector. T_{RX} = The time of reception of the first chip (the first detected path, in time) of the kth frame of the PCPCH message from the UE, where k ∈{1, 2,…, N_Max_frames}. The reference point for T_{RX} shall be the Rx antenna connector. N_max_frames is a higher layer parameter and defines the maximum length of the PCPCH message. The PCPCH message begins at uplink access slot (n+$L_{pc-preamble}$/2), where 0≤(n + $L_{pc-preamble}$ /2)≤14 and where $L_{pc-preamble}$ can have values 0 or 8.

5.2.11 Acknowledged PRACH preambles

Definition	The Acknowledged PRACH preambles measurement is defined as the total number of acknowledged PRACH preambles per access frame per PRACH. This is equivalent to the number of positive acquisition indicators transmitted per access frame per AICH.

5.2.12 Detected PCPCH access preambles

Definition	The detected PCPCH access preambles measurement is defined as the total number of detected access preambles per access frame on the PCPCHs belonging to a CPCH set.

5.2.13 Acknowledged PCPCH access preambles

Definition	The Acknowledged PCPCH access preambles measurement is defined as the total number of acknowledged PCPCH access preambles per access frame on the PCPCHs belonging to a SF. This is equivalent to the number of positive acquisition indicators transmitted for a SF per access frame per AP-AICH.

5.2.14 SFN-SFN observed time difference

Definition	The relative timing difference between cell j and cell i, defined as $T_{CPICHRxj}$ - $T_{CPICHRxi}$, where: $T_{CPICHRxj}$ is the time when the LMU receives the beginning of one Primary CPICH frame from cell j and $T_{CPICHRxi}$ is the time when the LMU receives the beginning of the Primary CPICH frame from cell i that is closest in time to the beginning of Primary CPICH frame received from cell j. The reference point for the measurements shall be the Rx antenna connector.

5.2.15 Transmitted carrier power of all codes not used for HS-PDSCH or HS-SCCH transmission

Definition	Transmitted carrier power of all codes not used for HS-PDSCH or HS-SCCH transmission is the ratio between the total transmitted power of all codes not used for HS-PDSCH or HS-SCCH transmission on one DL carrier from one UTRAN access point, and the maximum transmission power possible to use on that DL carrier at this moment of time. Total transmission power of all codes not used for HS-PDSCH or HS-SCCH transmission is the mean power [W] of all codes not used for HS-PDSCH or HS-SCCH transmission on one carrier from one UTRAN access point. Maximum transmission power is the mean power [W] on one carrier from one UTRAN access point when transmitting at the configured maximum power for the cell. The measurement shall be possible on any carrier transmitted from the UTRAN access point. The reference point for the transmitted carrier power measurement of all codes not used for HS-PDSCH or HS-SCCH transmission shall be the Tx antenna connector. In case of Tx diversity the transmitted carrier power of all codes not used for HS-PDSCH or HS-SCCH transmission is the ratio between the sum of the total transmitted powers of all codes not used for HS-PDSCH or HS-SCCH transmission of all branches and the maximum transmission power. When cell portions are defined in the cell, the transmitted carrier power of all codes not used for HS-PDSCH or HS-SCCH transmission for each cell portion shall be measured and reported to higher layers.

6 Measurements for UTRA FDD

6.1 UE measurements

6.1.1 Compressed mode

6.1.1.1 Use of compressed mode for monitoring

On command from the UTRAN, a UE shall monitor cells on other FDD frequencies and on other modes and radio access technologies that are supported by the UE (i.e. TDD, GSM). To allow the UE to perform measurements, UTRAN shall command that the UE enters in compressed mode, depending on the UE capabilities.

The UE capabilities define whether a UE requires compressed mode in order to monitor cells on other FDD frequencies and on other modes and radio access technologies. UE capabilities indicate the need for compressed mode separately for the uplink and downlink and for each mode, radio access technology and frequency band.

A UE shall support compressed mode for all cases for which the UE indicates that compressed mode is required.

A UE does not need to support compressed mode for cases for which the UE indicates that compressed mode is not required. For these cases, the UE shall support an alternative means of making the measurements.

The UE shall support one single measurement purpose for one transmission gap pattern sequence. The measurement purpose of the transmission gap pattern sequence is signalled by higher layers.

The following subclause provides rules to parameterise the compressed mode.

6.1.1.2 Parameterisation of the compressed mode

In response to a request from higher layers, the UTRAN shall signal to the UE the compressed mode parameters.

A transmission gap pattern sequence consists of alternating transmission gap patterns 1 and 2, each of these patterns in turn consists of one or two transmission gaps. See figure 1.

The following parameters characterise a transmission gap pattern:

- TGSN (Transmission Gap Starting Slot Number): A transmission gap pattern begins in a radio frame, henceforward called first radio frame of the transmission gap pattern, containing at least one transmission gap slot. TGSN is the slot number of the first transmission gap slot within the first radio frame of the transmission gap pattern;
- TGL1 (Transmission Gap Length 1): This is the duration of the first transmission gap within the transmission gap pattern, expressed in number of slots;
- TGL2 (Transmission Gap Length 2): This is the duration of the second transmission gap within the transmission gap pattern, expressed in number of slots. If this parameter is not explicitly set by higher layers, then TGL2 = TGL1;
- TGD (Transmission Gap start Distance): This is the duration between the starting slots of two consecutive transmission gaps within a transmission gap pattern, expressed in number of slots. The resulting position of the second transmission gap within its radio frame(s) shall comply with the limitations of [2]. If this parameter is not set by higher layers, then there is only one transmission gap in the transmission gap pattern;
- TGPL1 (Transmission Gap Pattern Length): This is the duration of transmission gap pattern 1, expressed in number of frames;
- TGPL2 (Transmission Gap Pattern Length): This is the duration of transmission gap pattern 2, expressed in number of frames. If this parameter is not explicitly set by higher layers, then TGPL2 = TGPL1.

The following parameters control the transmission gap pattern sequence start and repetition:

- TGPRC (Transmission Gap Pattern Repetition Count): This is the number of transmission gap patterns within the transmission gap pattern sequence;
- TGCFN (Transmission Gap Connection Frame Number): This is the CFN of the first radio frame of the first pattern 1 within the transmission gap pattern sequence.

In addition to the parameters defining the positions of transmission gaps, each transmission gap pattern sequence is characterised by:

- UL/DL compressed mode selection: This parameter specifies whether compressed mode is used in UL only, DL only or both UL and DL;
- UL compressed mode method: The methods for generating the uplink compressed mode gap are spreading factor division by two or higher layer scheduling and are described in [2];
- DL compressed mode method: The methods for generating the downlink compressed mode gap are puncturing, spreading factor division by two or higher layer scheduling and are described in [2];
- downlink frame type: This parameter defines if frame structure type 'A' or 'B' shall be used in downlink compressed mode. The frame structures are defined in [2];
- scrambling code change: This parameter indicates whether the alternative scrambling code is used for compressed mode method 'SF/2'. Alternative scrambling codes are described in [3];
- RPP: Recovery Period Power control mode specifies the uplink power control algorithm applied during recovery period after each transmission gap in compressed mode. RPP can take 2 values (0 or 1). The different power control modes are described in [4];
- ITP: Initial Transmit Power mode selects the uplink power control method to calculate the initial transmit power after the gap. ITP can take two values (0 or 1) and is described in [4].

The UE shall support simultaneous compressed mode pattern sequences which can be used for different measurements. The following measurement purposes can be signalled from higher layers:

- FDD
- TDD
- GSM carrier RSSI measurement
- Initial BSIC identification
- BSIC re-confirmation.

The UE shall support one compressed mode pattern sequence for each measurement purpose while operating in FDD mode, assuming the UE needs compressed mode to perform the respective measurement. In case the UE supports several of the measurement purposes, it shall support in parallel one compressed mode pattern sequence for each supported measurement purpose where the UE needs compressed mode to perform the measurement. The capability of the UE to operate in compressed mode in uplink and downlink is given from the UE capabilities.

The GSM measurements Initial BSIC identification and BSIC re-confirmation are defined in [20].

Higher layers will ensure that the compressed mode gaps do not overlap and are not scheduled to overlap the same frame. The behaviour when an overlap occurs is described in [11]. UE is not required to support two compressed mode gaps in a frame.

In all cases, higher layers have control of individual UE parameters. Any pattern sequence can be stopped on higher layers' command.

The parameters TGSN, TGL1, TGL2, TGD, TGPL1, TGPL2, TGPRC and TGCFN shall all be integers.

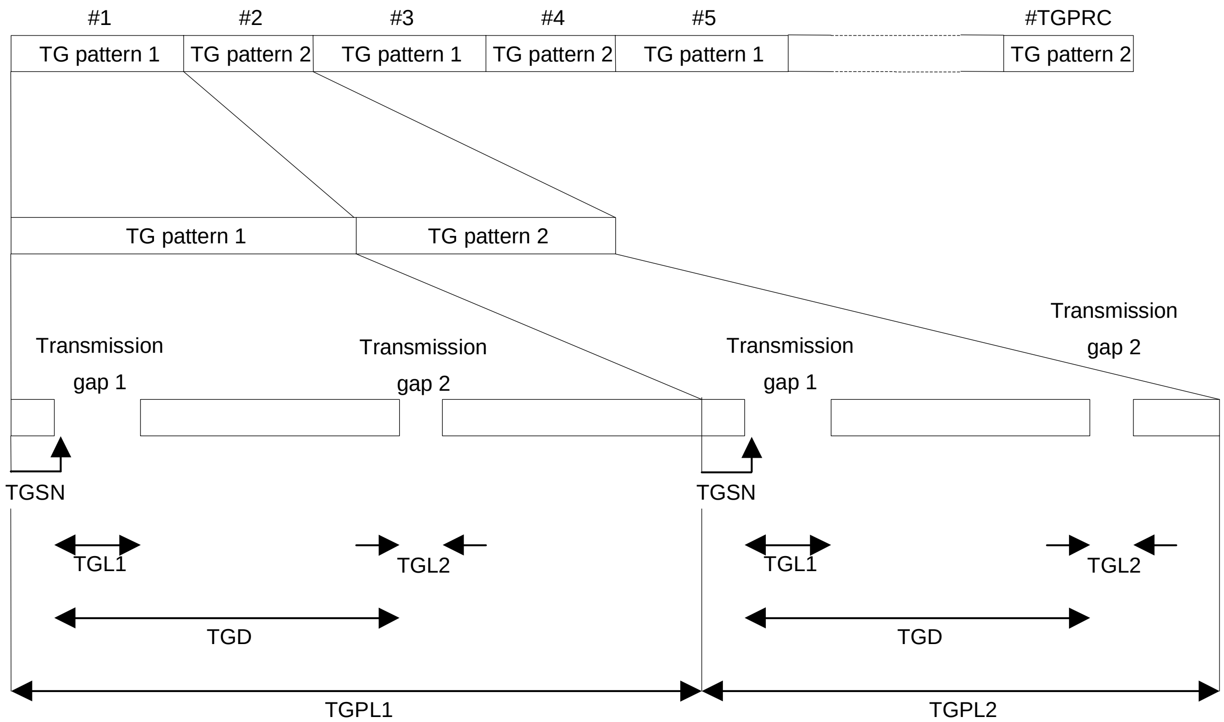


Figure 1: Illustration of compressed mode pattern parameters

Annex A (informative): Change history

Change history							
Date	TSG #	TSG Doc.	CR	Rev	Subject/Comment	Old	New
14/01/00	RAN_05	RP-99590	-		Approved at TSG RAN #5 and placed under Change Control	-	3.0.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99688	001	3	Clarifications for compressed mode parameters	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99689	002	-	Definition of PCCPCH RSCP	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99689	003	-	Definition of observed time difference to GSM cell	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99688	004	-	Measurements are done on Primary CPICH	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99689	005	1	Physical channel BER on DPCCH	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99688	006	-	Definition of SIR measurement	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99689	007	2	Ranges and resolution of timing measurements	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99688	009	2	Range and resolution for RF related measurements	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99689	010	2	New subclauses: 5.1.15 - UE GPS Timing of Cell Frames for LCS; 5.2.8 UTRAN GPS Timing of Cell Frames for LCS	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99688	011	-	Removal of Annex A from TS 25.215	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99688	013	-	Definition of Transmitted code power	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99688	014	2	Range and resolution of BLER measurements	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99688	015	2	Range and resolution of BER measurements	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99688	020	-	Correction of SFN-SFN observed time difference	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	RAN_06	RP-99688	021	1	CFN-SFN measurement with compressed mode	3.0.0	3.1.0
14/01/00	-	-	-		Change history was added by the editor	3.1.0	3.1.1
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	024	1	Definition of Transmitted carrier power	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	025	-	Clarification of Observed time difference to GSM cell	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	027	-	Naming of BER/BLER mapping	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	028	-	Minor corrections in TS 25.215	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	029	-	Re-definition of timing measurements	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	030	2	Mapping of timing measurements	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	031	-	Removal of note in Round trip time measurement	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	033	-	Removal of fixed gap position in 25.215	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	036	4	Corrections to 25.215 compressed mode parameter list	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	037	3	Definition and range of physical channel BER	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	040	-	Clarification of CPICH measurements in Tx diversity	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	042	1	UTRAN RSSI measurement	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	043	1	UTRAN Propagation delay	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	044	2	Correction to subclauses: 5.1.15 UE GPS Timing of Cell Frames for LCS; 5.2.8 UTRAN GPS Timing of Cell Frames for LCS, including timing mapping	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	047	-	Removal of RSCP measurement	3.1.1	3.2.0
31/03/00	RAN_07	RP-000066	048	-	UE BER measurement removal and clarification for use of uplink compressed mode	3.1.1	3.2.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	049	1	Propagation delay for PCPCH	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	050	1	Maximum number of simultaneous compressed mode pattern sequences	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	051	1	Clarification of Physical channel BER	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	052	-	Clarification of transmitted code power	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	053	-	Editorial correction in TS 25.215	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	055	-	Proposed CR for Measurements of RACH in FDD	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	056	-	Proposed CR for Measurements of CPCH in FDD	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	057	-	Transfer of information from TS 25.212 table 9 to TS 25.215	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	058	-	Correction to CM parameter list	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	062	-	Clarification of radio link measurements in compressed mode	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	063	-	Clarification of the Transmitted code power measurement in Tx diversity	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	064	1	Removal of Range/mapping	3.2.0	3.3.0
26/06/00	RAN_08	RP-000270	066	-	Removal of UTRAN TrCH BLER measurement	3.2.0	3.3.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000343	067	-	Insertion of UTRAN SIRerro measurement in 25.215	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000343	068	-	Reporting of UTRAN Transmitted carrier power	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000343	070	-	Clarification of UTRAN SIR measurement	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000343	071	-	Clarification of first significant path	3.3.0	3.4.0
23/09/00	RAN_09	RP-000343	072	-	Clarification of radio link set as the measured object	3.3.0	3.4.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000541	069	3	Support of parallel compressed mode patterns	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000541	074	1	Clarification of SIRerror measurement during compressed mode	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000541	075	2	Definition of UTRAN RSSI	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000541	076	1	Clarification of GPS timing measurements	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000541	077	2	Clarification of reference point for UE/UTRAN measurements	3.4.0	3.5.0
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000541	078	1	Correction to measurement "Rx-Tx time difference"	3.4.0	3.5.0

Change history

Date	TSG #	TSG Doc.	CR	Rev	Subject/Comment	Old	New
15/12/00	RAN_10	RP-000541	080	1	Clarifications to compressed mode usage	3.4.0	3.5.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	-	-	-	Approved as Release 4 specification (v4.0.0) at TSG RAN #11	3.5.0	4.0.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010061	079	2	Correction of the observed time difference to GSM measurement	3.5.0	3.6.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010061	081	-	Removal of UE SIR measurement	3.5.0	3.6.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010061	082	1	Correction of GSM reference	3.5.0	3.6.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010061	083	-	Correction of GPS Timing measurement	3.5.0	3.6.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010061	086	-	Correction on transport channel BLER	3.5.0	3.6.0
16/03/01	RAN_11	RP-010072	085	-	RTD measurement in UTRAN for FDD	3.5.0	4.0.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010335	088	-	Renaming of LCS measurements	4.0.0	4.1.0
15/06/01	RAN_12	RP-010456	090	2	Correction the TrCH BLER measurement	4.0.0	4.1.0
21/09/01	RAN_13	RP-010521	096	-	Removal of the BLER measurement of the BCH	4.1.0	4.2.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010740	098	-	Clarification of internal measurements	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010740	103	-	Clarification of P-CCPCH RSCP in 25.215	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010740	105	-	Revised definitions of CPICH Ec/No and UTRA carrier RSSI	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010745	099	2	UE GPS code phase measurement	4.2.0	4.3.0
14/12/01	RAN_14	RP-010745	106	1	UTRAN SFN-SFN observed time difference measurement	4.2.0	4.3.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020245	114	3	Clarification of UE measurements Applicability	4.3.0	4.4.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020048	116	-	Correction to the definition of UTRAN GPS timing of cell frames for UE positioning	4.3.0	4.4.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020048	117	-	Correction to the definition of UE GPS timing of cell frames for UE positioning	4.3.0	4.4.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	RP-020231	111	1	Removal of channel coding option “no coding” for FDD	4.3.0	4.4.0
08/03/02	RAN_15	-	-	-	Raised up to v5.0.0 together with other specs.	4.4.0	5.0.0
18/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020530	119	4	Transmitted carrier power measurement correction	5.0.0	5.1.0
18/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020575	121	-	Measurements for observed time difference to GSM cell	5.0.0	5.1.0
18/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020575	130	-	Compressed mode limitation	5.0.0	5.1.0
18/09/02	RAN_17	RP-020558	128	-	Correction of UE SFN-SFN type 1 measurement	5.0.0	5.1.0
21/12/02	RAN_18	RP-020842	131	1	Received Total Wide Band Power Measurement Definition	5.1.0	5.2.0
26/03/03	RAN_19	RP-030017	133	3	Correction of UTRAN SIR measurement definition	5.2.0	5.3.0
26/03/03	RAN_19	RP-030081	134	1	Non-HSDPA power measurement	5.2.0	5.3.0
23/06/03	RAN_20	RP-030270	142	-	Correction of transmitted carrier power definition in case of Tx diversity	5.3.0	5.4.0
23/06/03	RAN_20	RP-030274	143	-	Correction of transmitted carrier power of all codes not used for HS-PDSCH or HS-SCCH transmission definition in case of Tx diversity	5.3.0	5.4.0
22/09/03	RAN_21	RP-030452	144	1	Beamforming Enhancement related measurements	5.4.0	5.5.0
07/01/04	RAN_22	-	-	-	Approved to promote to a Release 6 TS and created for M.1457 update	5.5.0	6.0.0
07/01/04	RAN_22	RP-030726	145	2	Beamforming Enhancement related measurements	5.5.0	6.0.0